
AL ADWAA
Gem
2nd SEC
SECOND TERM
KING LEAR
NEW HELLO!
2024

Contents

Living abroad

Unit 7

Objectives

امسح الكود



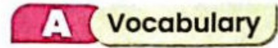
استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمى

- **Reading** : An extract from the novel ***The Secret Garden*** by Frances Hodgson Burnett
- **Writing** : A diary entry by a student who is living abroad
- **Listening** : Voice messages from students who are studying abroad
- **Speaking** : Discussing the pros and cons of working abroad
- **Language** : Present continuous; Stative verbs
- **Life Skills** : Critical thinking; Showing respect for people from different cultures



Part (1)

Lessons 1 & 2



You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Key Vocabulary

determination (n)*	تصميم/عزيمة	independent (adj)	مستقل
encouragement (n)	تشجيع	pick ... up (v) (ed)	يحضر (شخصًا) من مكان
get used to	يعتاد على	struggle (v) (d)	يكافح/يناضل/يعانى
host family (n)	أسرة مضيفة		

We all respect the disabled athlete's determination to win medals.



Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

abroad (adv)	بالخارج	course (n)	برنامج دراسى
accommodation (n)	إقامة/مكان إقامة	creature (n)	مخلوق/كائن
activity (n)	نشاط	current (adj)	حالى/جارٍ
annoy (v) (ed)	يزعج/يضايق	degree (n)	درجة جامعية
bell (n)	جرس	distract (v) (ed)	يشتت الذهن/الانتباه
biology (n)	علم الأحياء	explain (v) (ed)	يشرح/يفسر
celebration (n)	احتفال	explore (v) (d)	يستكشف
certificate (n)	شهادة	extract (n)	مقتطف/جزء مقتبس
challenge (n) (v) (d)	تحدٍ/يتحدى	gardener (n)	بستانى/جناينى
character (n)	شخصية	lonely (adj)	وحيد
concentrate (v) (d)	يركز	maid (n)	وصيفة/خادمة
confident (adj)	واثق	main (adj)	أساسى/رئيسى
confused (adj)	مرتبك	noisy (adj)	صاخب

normal (adj)	طبيعى	stressed (adj)	مضغوط
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر	temporary (adj)	مؤقت
ring (v)	يدق (يرن) الجرس	understandable (adj)	يمكن فهمه
secret (n) (adj)	سر/سرى	whistle (v) (d) (n)	يصفر/صفارة
specific (adj)	محدد		

Workbook Vocabulary

blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	helpful (adj)	معين/مساعد
conditions (n)	ظروف/أحوال	imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل
drought (n)	جفاف	lamb (n)	صغير الخروف/الحامل
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/تجربة/يجرب	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع
harbour (n)	ميناء	weigh (v) (ed)	يزن

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Going away to college in Alexandria has made my son much more ....
a) dependent b) noisy
c) independent d) specific

2 The survivors were picked .... by fishing boats from nearby villages.
a) up b) on
c) away d) for

3 The cost of the six-day trip in Sharm El Sheikh includes meals and hotel ....
a) concentration b) determination
c) course d) accommodation

4 Our National Football Team has great .... to win the African Cup of Natior this year.
a) depression b) determination
c) avoidance d) accommodation

5 The computer company wants someone with a lot of scientific .... for this job.

a) experience b) experiment
c) trial d) testing

6 I didn't think I could ever .... used to living in a big city after living in the country.

a) grow b) get
c) fall d) turn

7 With support and .... from their parents, the students organised their first art exhibition.

a) discouragement b) degree
c) conditions d) encouragement

8 After the COVID-19 pandemic, everyone entering a foreign country had to show a health or vaccination ....

a) title b) course
c) essay d) certificate

9 I think this cold weather is .... for this time of the year as it is winter.

a) normal b) specific
c) confused d) independent

10 .... is the scientific study of the life and structure of plants and animals.

a) History b) Botany
c) Biology d) Mathematics

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do/perform an activity	يقوم بنشاط	have a great time	يتمتع بوقت رائع
get distracted	يصبح مشتت الذهن/الانتباه	have experience	لديه خبرة
have a break	لديه راحة/فسحة	on his own	بمفرده
come across	يمر بـ/يقابل (بالصدفة)	look around	ينظر حول/يتجول
come into	يأتي/يدخل إلى	look out of	ينظر من خلال
difference between	اختلاف بين	move to	ينتقل إلى
different to/from	مختلف عن	travel across	يسافر عبر

Read the derivatives well and link them to real life in visual images.

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
annoy	يزعج/يضايق	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying annoyed	مزعج منزعج
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مركز
confuse *	يربك	confusion	إرباك/ارتباك	confusing confused	مُربك مرتبك
determine	يصمم	determination	تصميم	determined	مصمم/عاقد العزم
distract	يشتت الذهن/الانتباه	distraction distractor	تشتت الذهن/الانتباه مشتت للانتباه	distracted	مشتت الذهن/الانتباه
explore	يستكشف	exploration explorer	استكشاف مستكشف	exploratory	استكشافى
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
publish	ينشر	publication publisher	منشور ناشر	published	منشور
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد/تخصيص	specific	محدد
weigh	يزن	weight	وزن	weighty	ثقيل الوزن

- These unclear instructions can confuse everyone.
- The announcement caused a lot of confusion among the students.
- I'm really confused. Can you explain that again?

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
concentrate	يركز	focus	ignore/disregard	يتجاهل
confused	مرتبك	distracted/puzzled	clear-headed	صافى الذهن
current	حالى/جارٍ	contemporary/ongoing	past/old	ماضٍ/قديم
determination	تصميم/عزيمة	persistence/dedication	indifference/hesitation	عدم اهتمام/تردد

distract	يشتت الذهن/الانتباه	confuse/disturb	calm/clarify	يهدئ/يوضح
encouragement	تشجيع	support/backing	discouragement	عدم تشجيع
imagine	يتخيل	fancy/suppose	disregard/ignore	يستبعد/يتجاهل
independent	مستقل	self-reliant	dependent	معتمد
specific	محدد	peculiar/particular	common/ordinary	عادي/شائع
struggle	يكافح	toil/strive	surrender/yield	يستسلم

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He tried to distract attention from his own illegal activities. The verb "distract" is the synonym of "..........................".
a) confuse b) relieve c) clarify d) define

2 He was annoyed that he had forgotten his wallet. The noun of the verb "annoy" is "..........................".
a) annoys b) annoyance c) annoyed d) annoyingly

3 My grandfather is ill and he can't .... a lot of physical activities.
a) do b) make c) follow d) derive

4 The tour guide says that we'll .... a break now and resume in an hour.
a) suffer b) surrender c) fight d) have

5 The disease seems to be specific to certain types of plant. The adjective "specific" is the opposite of "..........................".
a) peculiar b) particular c) obvious d) common

6 Mother insists that our house is different .... the others on our street.
a) at b) from c) of d) in

7 Public companies have to publish annual reports and accounts. The adjective of the verb "publish" is "..........................".
a) publishes b) publication c) published d) publisher

8 To become a professional musician, you need to have a lot of determination. The noun "determination" is similar in meaning to "..........................".
a) persistence b) hesitation c) dependence d) avoidance

9 The tourist group spent the afternoon looking .... the town.
a) across b) around c) off d) into

10 Although he was injured, the boxer struggled to win the fight. The antonym of the verb "struggle" is ....
a) suffer b) fight c) gain d) surrender

Reading Text

The Secret Garden



The ***Secret Garden*** is a novel by Frances Hodgson Burnett. It was published in Britain in 1911. At the beginning of the book, we meet the main character, Mary Lennox. Mary was born in India and her parents were rich. When Mary is nine years old, her parents die and Mary moves to England to live with her uncle. It is cold and very different from India, and Mary is unhappy at first.

Mary opened her eyes on that first morning because a maid[1] had come into her room.

"Are you my servant?" she asked.

"I'm Mrs. Medlock's servant, and she is Mr Craven's servant," replied Martha, the maid. "Are you going outside today?"

Mary looked around her. There was nothing to do in the bedroom.

"Who will go with me?" Mary asked.

"You can be independent[2] and go out by yourself. My brother is always exploring on his own," said Martha. "There are some gardens, but it is winter so nothing is growing now. Oh, now Mrs. Medlock's bell is ringing. I must go!"

A short time later, Mary was in the gardens when she came across a small bird singing in some trees behind a wall. When she asked an old gardener[3] about the bird, he whistled and the bird flew to him.

"He was lonely and we became friends," the old man explained.

"I'm lonely," said Mary. "I don't know anyone in England."

"I'm sure you will struggle[4] at first, but you will get used to[5] the people here soon," said the gardener. Suddenly, the small bird started singing.

"Why is he doing that?" she asked.

"I think he's decided to be your friend, too," answered the gardener.

(1) وصيفة/خادمة
(2) مستقل
(3) بستاني/جنايني
(4) يكافح
(5) يعتاد على

Listening Text



Narrator: 1

Teen boy: Hi Khaled! How are you? I'm having a great time here in Sydney. Australia is such a beautiful country and the sun always seems to be shining here! It's so wonderful! Every day – after I've finished my lessons – I go down to the beach to have a break from studying and smell the sea air. I have a few good friends here now, so we usually go together. The only problem is that sometimes I find it too difficult to concentrate(1) on my lessons because I'm thinking about going to the beach afterwards(2)!

Speaker: 2

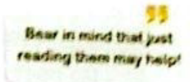
Teen girl: Hi Dad. I hope everything's OK at home. I'm fine, but I'm finding it quite difficult to get used to life in Tokyo – everything is so different here. It's not like at home where it's quiet all the time. It's always noisy(3) because of the cars on the roads – day and night! But the most difficult thing about this experience(4) is that I don't know enough Japanese at the moment. People talk to me and I only understand a little bit of what they're saying, so I'm always feeling confused(5). I hope things will get better!

Speaker: 3

Teen boy: Hi Mum! I miss you and everyone at home. I'm having a good time here in Barcelona. I feel so happy to be here and there are so many fun things I still want to do here, like visiting more of the beautiful buildings in the city. I'm getting a little bit better at Spanish every day- today I went to a café with friends and I remembered enough to buy some lunch! I came home feeling really good!

(1) يركز
(2) بعد ذلك
(3) صاخب
(4) تجربة
(5) مرتبك





1	**explore** يستكشف شيئًا أو مكانًا/يدرس معالمه	Marco Polo was the first European sailor to explore China.
	invent يخترع شيئًا أو جهازًا لم يكن موجودًا من قبل	Thomas Edison invented many devices in the field of electricity.
	discover يكتشف شيئًا كان موجودًا ولم يعرف	The pharaohs were able to discover many metals such as iron and gold.
2	**current** ١- حالي/جارٍ ٢- تيار ماء ٣- تيار هواء ٤- تيار كهربي ٥- تيار سائد (رأي أو اتجاه)	- In its current state, the car is worth 50,000 pounds. - Strong currents can be very dangerous for swimmers. - Some birds use warm air currents to help them fly. - Check all your wiring before switching on the current. - There was a current of anger within the company.
	currants الزبيب (العنب المجفف)	Our cook uses a lot of currants while baking cakes. (= dried grapes)
3	**abroad** خارج البلاد (في بلد آخر) (لا تستخدم كصفة قبل اسم)	Our neighbours are on holiday abroad at the moment.
	foreign أجنبي (صفة تأتي قبل اسم)	Who's the Minister for Foreign Affairs?
	exterior (outside) خارجي	The exterior of my house needs painting. (= the outside surface)
4	**certificate** الشهادة (هي وثيقة رسمية لشيء مثل الميلاد أو الزواج أو الوفاة)	In order to get a passport, you'll need your birth certificate.
	qualifications المؤهلات (هي دليل مهارة الشخص أو معرفته لموضوع ما بعد النجاح في منهج أو امتحان)	What qualifications do I need to teach English as a foreign language?
	degree درجة جامعية عند إتمام منهج دراسي بنجاح	I did/took my degree at Assuit University.

drought جفاف	Some of the newer plants in the garden died during the drought.
draught تيار هواء يدخل إلى غرفة	Can you close the window? I'm in a draught.

loud صاخب/عالي الصوت (تستخدم لوصف الأصوات والموسيقى)	- The child was talking in a very loud voice. - The music was so loud that we couldn't hear each other.
noisy صاخب/مزعج (تستخدم لوصف الناس والآلات والأماكن)	- The traffic in the city centre was very noisy. - Our new neighbours are noisy and are always having quarrels.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 After the meeting, the attendees will be free to .... the city.
a) explore b) invent
c) discover d) devise

2 Candidates of the job in the New Administrative Capital must hold a .... in architecture.
a) licence b) permit
c) certificate d) degree

3 The farmers suffered great losses as the .... caused serious damage to crops due to lack of water.
a) draught b) current
c) drought d) flood

4 On surfing beaches, strong .... are common especially during competition time.
a) droughts b) floods
c) currants d) currents

5 The chandelier نجفة fell to the floor with a .... bang and we were scared.
a) loud b) noisy
c) relaxing d) normal



Practice — Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The footballer showed great .... to return to the team after the serious injury.
a) accommodation b) hesitation
c) appliance d) determination

2 The coach asked the young athlete to do a variety of fitness .... in the gym.
a) inventions b) labour c) experiences d) activities

3 The young mother has a/an .... income as she works as a nursery school teacher.
a) independent b) interested c) intensive d) confused

4 We share the earth with all living .... and have a duty to preserve its riches.
a) areas b) creatures c) regions d) products

5 Acceptable forms of ID include a .... passport or a birth certificate.
a) current b) past c) luxurious d) noisy

6 The bus .... up passengers outside the airport and takes them to the city centre.
a) packs b) gets c) picks d) grows

7 It really .... me when people expect me to tip as well as pay a service charge in a restaurant.
a) employs b) deploys c) applies d) annoys

8 The teacher gave each group in the class a .... topic to talk about.
a) specific b) vague c) detected d) vicious

9 It's important for a teacher to balance punishment with positive ....
a) determination b) encouragement c) reflection d) challenge

10 The collection includes .... from the works of several well-known authors.
a) shapes b) formulas c) extracts d) recipes

11 The .... was changing the sheets when we got back to our hotel room.
a) boss b) coach c) guard d) maid

12 In the past, magazines used to .... novels and short stories in parts.
a) struggle b) devise c) publish d) distract

13 The message was written in a/an .... code that only our soldiers could read.
a) noisy b) secret c) obvious d) literate

14 Volunteers built .... shelters such as tents for the survivors of the forest fires until the authorities moved them to flats.
a) permanent b) constant c) specific d) temporary

15 The new headteacher has taken on the .... of improving the school and he could succeed.
a) challenge b) test c) race d) failure

16 Stop shouting loudly; all that noise makes it hard to ....
a) duplicate b) replicate c) investigate d) concentrate

17 Both clocks are still in good working .... although they are old.
a) force b) form c) condition d) direction

18 She's .... to bring up a family alone after the death of her husband.
a) struggling b) relaxing c) explaining d) whistling

19 The job interview proved to be much worse than I had imagined. The synonym of the verb "imagine" is "..................".
a) fancy b) explain c) accept d) apply

20 Digging in the garden, the gardener came .... some pieces of bone.
a) for b) up c) across d) about

21 Experts advise young people not to .... distracted easily and focus on their goals.
a) have b) take c) give d) get

22 Changing the name of the company will only lead to ....
a) confuse b) confusion c) confusable d) confused

23 You can't expect a four-year-old child to do this difficult task .... his own.
a) at b) on c) for d) with

24 The government's .... and effective initiatives helped to improve poor people's lives.
a) imagine b) imagination c) imagines d) imaginative

25 There's no difference .... the two houses. They look exactly the same.
a) on b) among c) between d) inside

26 During my stay in London, the .... family welcomed me warmly. *(Longman)*
a) guest b) host c) hostel d) hostile

27 You should have a lot of .... to achieve your goals in life. *(Longman)*
a) indication b) supposition c) determination d) deterioration

28 People who live in the desert usually .... to survive when there is a drought. *(Longman)*
a) struggle b) store c) stream d) style

29 Our maths teacher always gave us a lot of support and ....; we owe much to him. *(Longman)*
a) movement b) encouragement c) discouragement d) disappointment

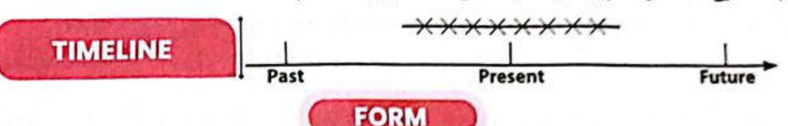
30 Could you tell me the name of the .... Prime Minister of England? *(Longman)*
a) secret b) private c) current d) local

B Language

1 Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous for things that are happening at the moment of speaking.

يُستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الأشياء التى تحدث فى وقت الكلام.



FORM

Affirmative الإثبات	• Subj.+ am/is/are + v-ing The baby is sleeping at the moment.
Negative النفى	• Subj.+ am/is/are + not + v-ing They aren't watching TV at the moment.
Interrogative الاستفهام	• Am/Is/Are + subj. + v-ing? Is he doing his homework? • Wh- question + is/are + subj. + v-ing? What are you doing?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	• Obj. + am/is/are + being + P.P. Look! The thief is being chased.

USAGE الاستخدام

1. For actions happening now to say that we are in the middle of the action: يستخدم للأحداث التى تحدث الآن لنقول إننا فى منتصف الحدث.
   - I'm waiting for the train. (I'm in the station now.)
   - They are playing football. (The match is not over yet. لم تنتهِ المباراة حتى الآن)
2. For actions that are going on around now, but not at the actual moment of speaking: يستخدم لحدث مستمر ولكن ليس بالضرورة فى وقت الكلام.
   - She is working hard these days. (تعمل بجد هذه الأيام وربما هى الآن تأكل أو تقرأ أو تنام)
3. A current situation which is different to a past situation: موقف حالى أو حاضر ومختلف عن موقف فى الماضى.
   - Young people aren't reading newspapers these days.
4. For fixed arrangements in the near future: للأحداث التى تم الترتيب لها لتحدث فى المستقبل.
   - Ahmed is leaving for Luxor in an hour. (It's been arranged.)

   يستخدم مع الكلمات الدالة على المستقبل إذا كان الحدث تم الترتيب له.
   - Ali is meeting Mr Amgad next Saturday morning.

5 An action that people do: again and again:

يستخدم مع كلمة always إذا كنا نريد التعبير عن شيء يحدث كثيرًا وأحيانًا يضايق.

- He is always forgetting the car keys at home.
- She is always asking a lot of questions.
- Why is he always playing his guitar?

- The present continuous is used with the following time expressions:

يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية:

now | at the moment | these days | at present | still | nowadays | Look! | Listen! | Take care!

- He is still working.
- It's raining at the moment.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, go away, I .... to finish my work.
   a) try b) have tried c) was trying d) am trying
2. You are hungry. Why .... you eating?
   a) don't b) aren't c) won't d) didn't
3. You .... too fast. Please, slow down.
   a) drove b) drive c) are driving d) were driving
4. Who .... Hala .... to?
   a) is / speaking b) does / speaks c) did / spoke d) were / speaking
5. I .... to the dentist tomorrow. I made an appointment with the nurse.
   a) went b) have gone c) am going d) going

2 State/Stative verbs أفعال الثبات/الحالة

- تصف هذه الأفعال حالة ثابتة للشخص وليس الشيء الذي يفعله وهي أفعال غير حركية فمثلًا الفعل go به حركة لكن الفعل own بمعنى "يملك" ليس به حركة وهذه الأفعال لا تستخدم بعد v. to be ومن أمثلة هذه الأفعال:

(1) Thoughts and opinions أفعال تعبر عن الآراء والاعتقادات	think, know, etc.
(2) Feelings and emotions أفعال تعبر عن المشاعر والعواطف	like, love, etc.
(3) Perception and senses أفعال تعبر عن الإدراك والحواس	hear, see, etc.
(4) Possessions and measurements أفعال تعبر عن الملكية والمقاييس	belong يخص, have, weigh, etc.

Advanced points

Some verbs have both a stative and an active meaning:

بعض الأفعال لها كل من المعنى الحركي والمعنى غير الحركي وإذا استخدمت في الاستمرار يكون لها معنى مختلف:

Verb	State	Action
think	I think English is easy. هذا اعتقاد وليس تفكيرًا	I'm thinking about your plan. = I'm considering. يدبر أمرًا/يفكر مليًا في أمر
have	My brother has a nice car. أخي يملك سيارة لطيفة وليس يتناول.	He's having dinner now. = He is eating now. يتناول العشاء وليس يملك
feel	I feel you should take more time. الشعور والإحساس هنا ليس حركيًا ولكنه مثل الاعتقاد.	She is feeling her way in the dark. = She is finding her way in the dark. تتحسس الطريق باليد أو النظر جيدًا
see	His eyes are so bad. He sees a little. الفعل see هنا بمعنى يرى وليس يقابل.	I'm seeing my lawyer tonight. = I'm visiting/meeting my lawyer tonight. أزور/أقابل
love	I love going on holidays to relax. الفعل love يدل على المشاعر لا حركة فيه.	I'm loving this holiday. = I'm enjoying; specific محدد الاستمتاع بالإجازة في وقت معين (وسط الحدث)
look	He looks tired = seems الفعل look هنا بمعنى يبدو.	She's looking at some old photographs. = She's examining some old photographs. تتفقد/تفحص/تنظر بدقة
be	Ali is a kind man. الفعل "يكون" فعل حالة وهو ليس في وقت معين ولكنه دائم.	Ramy is being very kind to me these days. = He's behaving kindly. يتصرف معي هذه الأيام فقط.
smell	The food smells nice. رائحة الشيء تكون هي حالته.	Why are you smelling your food? = Trying the smell of. يحاول شم رائحة شيء.
weigh	The meat weighs 2 kilos. يبلغ وزنها ٢ كيلو جرام	He is weighing the meat. يقوم بعملية الوزن

ولنفهم الفرق بين الأفعال جيدًا نتأمل المثال الآتي:

- The soup tastes nice.
- I'm tasting the soup now.

فالحالة التي عليها الشُربة هي أنها جيدة ولها مذاق جميل وهذا شيء ثابت لا حركة فيه. أما أنا فيصدر مني حدث وليس حالة وهو أني أقوم بالتذوق لكي أعرف حالة الشوربة وهنا يكون الاستمرار.

Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Turn the TV off. No one .... it!
a) watches b) isn't watching
c) is watching d) watched

2 **A:** Where's Nada? **B:** She .... a tennis match.
a) played b) is playing
c) has played d) plays

3 Most scientists .... that the world is getting hotter.
a) believe b) are believed
c) are believing d) will believe

4 Look! How fast that lorry ....
a) go b) went
c) goes d) is going

5 Mariam is busy at the moment. She .... her hair.
a) wash b) washes
c) is washing d) has washed

6 I like reading science fiction stories, but my brothers .... sport.
a) like b) are liking
c) likes d) has liked

7 They're hungry. They .... something to eat.
a) wants b) want
c) are wanting d) were wanting

8 Stress .... high blood pressure.
a) cause b) has caused
c) is causing d) causes

9 Everything is arranged for my travel next Saturday. This means I .... next Saturday.
a) travel b) will travel
c) am travelling d) was travelling

10 The sky .... grey and the wind is blowing. I think it is going to rain.
a) looks b) isn't looking
c) has looked d) will look

11 You haven't said a word all morning. What .... about?
a) you think b) do you think
c) you do think d) are you thinking

12 The famous footballer is coming to visit our village, and I .... he's very rich.
a) hearing b) hear
c) am hearing d) will hear

13 You .... computer games. You should do something more active.
a) always played b) always plays
c) always playing d) 're always playing

14 If you .... this comic book, I'd like to see it.
a) don't read b) aren't reading
c) read d) were reading

15 Something .... different - Are you wearing a new suit?
a) seem b) had seemed
c) seems d) is seeming

16 We .... for my brother's birthday party. Do you want to help?
a) are preparing b) prepare
c) have prepared d) prepared

17 When my brother has a bad cold, he .... nothing.
a) tasting b) is tasting
c) tasted d) tastes

18 Kareem's a policeman, but he .... a uniform today.
a) isn't wearing b) wears
c) doesn't wear d) no wear

19 He .... more money than he can afford to pay.
a) is owing b) owed
c) owes d) was owing

20 How many children ....?
a) do you have b) are you having
c) are you have d) do you have got

21 I .... the fish now. It .... five kilos.
a) am weighing/is weighing b) weigh/is weighing
c) weigh/weighs d) am weighing/weighs

22 Which sentence of the following is grammatically correct?
a) I'm usually brushing my teeth at the moment.
b) My brother is wanting to look for a better job these days.
c) We are meeting on Monday to discuss some problems.
d) I don't eat breakfast this morning.

23 One of the following is grammatically correct?
a) I'm knowing that he came yesterday.
b) I'm thinking of taking a vacation.
c) "Enormous" is meaning "very big".
d) "2 + 2" is equaling "1 + 3".

24 Some men are waiting outside for you ....
a) at that time
b) at the moment
c) yesterday
d) recently

25 **A:** "What is Osama doing at the moment?" **B:** ....
a) He is tasting the food.
b) He weighs the fish he has just bought.
c) He is looking ill.
d) He is thinking that his teacher is genius.

26 Where have you arranged to spend the summer holiday?
I .... two weeks in Sharm El-Sheikh next summer. (Longman)
a) going to spend
b) had spent
c) will spend
d) am spending

27 I have already confirmed the reservation; I .... to Rome tomorrow. (Longman)
a) will fly
b) was flying
c) had flown
d) am flying

28 You .... to loud music. This is annoying; I can't concentrate on my lessons. (Longman)
a) always listened
b) are always listening
c) always are listening
d) are always listened

29 Look! Bassem .... up his room. He is always active. (Longman)
a) is tidying
b) was tidying
c) had tidied
d) would tidy

30 I .... a wonderful time in the village. Everyone is really nice. (Longman)
a) am not having
b) going to have
c) had had
d) am having

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 Paris is the .... city for the next Olympic Games in 2024.
a) guest b) helpless c) strange d) host

2 If the TV is .... you from your homework, you should turn it off.
a) distracting b) dispensing c) respecting d) distressing

3 .... and hard work led the businessman from poverty to success and wealth.
a) Affectation b) Determination c) Deterioration d) Condensation

4 Some very well-known Egyptian footballers have gone to clubs ....
a) broad b) board c) abroad d) aboard

5 A/An .... is someone who does a job willingly without being paid.
a) employee b) spectator c) engineer d) volunteer

6 Damietta has a new, fine modern .... for all ships that helps the local economy.
a) warehouse b) harbour c) store d) garage

7 The country's citizens are asked to .... the great efforts of the government to improve transport.
a) endanger b) threaten c) support d) ignore

8 My grandfather can't .... many activities as he is very old.
a) perform b) repair c) make d) reform

9 The doctors are .... that the patient will make a full recovery after the successful operation.
a) secret b) confident c) desperate d) ignorant

10 I told my friend that I .... used to living in the countryside when I was younger.
a) gave b) made c) did d) got

11 The government is trying hard to help families who have no .... after the earthquake.
a) reliance
b) detection
c) intention
d) accommodation

12 People are .... about all the different labels on food these days as they contain a lot of data.
a) certain b) developed c) confused d) imaginative

13 All that noise makes it hard to concentrate. The synonym of the verb "concentrat is ".................." .
a) focus b) ignore c) neglect d) defy

14 The company's .... financial situation is not good, so they will apply for a bank loan.
a) past b) current c) future d) popular

15 The best way to explore the countryside is on foot. The adjective from the verb "explore" is ....
a) explores b) exploration c) explorer d) exploratory

Language

16 .... the capital city of Spain?
a) Are you know b) Do you know
c) Are you knowing d) Do you knowing

17 The university .... for a qualified doctor at the moment.
a) is advertising b) advertised c) advertises d) advertise

18 The verb .... can work as both a stative and a dynamic verb.
a) study b) believe c) have d) sleep

19 .... that our team will win the next match?
a) Were you believing b) Are you believing
c) Will you believe d) Do you believe

20 I'm angry because you .... the door open.
a) had left b) are always leaving c) leaving d) are left

21 Leila .... that she will be better at maths.
a) is being hoped b) is hoping c) hopes d) hoping

22 'Hurry up! It's time to leave.' 'OK, I ....'
a) am come b) come c) coming d) am coming

23 They are visiting the zoo on Saturday. This means that they ....
a) have arranged everything b) haven't decided yet
c) are in the zoo now d) are still thinking of going there

24 She .... to her boss. I'll tell her you phoned.
a) talked b) talks c) talking d) is talking

25 The kids .... each other around the kitchen table at the moment.
a) chased b) chasing c) are chasing d) are chased

26 Tarek's good at golf, but he .... very often.
a) doesn't play b) won't play c) didn't play d) isn't playing

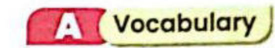
27 Please, be quiet. My baby ....
a) is slept b) sleeps c) slept d) is sleeping

28 Sohila is very clever. She .... seven different languages.
a) is speaking b) was speaking c) speaks d) has spoken

29 I .... a shower every morning.
a) have b) am having c) have got d) was having

30 Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?
a) Are they having a good time? b) He's having a huge house.
c) They are designing a robot. d) They are looking at the photo album.





Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

accent (n)*	لكنة/لهجة	meal (n)	وجبة
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
communication (n)	اتصال/تواصل	organise (v) (d)	ينظم
conversation (n)	محادثة	phrase (n)	عبارة
culture (n)	ثقافة	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	share (v) (d)	يشارك
diary (n)	يوميات	skill (n)	مهارة
entry (n)	مدخل/تدوين	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
Greek (adj) (n)	يونانى/اللغة اليونانية	suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
include (v) (d)	يشمل	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
local (adj)	محلى	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
Londoners (n)	أهل (ساكنو) لندن		

The Russian ambassador spoke English with a foreign accent.

Workbook Vocabulary

amazing (adj)	مذهل	passport (n)	جواز سفر
especially (adv)	بخاصة	price (n)	سعر
flight (n)	رحلة جوية	storm (n)	عاصفة
miss (v) (ed)	يفتقد	voice mail (n)	بريد صوتى
Parthenon (n)	بارثينون (معبد إغريقى فى أثينا)	weather (n)	الطقس

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In the past, there were no roads and no means of .... with the people in remote villages.
a) connection b) collection c) communication d) affection

2 Our neighbours are .... the birth of their third child this week.
a) recuperating b) calibrating c) rewarding d) celebrating

3 Our new flat office is a mess. We need someone to help us .... the furniture.
a) organise b) dispatch c) snatch d) recognise

4 My friend .... that he was having problems, but he didn't explain.
a) reminded b) mentioned c) improved d) reformed

5 After 9 years in London, Jack lost his French .... and you can say he is a Londoner.
a) nationality b) degree c) accent d) note

6 Some Egyptian and foreign archaeologists have made a/an .... discovery in Saqqara recently.
a) terrible b) amazing c) amazed d) awful

7 I've put the date of the party down in my .... so as not to forget it.
a) diary b) dairy c) article d) title

8 Because of television, many people have lost the art of ....; they don't talk to each other more often.
a) disagreement b) connection c) question d) conversation

9 I .... that we'll do some sightseeing while we're here in Luxor.
a) refuse b) reject c) suppose d) recognise

10 During the sale on Black Friday only, all the carpets in the shop were sold at half ....
a) price b) size c) weight d) place

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

all in all	على العموم	keep in touch by	يكون على اتصال بـ
find it hard to	يجد من الصعوبة أن	make sure	يتأكد
from the beginning of	من بداية....	the pros and cons of	مزايا وعيوب
get better at	يتحسن فى	until tomorrow	حتى الغد (عبارة لختام أو وداع)
famous for	مشهور بـ	similar to	مشابه لـ
learn about	يعرف/يتعلم عن	stay with	يقيم مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
amaze	يدهش/يذهل	amazement	دهشة/ذهول	amazing amazed	مدهش/مذهل مندهش
------------------------		culture	ثقافة	cultural	ثقافي
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
organise*	ينظم	organisation organiser	منظمة/تنظيم منظم	organised	منظم
present	يقدم	presentation presenter	عرض مقدم	presentational	تقديمي
summarise	يلخص	summary	ملخص	summarised	مختصر

- They hired a professional to help organise their wedding.
- Our class is responsible for the organisation of the school party.
- In order to do this job well, you have to be very organised.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
amazing	مذهل	astonishing/awesome	ordinary/insignificant عادى/عديم الأهمية
celebrate	يحتفل/ يحتفى بـ	commemorate/honour	condemn/overlook يدين/يتغاضى عن
decide	يقرر	determine/select	hesitate/postpone يتردد/يؤجل
include	يشمل/ يتضمن	involve/contain	exclude/ forget يستبعد/ ينسى
mention	يذكر	declare/name	conceal/ignore يتجاهل/يخفى
organise	ينظم	arrange/regulate	ruin/disturb يدمر/يزعج
summarise	يلخص	sum up/recap	enlarge/expand يوسع

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Employees need to learn how to organise their work. The adjective of the verb "organise" is "..................".
   a) organises b) organisation
   c) organiser d) organised
2. The show is similar .... most quiz shows of most TV channels.
   a) to b) in
   c) at d) of
3. The family gathered to celebrate Christmas. The antonym of the word "celebrate" is "..................".
   a) commemorate b) honour
   c) overlook d) derive
4. .... the beginning of my career as a journalist, I've been writing about politics.
   a) From b) In
   c) Through d) By
5. I believe that most students can .... better if they are given much support.
   a) improvise b) devise
   c) make d) get
6. The scientist mentioned his wife's name in his letter. The verb "mention" is the opposite of the verb "..................".
   a) ignore b) name
   c) honour d) uncover
7. It is important for doctors to .... in touch with the latest developments in medicine.
   a) do b) make
   c) go d) keep
8. Voters must decide between the two candidates. The synonym of the verb "decide" is "..................".
   a) determine b) hesitate
   c) ignore d) condemn

Reading Text (1)

28th November 2020



I've been in London for six weeks now. It's been a great experience so far, but it hasn't always been easy. When I first arrived, I struggled to understand people. But I'm getting better at understanding their accents[1] now. I enjoy listening to Londoners[2] and trying to have conversations with them. You won't believe what happened to me today! I was talking to a woman in a shop and she asked me if I'm from London! Isn't that amazing?

Everyone I've met has been very kind to me, so I feel really at home here. The host family that I'm staying with are really nice. They really look after me! There's always a hot meal waiting on the table when I get home in the evening and I'm getting used to English food!

All in all, I'm really glad that I decided to study in London. I miss my family, but we keep in touch by text message[3]. I've become more independent since I've been away. I have to organise[4] a lot of things on my own and make sure I have enough money, for example. I'm still learning how to do that, but I'm enjoying it.

Until tomorrow!

Heba

(1) لهجات
(2) أهل لندن
(3) رسالة نصية
(4) ينظم

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Dalida's Diary

Monday

Dear diary

I'm very excited. My parents have bought our tickets to Greece, and tomorrow I'm visiting Judy in Athens. I'm going with Adam. He's very independent and knows what to do in new places. I always enjoy travelling with my older brother.

Tuesday

We struggled to leave the house this morning. Adam's always forgetting things and nearly left his passport behind! But we arrived at the airport on time. I believe the flight was longer than usual because there was a storm, but all in all the journey was not too bad. Now I'm looking out of my window at the buildings of Athens. Isn't that amazing? I wish I could see Judy today, but we arrived very late. We're seeing her tomorrow.

Wednesday

You won't believe what happened to me! I've been to the Parthenon! I think i is one of the oldest buildings in the world! Judy took us there this afternoon. Jud loves Athens now and showed us some amazing places, but I'm too tired to writ more now. Until tomorrow.

Listening Text (1)



Teen girl: Hello everyone. In this presentation, I'm going to talk about the pros and cons of working abroad.

When you first think about working abroad it sounds very exciting. But there are a few disadvantages of working abroad as well as advantages. Let's start with the advantages first.

I believe that the best thing about working abroad is probably that you can learn a lot about another country's culture. Imagine[1] trying new food every day and learning about how people from another culture celebrate[2].

Another good reason for working abroad is that it helps you to become more independent. Perhaps you feel that you're independent at home, but when you're living far away from home, you really have to be.

Finally, I think a further argument for working abroad is that you can learn useful skills[3], especially language skills and probably also communication[4] skills. These skills can help you to get a good job when you come back home.

However, there are clearly disadvantages to working abroad as well. One serious disadvantage is that you will probably be a long way from home and miss your family.

And let's not forget that you may not like the country or city that you move to if it's different to your home.

Unfortunately[5], it's sometimes difficult to make friends when you're living abroad too and you might wish you could just go back home and spend time with your old friends.

- يتخيل (1)
- يحتفل (2)
- مهارات (3)
- اتصال/تواصل (4)
- لسوء الحظ (5)

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Judy: Hi Dalida, I imagine you're thinking that I have forgotten you! Don't worry, I haven't! I've just been really busy in my new job here in Greece. Sorry I haven't phoned you before!
As you probably know, I'm helping here in a language school. It's the first time I've worked abroad. It's fun sharing[1] a flat with two other women, but I'm not used to cooking, cleaning and shopping every week for myself! I suppose[2] I'm becoming more independent though.
Greece is very beautiful and I believe that the weather is quite like Cairo but not so hot! I enjoy hearing Greek[3] music, and most of the food tastes really good! Some things are different, though. It is more expensive here, and I don't like the prices[4] of things in the shops!
I'm trying to learn Greek, but it is not easy. When I say something in Greek to people in the shops, they usually answer me in English!
So, I am having a great time, but of course, I miss my friends, especially you.
Call me back some time, or I'll call again later. Bye!

- يشارك (1)
- يفترض/يظن (2)
- يوناني (3)
- أسعار (4)

Video Script

Young people all over the world study at university when they finish their studies at school. They want to find out more about a subject they enjoy, or they study a specific subject to get the job they want.

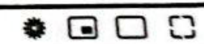
Some students study at universities near to their homes so they can live with their families. However, in some countries, like the UK and the USA, it's normal[1] for students to leave home and live in accommodation[2] that belongs to their university.

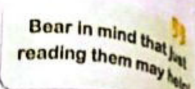
Students often choose to study only one or two subjects at university, and they spend all of their time learning about that subject or subjects. That means they can find out more about specific areas. For example, instead of[3] studying all of biology[4], they can just study the biology of plants.

Students complete a 'degree'[5] while studying at university and this can take three or four years. At the end of their studies, they usually have a big celebration[6] with their families and receive their degree certificates[7].

- طبيعي (1)
- إقامة/مكان إقامة (2)
- بدلًا من (3)
- علم الأحياء (4)
- درجة جامعية (5)
- احتفال (6)
- شهادات (7)

0:00





Notes on Vocabulary

1	**flight** رحلة جوية	The air hostess helped me to enjoy my flight to London.
	voyage رحلة بحرية	The explorer's voyage on the ocean was amazing.
	trip رحلة قصيرة (لغرض معين)	My father went on a business trip to China to buy new machines.
	journey رحلة طويلة (غالبًا برية)	Although the train journey to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.
	picnic نزهة خلوية	City people usually enjoy picnics to the countryside.

2	**share** يشارك أو يتقاسم شيئًا يمكن تقاسمه بين اثنين أو اكثر	We won the lottery and shared the prize money.
	divide يقسم الناس أو الأشياء إلى أجزاء	- We divided the food into two equal parts. - After his death, his property was divided among his children.
	part يَتَفَرّق/يُقسم	The crowd parted to let the happy couple go through. (= separated itself into two parts)

3	**miss** ١- يفتقد ٢- يفوته (شيء)	- He missed 20 games after breaking a bone in his wrist. - John will be sorely missed by his family and friends.
	lose يفقد/يخسر	- Hundreds of people lost their homes in the floods. - Our local basketball team played so badly that they deserved to lose.



4	**weather** الطقس (حالة الجو فى وقت حالى أو محدد)	What was the weather like on your vacation?
	climate المناخ (حالة الجو بشكل عام)	Egypt is known for its mild climate all the year round.
	the outlook الأفق (توقع حالة الطقس فى خلال الأيام القليلة القادمة)	The outlook for the weekend is for continued sunny weather.
5	**diary** يوميات/مذكرات	Mary kept a diary while she was travelling in Europe.
	dairy ألبان/منتجات الألبان	You'll find yogurt in the dairy section of the grocery store.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If your credit card is .... or stolen, you must inform your bank immediately.
   a) missed b) gained
   c) lost d) issued
2. The plane was badly damaged during the .... from Japan to America.
   a) voyage b) flight
   c) picnic d) expedition
3. It was a glorious .... yesterday, so we decided to go for a picnic.
   a) weather b) climate
   c) outlook d) condition
4. My sister .... three days of school when she was sick last month.
   a) gave b) lost
   c) missed d) shared
5. The conference is a good place to .... information and exchange ideas.
   a) swear b) divide
   c) share d) part

Practice



Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The charts and graphs helped me understand the science teacher's .... about the new lesson.
a) appearance b) revolution c) presentation d) deviation

2 There are only three .... a day to New York Airport from Cairo.
a) flights b) voyages c) picnics d) fights

3 I .... that all the tickets of the new movie have been sold now.
a) dislike b) suppose c) permit d) reply

4 Many people advertise their cars in the .... newspaper which comes out on Fridays.
a) general b) private c) local d) whole

5 The books were .... on the shelves according to their size in our school library.
a) imagined b) celebrated c) wasted d) organised

6 The new coach of the team speaks English with a French .... as he is from Switzerland.
a) accent b) dialogue c) conversation d) presentation

7 The report we received in December .... all the reports of the previous months.
a) damaged b) summarised c) realised d) puzzled

8 Most Egyptians in America speak Arabic at home so that the kids don't lose touch with their language and ....
a) culture b) economy c) accent d) phrase

9 The last .... the soldier made in his diary was on October 10th, the day before his death.
a) enter b) entry c) culture d) skill

10 As she was very busy at the meeting, my mum just sent me a text .... to collect my little brother from school.
a) massage b) passage c) message d) messenger

11 Doctors say that if you eat three good .... a day, you're less likely to snack on biscuits and crisps.
a) mails b) recipes c) sandwiches d) meals

12 Most dictionaries .... both British and American spellings of words in the meantime.
a) consist b) exclude c) include d) enclose

13 The manager .... that he would be out of the office the following day for a meeting.
a) reminded b) mentioned c) recommended d) told

14 Hackers may call a company employee and reach their voice ....
a) mail b) note c) passage d) device

15 Twenty people were killed when a violent .... struck the American Coast.
a) air b) draught c) breeze d) storm

16 Stormy .... prevented any play in today's tennis Wimbledon matches.
a) climate b) weather c) atmosphere d) warming

17 A poor grain harvest can lead to higher food .... in many parts of the world.
a) products b) prices c) qualities d) values

18 The company hopes to reach a .... about the new project as soon as possible.
a) decide b) decided c) decision d) decisive

19 We suffered much at the company last year, but all .... all it had been a success.
a) at b) in c) for d) off

20 My little brother .... it hard to learn swimming although he has been training for two weeks.
a) finds b) takes c) gets d) devices

21 I bought some new shoes which are very similar .... a pair I had before.
a) from b) of c) in d) to

22 Father organised a car to meet me at the airport. The synonym of the verb "organise" is "..................".
a) explain b) waste c) damage d) arrange

23 Da Vinci is especially famous .... his portrait of the Mona Lisa
a) about b) of c) for d) at

24 My teacher told me that I have an .... ability to learn new languages.
a) amaze b) amazing c) amazed d) amazement

25 The visit to Aswan was really amazing as I liked it much. The antonym of the adjective "amazing" is "..................".
a) ordinary b) fantastic c) puzzled d) accepted

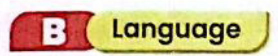
26 After two months at the course, my friend is .... better at English.
a) having b) taking c) giving d) getting

27 At the music festival, you can have fun and learn .... music at the same time.
a) at b) out c) about d) at

28 The musician's performance was really amazing. "Amazing" is a synonym for ".................." . (Longman)
a) difficult b) awesome c) ordinary d) boring

29 I don't want you to expand the main idea; I just want you to .... the main points. (Longman)
a) stop b) refuse c) summarise d) clarify

30 The manager has made a .... to decrease the number of workers to face the financial problems the company faces. (Longman)
a) repetition b) decision c) oppression d) commission





Present Continuous and Present Simple المضارع المستمر و البسيط

وللوصول للفهم الحقيقى لأزمنة المضارع يجب التفرقة بين زمنى المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر لأن الأفعال غير الحركية لا تأتى فى المضارع المستمر وتأتى فى المضارع البسيط.

Present continuous	Present simple
Now الآن	**Always دائمًا**
‣ It's raining at the moment.	‣ It always rains in winter.
‣ I'm watching this programme.	‣ I watch television most weekends.
‣ Look! This man is taking a photo of you.	‣ He takes lots of photos. He's a photographer.
Temporary مؤقت	**Permanent دائم**
‣ I'm working at a sports shop for six weeks.	‣ I work at a sports shop. It's permanent.
‣ They are living in a small flat these days.	‣ They live in a very nice flat.

2 Stative verbs أفعال الثبات/الحالة

1. Most stative verbs are not usually used in the present continuous even when they describe a situation that is happening now:

١- لا تُستخدم معظم أفعال الحالة عادة فى المضارع المستمر حتى عندما تصف موقفًا يحدث الآن:

‣ He wants fish for dinner. He seems to be tired now.

‣ He needs to buy a large flat.

- ويمكن تقسيم أفعال الحالة حسب نوعها كالآتى:

Perception and senses الإدراك والإحساس	feel	يشعر بـ	see	يرى	observe	يلاحظ
	hear	يسمع	smell	يشم	perceive	يدرك
	notice	يلاحظ	taste	يتذوق		
Emotions العواطف	like	يحب	admire	يعجب بـ	detest	يمقت
	love	يحب	adore	يعشق	envy	يحسد
	hate	يكره	appreciate	يقدر	fear	يخاف
	dislike	يكره	care	يهتم	trust	يثق فى
	regret	يندم	respect	يحترم	pity	يشفق
Mental states الحالات العقلية	agree	يوافق	expect	يتوقع	suppose	يفترض
	disagree	يعترض	guess	يخمن	suspect	يشك
	believe	يعتقد	hesitate	يتردد	think	يعتقد
	disbelieve	لا يصدق	imagine	يتخيل	understand	يفهم
	know	يعرف	mean	يعنى	wonder	يتساءل
	mind	يمانع	presume	يفترض	see	يرى
	find	يجد	realise	يدرك	doubt	يشك
	consider	يعتبر	recognise	يتعرف على	forget	ينسى
	estimate	يخمن/يقدر	remember	يتذكر		
Appearance and value المظهر والقيمة	appear	يظهر	resemble	يشبه	represent	يرمز
	be	يكون	seem	يبدو	look	يبدو
	cost	يكلف	signify	يشير/يفيد	matter	يهم/يؤثر
	equal	يساوى	sound	يبدو	weigh	يزن
	exist	يوجد				
Possessions الملكية	belong	يخص	have	يملك	possess	يمتلك
	contain	يحتوى على	own	يمتلك	include	يتضمن
	lack	ينقص				
Wants and preferences الإرادة والتفضيل	hope	يأمل	prefer	يفضل	wish	يتمنى
	need	يحتاج	want	يريد	desire	يرغب

2. Some verbs of feeling can be used in both the simple and continuous with no change in meaning:

٢- يمكن اســتخدام بعض أفعال المشـاعر فى المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر دون تغيير فى المعنى ومنها feel/ache/hurt/look:

- You look/are looking nice today.
- My back hurts/is hurting again. I must go to the doctor.
- Do you feel/Are you feeling OK today?

3. With verbs which describe a sense, we use the simple form or can/could + verb.

٣- مع الأفعال التى تصف الحواس يمكن استخدام الشكل البسيط أو can/could + inf.:

- I can smell the fertiliser. Are we in the countryside now?
- I can hear someone screaming outside. What is happening?



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I need my CD player if you .... it at the moment.
a) don't using b) use
c) aren't using d) don't use

2 I know Hala's flat, but I .... her phone number.
a) don't remember b) remember
c) am not remembering d) remembering

3 Don't phone him now as he .... lunch.
a) was having b) has had
c) has d) is having

4 My friend .... pleased. Something good must have happened.
a) look b) looks
c) will look d) looking

5 A: .... on the phone? B: No, he is doing his homework right now.
a) Does Ramy talk b) Has Ramy talked
c) Is Ramy talking d) Can Ramy talk




Practice — Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She can't do her shopping at the moment because it .... heavily.
a) is raining b) rains c) will rain d) isn't raining

2 This is the new camera I bought last week. I .... a photo of you now.
a) take b) took c) 'm taking d) had taken

3 My uncle .... as an engineer. It is his permanent job.
a) is working b) work c) had worked d) works

4 My father .... hard these days as he needs money for our school fees.
a) worked b) is working c) had worked d) works

5 He can't make a sound decision as he .... of many things.
a) is thinking b) thinks c) was thinking d) thought

6 I .... it's too late to apply for that job now.
a) supposes b) supposing c) am supposing d) suppose

7 I know that our team are practising hard these days. They .... to win the cup.
a) wanting b) are wanting c) want d) wanted

8 Why don't you wait for Ali in the living room? He .... a shower.
a) had had b) is having c) have d) has

9 You aren't careful; you .... the same mistake again.
a) are always making b) making
c) had made d) won't make

10 A: Have you found a house yet?
B: No, I .... with my uncle at the moment.
a) will stay b) stayed c) stay d) 'm staying

11 More and more people .... their rubbish nowadays.
a) recycling b) are recycling c) recycled d) will recycle

12 Hoda's little sister .... very helpful today. That's nice!
a) is b) is been c) is being d) was been

13 Look! The girls are running to catch the bus. They .... to be in a hurry.

a) seemed b) seem

c) are seeming d) are seemed

14 Asmaa .... very happy at the moment.

a) isn't seeming b) is seeming

c) doesn't seem d) seemed

15 I .... of going to London and visiting my old friends this month.

a) am thinking b) was thinking

c) am thought d) thinking

16 **A:** I am thinking of visiting Hazem this afternoon.

B: Don't bother. I .... he's on a business trip.

a) am thinking b) thinking

c) thought d) think

17 Mona is really enjoying her holiday on the island. She .... a really good time.

a) will have b) had

c) is having d) has

18 My father .... an apple now. He .... an apple every day.

a) is eating/eats b) eats/is eating

c) eating/eats d) ate/is eating

19 He always .... while he .... a bath.

a) sing/has b) sings/is having

c) is singing/has d) sang/is having

20 One of the following questions is grammatically correct:

a) Is he waiting for the bus on the corner every day?

b) Is he often going to the park yet?

c) Is he having a beautiful house by the Nile?

d) Is he having a meeting at the office now?

21 **A:** Why .... the sauce? Does it need more pepper?

B: No. It .... great the way it is.

a) do you taste/tastes b) do you taste/is tasting

c) are you tasting/tastes d) are you tasting/is tasting

22 One of the following is incorrectly structured:

a) The house smells very good when we bake cakes.

b) I taste the soup now to see if it needs salt.

c) I'm smelling the milk now, and it doesn't smell bad.

d) What does "terrific" mean?

23 I .... tired these days and I want to have a rest.

a) am feeling b) felt c) can feel d) was feeling

24 **A:** What is the matter with you?

B: ....

a) I am thinking that Ali will come to the party next week

b) I'm needing some money to buy a new shirt

c) I can't study well and I'm forgetting everything

d) I have a bad cold and I'm seeing the doctor tonight

25 Can you go downtown with me right now?

a) No, I eat lunch.

b) No, I take care of my son.

c) No, I'm waiting for a phone call.

d) No, I'm understanding my lessons.

26 The weather is very nice here in winter. The sun .... to be shining on most days. *(Longman)*

a) is seeming b) seem c) seems d) had seemed

27 Hatem wants to travel to China, but he .... enough Chinese at the moment. *(Longman)*

a) doesn't know b) isn't knowing

c) hadn't known d) don't know

28 We are having lunch now. The verb have here is a verb showing .... *(Longma*

a) order b) action c) sense d) command

29 I have already confirmed the reservation; I .... to Rome tomorrow. *(Longm*

a) will fly b) was flying

c) had flown d) am flying

30 I haven't seen you for a long time. I .... you so much. *(Longr*

a) am missing b) miss

c) had missed d) going to miss

Test yourself



Part 2
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 In Egypt, many wives don't .... their husbands' love of sport.
a) share b) divide c) part d) insist

2 In this course, students will have the opportunity to learn a lot of practical ....
a) skulls b) skills c) roles d) divisions

3 The tour office's staff will do their best to .... sure the tourists enjoy their visit.
a) do b) take c) make d) lose

4 The driver was so distracted that he .... the turn and had to go back after two kilometers.
a) devised b) followed c) lost d) missed

5 The rich couple .... their 10th wedding anniversary in Paris.
a) invited b) celebrated c) ratified d) mentioned

6 The encyclopedia includes the names of all Nobel Prize winners. The antonym of the verb "include" is "..................".
a) exclude b) involve c) derive d) relieve

7 The tourist had a foreign .... although he can speak a little Arabic.
a) detection b) culture c) accent d) intention

8 On the 6th of October, ... to the Military Museum is free celebrating the Victory Day.
a) enter b) entry c) exit d) existence

9 The .... recorder should help to establish why the plane suddenly crashed.
a) voyage b) manual c) flight d) picnic

10 I hung up the phone as I saw no point in continuing the .... with the customer service clerk.
a) intention b) acceptance c) intonation d) conversation

11 The report about the new system .... a number of recommendations to make it better.
a) consists b) includes c) researches d) encloses

12 In our ...., it is not proper to ask anyone how much they earn.
a) culture b) adventure c) capture d) texture

13 My neighbour seems very proud of his son as he .... his name in all his talks.
a) reminds b) mentions c) calls d) teaches

14 I asked the teacher to .... the most important points in the grammar lesson.
a) nationalise b) provide c) summarise d) realise

15 The weather wasn't very good during our trip, but all .... all, we enjoyed it.
a) at b) for c) about d) in

Language

16 Ramy .... his music very loud. I can't sleep.
a) plays b) played c) has played d) is playing

17 **A:** Why is Hamdy being so rude today?
B: I have no idea. He .... usually very polite.
a) was b) is being c) is d) being

18 Hany is never satisfied. He ....
a) 's always complaining b) complain
c) complaining d) is complain

19 **A:** I see you .... a new mobile phone.
B: Yes, but I am having trouble understanding how it works.
a) are having b) having c) has d) have

20 Look! That man .... to open the door of your car.
a) tries b) is trying c) was trying d) trying

21 **A:** Why are you looking at the sky?
B: It .... as if it's going to rain.
a) looks b) looking c) looked d) was looking

22 I .... the meaning of that word.
a) not understand b) don't understand
c) am not understanding d) understanding

23 I must go now. It .... late.
a) is getting b) gets c) getting d) get

24 I .... to know more about the job before I decide whether to apply for it.
a) am needing b) have needed c) need d) needing

25 My daughter .... fond of eating fast foods.
a) always is being b) is always being c) always is d) is always

26 Hany always .... jeans, but today he is wearing a suit.
a) is wearing b) had worn c) wears d) wearing

27 He .... his glasses, so he can't read the small words in the paper.
a) wears b) isn't wearing c) doesn't wear d) is wearing

28 One of the following is correctly structured:
a) They hate to get to school late. b) Is she liking to go shopping?
c) I'm hating to drink coffee. d) Nader works at a hotel for a week.

29 **A:** What is Ahmed doing there?
B: He ....
a) is finding the doctor's clinic b) looks ill and is trying to find a doctor
c) looks for the doctor's clinic d) finds the doctor's clinic

30 He usually .... coffee, but today he .... tea.
a) drank / is drinking b) drunk / drinks
c) drinks / is drinking d) drinks / was drinking





Writing Skill

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

A diary entry تدوينة مذكرات

Imagine that you are going to visit or have just visited a place for the first time. Write a diary entry for three days.

Writing tips

- Write about the day before you go to the place.
- Describe the day you arrive at the place.
- Write about the next day.

Thursday

I'm very excited to start our holiday in France. My father has just bought the ticket to Paris. I have already packed my bag before that. I'm travelling with my parents and my brother. This is my first trip abroad and I have been looking for this trip for a long time.

Friday

We arrived in Paris late at night. The hotel where we are staying is very nice. Although it isn't a five-star hotel, the rooms are nice and the staffs are all friendly. Tomorrow, we are starting our tour. We are going to the Eiffel Tower. I can't wait until tomorrow.

Saturday

We visited the Eiffel Tower this morning. We climbed the tower and enjoyed the view of Paris from the top. Isn't that amazing? The lunch we had at the restaurant at the tower was marvellous. We took a lot of photos there.

Practice



1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Plants are important to us. All the food that we eat comes either directly or indirectly from plants. However, the question is, what do plants eat? Well, they do not actually[1] eat the way we do, but they make their own food. The process[2] by which this takes place[3] is called photosynthesis[4]. Plants make food in their leaves. The leaves contain a pigment[5] called chlorophyll which gives the leaves their green colour. Besides chlorophyll, plants also need the light from the sun to help in their food production. Besides the sun, plants can also make food with the use of other light sources such as a light bulb[6]. For photosynthesis to take place, plants also need carbon dioxide that is found in the air. Animals and people help in providing carbon dioxide for the plants to make food when they breathe out[7]. Lastly, but just as important, plants make use of their roots to absorb[8] the nutrients[9] found in the soil to help them make food. When all these different things are present, plants can then make food. In the process of making food, plants release oxygen, which is beneficial[10] to animals and people. Plants, animals and people are dependent[11] on one another to survive, plants provide oxygen for animals and people to breathe, and animals and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to make food.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Where does photosynthesis take place?
a) In the plants' leaves. b) In the plants' trunk.
c) In the plants' roots. d) In the plants' fruit.

2 What does the pigment in the tree do?
a) It gives chlorophyll. b) It gives the leaves their colour.
c) It gives the tree its food. d) It gives us oxygen.

3 Animals and people provide carbon dioxide for the plants to ________ .
a) kill them b) absorb nutrients found in the soil
c) colour the leaves d) help them make their food

4 The antonym of the word "providing" is "________".
a) offering b) delivering
c) withdrawing d) making available



(1) بالفعل/حقًا
(2) عملية
(3) يحدث
(4) البناء الضوئي
(5) صبغة
(6) المصباح الكهربائي
(7) يزفر
(8) يمتص
(9) مواد مغذية
(10) مفيد
(11) اتكالي/معتمد على

8 Plants, animals and people are .... one another to survive.

(A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Travelling abroad has many benefits for young people. It can help them experience a different lifestyle, modern methods of education and explore the world around them.

2 We all owe much to scientists who are working hard to discover new techniques to cure fatal diseases. This will lead to helping people suffer less.

a) كلنا ندين بالكثير العلماء الذين يعملون بصعوبة لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يقود إلى تأقلم الناس مع تقليل المعاناة.

b) كلنا ندين بالتقدير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لتطوير أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يقود إلى مساعدة الناس على تقليل المتاعب.

c) كلنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المميتة وهذا سوف يقود إلى مساعدة الناس على تقليل المعاناة.

d) كلنا ندين بالكثير للعلماء الذين يعملون بجد لاكتشاف أساليب جديدة لمعالجة الأمراض المزمنة وهذا سوف يقود إلى مساعدة الأطباء لتقليل المعاناة.

3 The Project of the New Administrative Capital is a massive project which will move Egypt to new horizons. It also will create a great number of jobs for young people.

a) مشروع المدينة الإدارية الجديدة هو مشروع ضخم سينقل مصر إلى آفاق جديدة. وأيضا سيخلق عددا مناسبا من فرص العمل للشباب.

b) مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة هو مشروع ضخم سينقل مصر إلى آفاق جديدة. وأيضا سيخلق عددا كبيرا من فرص العمل للشباب.

c) مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة هو برنامج ضخم سينقل مصر إلى آفاق واسعة. وأيضا سيخلق عددا كبيرا من فرص العمل للشباب.

d) مشروع العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة هو فكرة ضخمة سينقل مصر إلى آفاق جديدة. وأيضا سيخلق عددا كبيرا من فرص العمل للأجيال.

4 Egypt is famous for its ancient monuments that attract millions of tourists.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6

7

a) In the past, many students chose European universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to prevent the same opportunities.

b) In the past, few students chose foreign universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, national universities have been established to provide the same opportunities.

c) In the past, many students chose foreign universities to complete their tasks at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to provide the same works.

d) In the past, many students chose foreign universities to complete their studies at famous universities. However, modern universities have been established to provide the same opportunities.

8 يجب أن نشجع الشباب على الالتحاق بالنوادي الرياضية التي تسهم في توجيههم للطريق الصواب وتحميهم من مخاطر التطرف والإرهاب.

a) We should encourage young people to join sports clubs which contribute to guiding them to the right path and protect them from the dangers of extremism and terrorism.
b) We should encourage young people to join sports clubs which contribute to serving them to the right path and protect them from the dangers of tourism and terrorism.
c) We should discourage young people to join sports clubs which mislead to guiding them to the right path and protect them from the risks of extremism and terrorism.
d) We should encourage young people to avoid sports clubs which contribute to guiding them to the right path and develop them from the dangers of extremism and terrorism.

9 يعتقد بعض الخبراء أنه يجب على الطالب أن يلتحق بالكلية التي تناسب قدراته ومواهبه لأن ذلك سوف يمكنه من أن يتفوق فيها ويحقق أعلى الدرجات.

a) Some experts believe that the student must join the college that suits his/ her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades.
b) Some experts believe that the student must enjoy the college that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades.
c) Some specialists believe that the student must join the college that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest grades.
d) Some experts believe that the student must join the colleague that suits his/her abilities and talents because that will enable him/her to excel and achieve the highest degrees.

10 تعمل الحكومة على تطوير الرعاية الصحية للمواطنين؛ لأن ذلك سيؤدي إلى زيادة الإنتاج وتنمية الاقتصاد لكن ذلك قد يستغرق سنوات من أجل إصلاح النظم الصحية.

a) The government is working on developing health care for citizens because this will lead to decreasing production and developing economy. However, this may take years to inform health care systems.
b) The government is working on developing health care for tourists because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. But, this would take years to reform health care systems.
c) The government is working on producing health care for citizens because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. However, this may take years to reform health care styles.
d) The government is working on developing health care for citizens because this will lead to increasing production and developing economy. But, this may take years to reform health care systems.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having a lot of money does not always bring happiness."

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The President made a speech expressing his .... to rebuild the economy.
a) appearance b) determination c) avoidance d) facilitation

2 You must read the dictionary .... carefully to know the distinction between these two words.
a) enters b) entries c) exits d) indexes

3 The businessman has two big flats in Sharm El Sheikh, not to .... his villa in 6th October city.
a) remember b) remind c) mention d) study

4 The secretary wrote down the conference date in the manager's ....
a) diary b) dairy c) article d) title

5 It is easy to .... distracted if you are working with children playing around.
a) have b) do c) gain d) get

6 The police report mentioned some of the criminal's helpers. The synonym of the verb "mention" is "...............".
a) doubt b) deny c) name d) improve

7 I'm so happy, Emad! My parents and I .... on holiday next week.
a) have gone b) are going c) go d) went

8 Galal .... to go home right now.
a) wants b) want c) is wanting d) has wanted

9 Mr Hossam .... accurate. He gives the correct and true details.
a) is always being b) always is
c) is always d) has always

10 I .... that the situation is out of control.
a) 'm seeing b) will see c) sees d) see

11 Samy and Waleed .... hard these days.
a) study b) are studying c) have studied d) will study

12 I .... something outside. Are the doors locked?
a) am hearing b) hearing c) hears d) can hear

13 I .... taking early retirement. This is something I'm thinking about now.

a) 'm considering
b) considering
c) considered
d) consider

14 Which one of the following is grammatically correct?

a) They are having a nice house.
b) She usually isn't having a good time shopping.
c) People like Ahmed because he is being polite.
d) We don't have a lot of fun going to the dentist.

15 He can't come tomorrow as he .... a meeting with a foreign delegation at his office.

a) has
b) had to have
c) is having
d) always has

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The bell rang. Miss Fareeda had just finished explaining the last sum to the class. Before she could say another word, some of the students stood up. They were ready to head to the canteen. Miss Fareeda told them sternly, "There isn't any need to rush. There's plenty of food and time for you to have your recess[1]." She insisted that the class went for their recess in an orderly manner.

However, once she was out of sight, the boys started jostling[2] each other down the stairs. There was a lot of pushing, shoving[3] and laughing. Suddenly, there was a loud thud[4] followed by a scream. Everyone on the stairs stopped in their tracks.

It turned out that one of the boys in front had missed a step and fallen. He landed hard on his elbow. The bone jutted[5] out. The boy was whimpering[6] in pain. His friend quickly helped him up and brought him to the office. The principal[7] took one look at the injury and immediately called for an ambulance. While waiting, the other boys in the group were questioned. When told what they were doing on the stairs, the principal shook his head. The injured boy and his friends hung their heads in shame. They apologised for their behaviour. The principal said, "Let this be a lesson to you."

The injured boy was then brought to the hospital. The following week, he returned to school with a cast around his arm.

(1) فسحة
(2) تزاحم
(3) تدافع
(4) صوت الخبط
(5) خرج من مكانه
(6) يصرخ
(7) مدير



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 What was the lesson the class had just before the bell rang?

a) Physics.
b) English.
c) Maths.
d) Chemistry.

17 What caused the loud thud?

a) A boy had fallen down the stairs.
b) Some stairs fell over.
c) There was a fight on the stairs.
d) Some boys were running down the stairs.

18 The boys didn't follow ....

a) the school rules
b) Mrs. Fareeda's advice
c) the traffic rules
d) the right stairs

19 The antonym of the word "sternly" is "................".

a) firmly
b) severely
c) strictly
d) softly

20 As soon as the principal took one look at the injury, he ....

a) called for the ambulance
b) blamed Mrs. Fareeda's
c) screamed loudly
d) did nothing

21 The boys realised that they were .... and apologised for their behaviour.

a) innocent
b) happy
c) guilty
d) brave

22 As the boy was screaming, it's thought that ....

a) he was punished by his teacher
b) his arm was broken
c) he had been informed about something bad
d) something bad happened to one of his friends

23 The story teaches us ....

a) to follow other people's advice especially the elderly
b) not to walk down the stairs
c) to keep casts at schools for emergencies
d) walk quickly or run

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- We must forget our disagreements and disputes and unite for the sake of Egypt. It's our beloved country which has faced all hardships and remained strong against enemies.

a) يجب أن ننسى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتناقش من أجل مصر فهى بلدنا الحبيب الذى واجه كل الصراعات وبقى قوياً أمام أعدائه.
b) يجب أن ننسى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصر فهى بلدنا الحبيب الذى واجه كل الصعوبات وبقى قوياً أمام أعدائه.
c) يجب أن ننسى خلافاتنا وتوقعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصر فهى بلدنا الحبيب الذى واجه كل الإنجازات وبقى قوياً أمام أعدائه.
d) يفضل أن ننسى خلافاتنا ونزاعاتنا ونتحد من أجل مصر فهى بلدنا الحبيب الذى واجه كل الصعوبات وبقى قوياً أمام حدوده.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن إصلاح التعليم هو السبيل الأمثل لإصلاح الفرد والمجتمع؛ فالتعليم هو الطريق الأمثل لبناء المواطن الصالح القادر على مواجهة تحديات العصر.

a) No one can deny that reforming education is the best way to reform the individual and society. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to meet the challenges of the age.

b) No one can mention that reforming education is the best way to reform the individual and society. Education is the best way to invent the good citizen who is able to meet the challenges of the age.

c) No one can deny that reforming learning is the best way to reform the individual and society. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to avoid the challenges of the age.

d) No one can deny that mending education is the best way to reform the individual and environment. Education is the best way to build the good citizen who is able to meet the challenges of the age.

26 Answer the following questions:

1. Edmund left so as not to see his father being punished by Cornwall. What does this show about him?
2. If you were Gloucester, would you help the King ? Why?
3. Do you think that Cornwall was right to trust Edmund after betraying his own father? Why?

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The way advertisements can affect people"

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص351

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!







High-tech transport

Unit 8

Objectives



Reading : A notice about the expansion of the Cairo metro network

Writing : A speech for or against an argument; An email to the local government about public transport

Listening : A talk show debate about the future of transport

Speaking : A discussion about the advantages and disadvantages of using public transport; Asking and answering questions about a schedule

Language : Future perfect

Life Skills : Critical thinking; Problem solving; Respect for diversity



A Vocabulary

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Key Vocabulary

expansion (n)	مد/تمديد	network (n)	شبكة
facilities (n)*	إمكانيات/تسهيلات/مرافق	public (adj)	عام
high-tech (adj)	ذو تكنولوجيا عالية	transport (n)	نقل/مواصلات

* The hotel provides excellent facilities for children.

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

add (v) (ed)	يضيف	gas (n)	غاز
addition (n)	إضافة	gate (n)	بوابة
affordable (adj)	يمكن تحمل نفقاته	guess (v) (ed)	يخمن
authority (n)	سلطة/هيئة	importance (n)	أهمية
available (adj)	متوفر	improve (v) (d)	يحسن/يتحسن
central (adj)	مركزى/متوسط	increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة
check in (v) (ed)	يقوم بمراجعة أوراق السفر	instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
complete (adj) (v) (d)	كامل/يكمل	length (n)	طول/مدة
connect (v) (ed)	يربط/يصل	line (n)	خط
damage (v) (d)	يتلف	metro (n)	مترو
driverless (adj)	بلا سائق	notice (n)	ملاحظة/إشعار
electric (adj)	كهربى	organisation (n)	منظمة
environmentally (adv)	بيئيًا	passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
equipment (n)	معدات	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	polluting (adj)	ملوث
precise (adj)	دقيق/محدد	size (n)	حجم/مقاس
private (adj)	خاص	take place (v)	يحدث/يتم
production (n)	إنتاج	total (adj)	كلى/إجمالى
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى/يقى من	tram (n)	ترام (وسيلة مواصلات)
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل	underground (adj) (adv) (n)	تحت الأرض/مترو الأنفاق
schedule (n)	جدول	vehicle (n)	مركبة
security controls	إجراءات تحكم أمنية		

Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة	Greater Cairo (n)	القاهرة الكبرى
bridge (n)	جسر/كوبرى	interrupt (v) (ed)	يقاطع/يعترض
close (adj)	قريب	introduce (v) (d)	يقدم
coast (n)	ساحل	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن
construction (n)	إنشاء/تشييد	monorail (n)	قطار كهربائى معلق
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج	network (n)	شبكة
disagreement (n)	عدم اتفاق/اعتراض	New Administrative City	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة
doubt (n) (v) (ed)	شك/يشك	railway (n)	سكك حديدية
emphasise (v) (d)	يؤكد على	series (n)	سلسلة/مسلسل (تليفزيونى)
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	suburb (n)	ضاحية
first-aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	tunnel (n)	نفق
form (n)	شكل		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Drinking water is brought to the town through a/an .... of underground pipes.
   a) line b) network c) discipline d) authority
2. Modern .... systems have been a severe threat to the environment, causing a lot of pollution.
   a) security b) computer c) transport d) education
3. According to the rules, passengers must .... in one hour before the flight leaves.
   a) get b) look c) apply d) check
4. Thousands of ancient Egyptian statues will be put on .... display in the Grand Egyptian Museum.
   a) public b) special c) accepted d) awful
5. Lack of space is the main restraint عائق on our factory's plans for ....
   a) damage b) application c) expansion d) pressure
6. Like most .... products when they first hit the market, new smart watches won't be cheap.
   a) outdated b) degraded c) old-fashioned d) high-tech
7. When she got off the plane, her mother was waiting for her at the airport ....
   a) gate b) hole c) dock d) store
8. One of the main disadvantages of cars is the .... gases which damage the environment.
   a) valuable b) polluting c) effective d) impressive
9. We had to .... our old air conditioner with a new one that is working properly.
   a) place b) position c) replace d) reflect
10. The information about the new vaccine is freely .... on the internet.
    a) available b) secret c) avoidable d) affecting

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

along the coast	عبر الساحل	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
around the world	حول العالم	over the next years	خلال السنوات القادمة
forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	take a test	يمتحن
agree with	يتفق مع	increase in	زيادة فى
bad for	سيئ لـ	part of	جزء من
close to	قريب من	plan for	يخطط لـ
give up	يقلع عن	travel around	يتنقل
go down	ينخفض	work for	يعمل لدى
importance of	أهمية لـ		

Read the derivatives well and link them to real life in visual images.

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
connect	يربط/يصل	connection	صلة/ارتباط	connected	متصل
construct	ينشئ/يشيد	construction	إنشاء/تشييد	constructive	بنَّاء/تشييدى
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation creator	إبداع/خلق مبدع	creative	مبدع
emphasise	يؤكد على	emphasis	تأكيد	emphatic	مؤكد
expand	يمد/يوسع	expansion	مد/تمديد/توسيع	expandable	قابل للتوسيع
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	interruption	مقاطعة/اعتراض	interrupted	متقطع
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمى
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع/إقناعى
produce	ينتج	production product producer	إنتاج منتج منتج/القائم على الإنتاج	productive	منتج
protect	يحمى/يقى من	protection	حماية/وقاية	protective	واقٍ

- In the past, all houses were constructed of local materials.
- Work has begun on the construction of the new airport.
- Our manager welcomes any constructive suggestions.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
central	مركزى/متوسط	main/basic	additional/extra إضافى
construction	إنشاء/تشييد	development/building	disarrangement/destruction عدم ترتيب/تدمير
emphasise	يؤكد على	stress/assert	deny/ignore ينكر/يتجاهل
expansion	توسيع/مد	growth/enlargement	decrease/reduction تقليل/خفض
interrupt	يقاطع/يعترض	bother/disturb	assist/aid يساعد
involve	يتضمن	include/contain	exclude/abandon يستبعد
persuade	يقنع	convince/urge	discourage/prevent يثبط (لا يشجع)
precise	دقيق/محدد	exact/accurate	imprecise/indefinite غير دقيق/غير محدد
protect	يحمى/يقى من	keep/save	destroy/endanger يدمر/يعرض للخطر
total	كلى/إجمالى	complete/whole	partial/incomplete جزئى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are plans to build more new cities in Egypt .... the next years.
   a) on b) off c) for d) over
2. Doctors emphasised the importance of fresh fruit and vegetables in the diet. The noun of the verb "emphasise" is "..................".
   a) emphasises b) emphasised c) emphatic d) emphasis
3. It's important to protect your skin from the harmful effects of the sun. The synonym of the verb "protect" is "..................".
   a) keep b) destroy c) endanger d) construct
4. The tourist company's income went .... as a result of the Coronavirus pandemic last year.
   a) off b) down c) in d) into
5. Through the national projects, the government plans to .... more jobs for young people.
   a) create b) creation c) creator d) creative
6. Prevention plays a central role in traditional medicine. The word "central" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
   a) far b) main c) partial d) heavy
7. In many countries, a lot of concrete barriers were built .... the coast to protect the beaches from floods.
   a) in b) up c) along d) down
8. There are plans for a massive expansion of the oil and gas industries. The antonym of the noun "expansion" is "..................".
   a) growth b) reduction c) delivery d) enlargement

Reading Text (1)

Cairo Metro network: Expansion work



(1)	مد/تمديد/ توسيع
(2)	مترو القاهرة
(3)	شبكة
(4)	ذو تكنولوجيا عالية
(5)	النقل العام
(6)	يربط/يصل
(7)	جدول
(8)	محسن/مطور

We hope that all our passengers will enjoy using our new Line 3. This expansion[1] of the Cairo Metro[2] adds seven kilometres and six new stations to our underground network[3].

Line 3 will help people in the east of the city to get to work faster and more easily because it connects Heliopolis and the central station of Adly Mansour. We expect that 1.5 million passengers will use the new line this year.

High-tech[4] systems were used to build this 21st Century public transport[5] system, and more expansion work is planned for in the future. By 2030, we expect to have built three more new lines to bring the total number to six.
We are already building Line 4 and we will have completed it by 2024. Line 4 will connect[6] the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city. However, due to the expansion work on Line 4, some trains will be late and we may have to close some stations for short periods of time.

Although we don't have a precise schedule[7] for the building work on Line 5 and 6 at the moment, we expect to have started building Line 5 by the end of next year.

We would like to thank all Cairo Metro passengers for your understanding while the building work is taking place. We hope that you will enjoy using the improved[8] underground network.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

(Public transport) projects for the future

Public transport[1] networks everywhere will improve a lot over the next ten years. Here is a look at some of the biggest projects being planned around the world.

In Cairo, there are plans to create the first public transport connection from both New Administrative City and 6th of October City to the Greater Cairo area.

The Cairo Monorail will involve the construction of two monorail lines which will take passengers 52 km from New Administrative City to East Cairo, and 42 km from 6th of October City to the Greater Cairo area. The lines will open in 2025.

There are plans for an expansion of the Paris underground network in France. Using the latest technology, the underground[2] Line 18 will connect Orly airport to the suburb of Versailles. 21 km of the 35 km-long line will be high-tech. It will open in 2030.

By 2030, there are plans to build the longest tunnel in Australia's history.

The 50 km-long tunnel will be part of the new Sydney Metro West underground system[3]. The project involves 10,000 workers including engineers.

In the north of Europe, Sweden is building a new train line along the coast of the country. The 270 km line will be finished in 2030 and will carry more than 1.6 million passengers[4] a year.

(1) النقل العام
(2) مترو الأنفاق
(3) نظام
(4) ركاب

Listening Text (1) (Workbook)

Huda : Which is the best way to travel?
Injy : I think the answer is quite clear. Flying.
Huda : I'm sorry, but that isn't true. Flying causes a lot of pollution.
Injy : I'm not so sure about that. Modern planes don't cause much pollution because …
Huda : Can I just say something here? Planes create more than ten times the pollution of a train!
Injy : Yes, but it is much more expensive to build railway lines than airports. What would you say to that?





Listening Text (2)

Talk show host: So, this evening, I'd like to welcome our two guests. We have Karima, who works for an organisation[1] that wants us to use public transport more often. And we also have Nadiya, who works for a company that makes electric cars. Karima, maybe you could start the conversation. Why do you think more people will have decided to use public transport in twenty years' time?

Karima : Well, I think the answer is quite clear. Because the dangerous gases[2] that cars produce are bad for the environment. By the 2040s, everybody will have realised that and decided to do something about it.

Nadiya : I'm sorry, but that isn't true of all cars. The electric cars that we make don't produce any gases that damage[3] the environment. They're very environmentally friendly. Experts believe that by 2030 most people will have bought an electric vehicle.



Karima : I'm not so sure about that, Nadiya. Do you really think that all drivers will have changed the type of vehicle they drive in less than ten years? I think that by 2050 the price of electric cars won't have gone down so much that everyone can buy one.

Talk show host: Can I just say something here? By 2030, the types of transport available[4] to us will have changed completely – don't you think? Perhaps we will have flying vehicles instead of driving on the roads. And if we do still have cars, we won't drive them ourselves because we'll have bought driverless[5] cars. What would you say to that?

Nadiya : Whatever happens in the future, in ten years we won't have given up on driving our own vehicles, because they are a private[6] space. So, let's make sure those vehicles are environmentally friendly.

Talk show host: Karima?

Karima : Well, I think people will still want to travel in the future, of course, but everyone will have realised that protecting the environment is the most important thing and choose public transport instead.

(1) منظمة
(2) غازات
(3) يتلف
(4) متوفر/متاح
(5) بلا سائق
(6) خاص

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

تستخدم (notice) كاسم بمعان مختلفة.

notice ملاحظة/انتباه/اهتمام	This problem may not have received your notice so far.
notice = sign إشعار (بيان مطبوع لإعطاء معلومة أو تحذير)	The notice on the wall says "No smoking".
notice = warning تحذير من شىء مستقبلى	The authorities closed the factory, giving the workers only a week's notice.
notice = review نقد أو رأى عن فيلم/ قصة مطبوعة فى جريدة	- The new play got mixed notices in the newspapers.

1

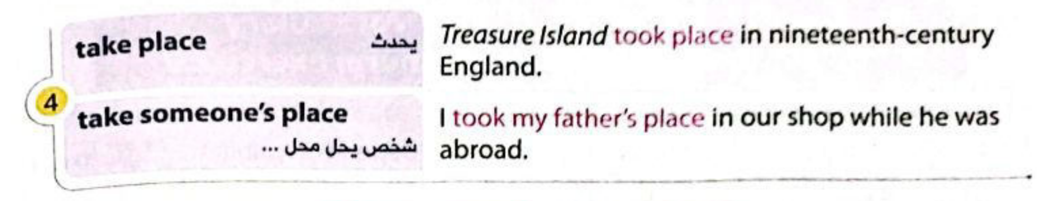
لاحظ أيضًا أن (notice) يستخدم كفعل بمعنى (يلاحظ).

- He noticed a woman in a black dress sitting across from him.

2

public عام (يمكن للجميع استخدامه)	You now have to pay to use the public toilets at the park.
general عام (غير محدد)	They gave a general description of the new site of the company.

electric كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)	(used about something that works using electricity) - Is your cooker electric or gas?
electrical كهربائى (يستخدم الكهرباء - يعمل بإنتاج أو تصليح الكهرباء)	(used about things in general that use electricity, or people whose job is to make or repair these things) - I work for a company manufacturing electrical goods. - My uncle works as an electrical engineer.
electronic إلكترونى (خاصة بالتقنيات الحديثة)	(used about systems or things that work using computers or smartphones) - Most kids love electronic games. - Email is the short word for electronic mail.



4

take place يحدث	*Treasure Island* took place in nineteenth-century England.
take someone's place شخص يحل محل ...	I took my father's place in our shop while he was abroad.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young graduate was employed as an .... engineer in the shipbuilding new factory.

a) electricity b) electric
c) electrical d) electronic

2 This guidebook gives you a good .... idea of the city you will visit.

a) general b) public
c) private d) careful

3 The accident received little .... in the national media.

a) note b) notice
c) sign d) signal

4 There was a notice on the board saying the class had been cancelled. The word "notice" here means ....

a) attention b) review
c) sign d) observation

5 Most dictionaries and encyclopedias موسوعات are available in paper and .... form on CDs.

a) electricity b) electric
c) electrical d) electronic



Practice  Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In large cities, people should be encouraged to depend on public .... to get around in order to reduce pollution.
a) transport b) transfer c) transfuse d) transplant

2 By law, smoking is no longer allowed in indoor .... places.
a) general b) public c) private d) available

3 The machines which the new factory uses are very .... which are the latest in the country.
a) outdated b) central c) public d) high-tech

4 There has been a steady .... of the private sector of the economy in many fields.
a) deterioration b) authority c) expansion d) notice

5 The hotel offers exceptional sporting ...., including a swimming pool and a gym.
a) authorities b) facilities c) accessibilities d) schedules

6 It's important for a successful businessman to build up a .... of professional contacts.
a) transport b) gate c) network d) station

7 Only department managers have the .... to change the work schedule.
a) irresponsibility b) authority c) rosary d) expiry

8 My teacher always .... the importance of studying hard and encouraged us to be better.
a) emphasised b) improvised c) appeared d) thought

9 Most villages in Upper Egypt are now .... by good roads which were built over the years.
a) contacted b) communicated c) connected d) created

10 Conditions in hospitals have .... greatly in Egypt in the last few years.
a) proved b) involved c) persuaded d) improved

11 The President's .... for this month includes a two-day visit to a foreign country.
a) column b) speech c) schedule d) seminar

12 The .... cost of the new building was far higher than we had expected.
a) vague b) avoidable c) available d) total

13 All books and pieces of music should be .... by copyright.
a) cured b) infected c) protected d) healed

14 The Giza Metro line runs in a .... under the River Nile.
a) funnel b) tunnel c) pipe d) road

15 Major engineering challenges were faced during the .... of the New Administrative Capital.
a) construction b) destruction c) damage d) waste

16 The scientists will hold a/an .... of meetings over the next few weeks to discuss the new medicine.
a) team b) amount c) series d) deviation

17 More and more people are moving to the .... of Cairo such as New Cairo City every year.
a) districts b) villages c) shores d) suburbs

18 The young actress's expensive dress and jewellery attracted much .... at the party.
a) review b) notice c) sign d) warning

19 I asked my colleague to show me the notes he .... about the last lecture.
a) ran b) did c) made d) invented

20 The author's .... at the beginning of the book explains the organisation of it.
a) introduce b) introduction c) introductory d) introduced

21 The metro lines made it easier to travel .... Greater Cairo and the new suburbs.
a) on b) at c) away d) around

22 The test will involve answering questions about a photograph. The verb "involve" can be the opposite to the verb "....................".
a) include b) invent c) exclude d) consist

23 All candidates have to .... a test in language and computer skills.
a) give b) make c) devise d) take

24 The precise cause of the disease is unknown. The synonym of the adjective "precise" is "....................".
a) accurate b) ancient c) written d) imaginary

25 My little brother usually agrees .... my view about spending our free time.
a) for b) at c) with d) of

26 The .... of the new monorail line will serve thousands of people. It will take passengers 52 kilometres from the New Administrative City to East Cairo. (Longmc
a) deduction b) destruction c) contradiction d) construction

27 There are plans to create the first public transport .... from the New Administrative Capital to the Greater Cairo area. (Longm
a) separation b) communication c) transmission d) connection

28 As Sami was a keen participant, he was the first to be .... in the team working on the project. (Long
a) excluded b) involved c) eliminated d) separated

29 Unfortunately, I failed to .... Hatim to change his mind and spend the weekend with us. (Long
a) let b) charge c) persuade d) force

30 I think the rent for the new flat could be .... as long as I have extra wo increase my income. (Lo
a) avoidable b) recyclable c) affordable d) intolerable

B Language

Future perfect المستقبل التام

For actions that will or will not be completed before a specific time/action in the future.
يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل وقت محدد/حدث آخر فى المستقبل.

TIMELINE

Past — Present — Future

FORM

Affirmative الإثبات	• Subj. + will have + P.P. • I will have finished this report by midday.
Negative النفى	• Subj. + won't have + P.P. • I won't have finished this report until 5 o'clock.
Interrogative الاستفهام	• Will + subj. + have + P.P. ? • Will you have typed all these letters by the time the boss arrives? • Wh- question + will + subj. + have + P.P. ? • How many letters will you have typed before the boss arrives?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	• Obj. + will have been + P.P. • Our car will have been repaired by tomorrow.

USAGE الاستخدام

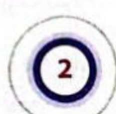
1. For actions that will or will not be completed before a specific time in the future. يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل وقت محدد فى المستقبل.
   - By 8 o'clock tomorrow, I'll have sent all these invitation cards.
   - By next October, the new metro line will have been built.

2. For actions that will or will not be completed before another action in the future. يعبر عن حدث سوف (سوف لا) يكون قد اكتمل قبل حدث آخر فى المستقبل.
   - I will have read the book before I return it to the library.
   - By the time my father arrives, I'll have finished my homework.

The future perfect is used with the following time expressions:

before, by + فترة فى المستقبل (2100), by the time, till/until, in a year's (2 years') time

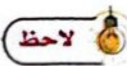
- My wife won't have finished preparing the lunch till 4 o'clock.
- In a week's time, we'll have finished our exams.



لاحظ استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل التام.

Future perfect (will have + P.P.)	before, till/until, by the time, by	Present simple Present perfect

- Before he arrives, I'll have completed the report.
- By the time he has finished doing the homework, his father will have returned back home.



لاحظ

١) نستخدم by/by the time/before لنقصد قبل وقت محدد فى المستقبل.
- We will have taken the test by/before June.
- I won't have done all of my homework by the time/before you get home.

٢) ونستخدم in (a year's/week's/2 weeks') time لنقصد فى نهاية هذا الوقت فى المستقبل.
- In five years, I will have started work.
- How much will you have done on your project in two months' time?

Extra points

هناك أفعال تعبر عن المستقبل تلقائيا عند استخدامها فى صيغة المضارع مثل:

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.

وعند استخدام to بعدها نستغنى عن will وعند استخدام المستقبل التام نستخدم بعده to have + P.P.
وفى المجهول to have been + P.P.

want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.	+ to have + P.P. .... معلوم	I expect to have written 3 reports by next week.
want, expect, hope, predict, wish, need, etc.	+ to have been + P.P. ... مجهول	I expect 3 reports to have been written by next week.

- By 2030, we expect to have built flats for all people in Egypt.
- We expect to have started building more than 100 natural gas stations by the end of this year.
- The food is expected to have been prepared by 6 p.m. today.




Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... the cooking by the time you arrive home. Then, you can have your lunch at once.
a) will be done — b) will have been done
c) will have done — d) will be doing

2. All Egyptian schools .... e-learning by 2030.
a) will apply — b) will have applied
c) will be applied — d) will have been applied

3. By the time you get home, I .... the house from top to bottom.
a) will have cleaned — b) will be cleaning
c) will clean — d) will be cleaned

4. Nancy .... to a new apartment by this time next year.
a) will move — b) moves
c) is going to move — d) will have moved

5. They .... a new high-tech hospital by the end of next year.
a) will open — b) will have opened
c) will be opening — d) are opening

6. Whatever happens in the future, in ten years, we .... up on driving our own vehicles.
a) won't have given — b) won't be given
c) are giving — d) will be given

7. The writer's new story will .... by the time the "Book Fair" starts.
a) be printed — b) be printing
c) have been printed — d) have printed

8. Rana .... the night shift by the time you get up in the morning.
a) won't be finished — b) won't be finishing
c) won't finish — d) won't have finished

9. Will she .... enough Spanish to communicate before she moves to Madrid?
a) has learnt — b) be learning
c) learn — d) have learnt

10. Could you please return in 10 minutes? Your room will .... by then.
a) have been cleaned — b) be cleaned
c) be cleaning — d) have cleaned

11. Our guests are expected to .... by 4 o'clock this afternoon.
a) be arrived — b) have been arrived
c) have arrived — d) will arrive

12. Will my workplace .... when I come to the office tomorrow morning?
a) prepare — b) have been prepared
c) have prepared — d) be preparing

13. It's a big course. We .... it by the time the vacation begins.
a) won't finish — b) won't be finishing
c) won't have finished — d) aren't finishing

14. By the time your children are in university, will e-books .... traditional books?
a) have replacing — b) have been replaced
c) replaced — d) have replaced

15. I hope a cure for this serious disease .... by the end of this year.
a) will have been discovered — b) will discover
c) will be discovering — d) will be discovered

16. By 10 o'clock, we .... half the way to Australia.
a) will have flown — b) will be flown
c) will fly — d) are flying

17. By the time I get home, my wife .... supper.
a) prepares — b) is going to prepare
c) will have prepared — d) will prepare

18. Will the documents .... by Thursday?
a) have sent — b) be sending
c) be sent — d) have been sent

19. They .... the expansion of the rail line to other cities until 2040.
a) aren't completing — b) won't have completed
c) complete — d) will complete

20. Will he .... all the English verb tenses by tomorrow?
a) have studied — b) has studied
c) be studying — d) be studied

21. By the end of the first term, we .... many English books.
a) shall read — b) will be reading
c) will have read — d) will be read

22 I expect .... much experience by the time I'm fifty years old.

a) to have been gained
b) to have gained
c) will gain
d) that I will gain

23 They won't have received the new machine .... next Friday.

a) before
b) when
c) as soon as
d) while

24 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) After my father comes home, I'll be doing my homework.
b) After my father comes home, I'll have done my homework.
c) After my father will come home, I will do my homework.
d) I won't have done my homework until my father comes home.

25 Which one of the following sentences is incorrectly structured?

a) I hope I will pass my driving test next week.
b) I hope I have passed my driving test next week.
c) I hope I will have passed my driving test by next week.
d) I hope to have passed my driving test by next week.

26 The problem of food shortages .... solved by the end of the next decade. Who knows? *(Longman)*

a) will have
b) will have been
c) might have been
d) might have

27 .... the final report before the manager arrives? *(Longman)*

a) Will you have prepared
b) Did you prepare
c) Had you prepared
d) Were you preparing

28 By the end of next year, the government .... the hospital in our town. *(Longman)*

a) has modernised
b) will modernise
c) will have been modernised
d) will have modernised

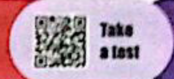
29 I think we .... this big task before the end of next week; we will take longer. *(Longman)*

a) will have finished
b) won't have finished
c) haven't finished
d) are finishing

30 I've saved a lot of money. I .... a new car before the end of next month. *(Longman)*

a) have bought
b) will buy
c) will be buying
d) will have bought

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 The solar panels provide my uncle's farm with the .... power it uses.

a) electronic
b) electrostatic
c) electric
d) static

2 A .... is a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground.

a) tunnel
b) monorail
c) loop
d) lane

3 We need to work out the total cost of the project. The opposite of the adjective "total" is "..................".

a) complete
b) whole
c) gorgeous
d) partial

4 We have a tight .... to get this project done. It must be completed in a month.

a) schedule
b) expectation
c) inquiry
d) prospect

5 A .... is an area where people live which is away from the centre of a town or city.

a) marsh
b) resort
c) suburb
d) region

6 The entrepreneur is trying to .... local businesses to invest in his new project.

a) persuade
b) discourage
c) defy
d) risk

7 The new secretary was caught looking through the manager's .... papers and was fired.

a) general
b) private
c) public
d) indefinite

8 The hotel has special .... for welcoming disabled people such as lifts and wheelchairs.

a) talents
b) gifts
c) activities
d) facilities

9 In order to finance .... on transport, the government has relied on local investments.

a) intention
b) expansion
c) affection
d) reduction

10 The oil company is establishing a/an .... of pumps and pipelines to move the oil.

a) network
b) labour
c) discipline
d) arrangement

11 The .... date and place of birth of this famous writer are unknown.

a) expected
b) hidden
c) precise
d) indefinite

12 The Olympics take .... every four years in a different city.

a) part
b) place
c) in
d) off

13 This mobile model is relatively نسبيًا .... at just 800 pounds.

a) flexible
b) unavailable
c) avoidable
d) affordable

14 The writer's story has been made into a TV .... of three parts.

a) series
b) cast
c) channel
d) podcast

15 The young athlete didn't give .... her career when she had her first baby.
a) in b) at c) off d) up

Language

16 By this time next week, I .... my test results.
a) will have received b) will be receiving
c) will receive d) am going to receive

17 In an hour's time, Ola .... home with her father.
a) will be reached b) reaches
c) has reached d) will have reached

18 Will he .... the message by the time your flight takes off?
a) receive b) have received c) be received d) has received

19 By 2040, I think the price of electric cars .... down so much that everyone can buy one.
a) won't go b) will go c) will have gone d) are going

20 Wake me up by nine o'clock. I .... long enough by then.
a) will sleep b) will have slept c) will be sleeping d) will be slept

21 We .... all our needs in a week's time.
a) will buy b) are buying
c) going to buy d) will have bought

22 When he finishes his course, he thinks he .... 2000 new English words by the end of the month.
a) will have learnt b) learns c) is going to d) will learn

23 By the end of this week, we hope all the thieves will ....
a) have caught b) catch c) have been caught d) be catching

24 Phone me after 8 o'clock. We .... dinner by then.
a) will finish b) will be finishing c) will have finished d) have finished

25 Maher .... a good job in Cairo by the time he's twenty-five years old.
a) will get b) will have got c) is getting d) will be got

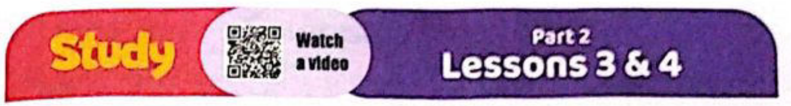
26 Call me tomorrow at eleven. I'll know more because the meeting ....
a) will have finished b) will finish
c) will be finishing d) won't finish

27 I took my car to the service centre, but I think it won't .... even by Friday.
a) have fixed b) be fixed c) fix d) have been fixed

28 I think they .... all of their homework when they go to bed.
a) finish b) won't have finished c) have finished d) are finishing

29 After Dalia .... this test, she will have answered all the exercises in the book.
a) has answered b) will answer
c) will have answered d) will be answered

30 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
a) In two hours' time, I'll be booking the tickets.
b) In two hours' time, I will have booked the tickets.
c) By yesterday, I had booked the tickets.
d) By tomorrow, I'll book the tickets.



A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

alternative (n) (adj)	بديل	pause (v) (d) (n)	يصمت/صمت
argument (n)	جدال	point (n)	نقطة/رأى
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	popularity (n)	شهرة/ذيوع
convenient (adj)	مناسب	possible (adj)	ممكن
crowded (adj)	مزدحم	provide (v) (d)	يزود/يوفر
effect (n)	تأثير	respond (v) (ed)	يرد/يستجيب
environmentally-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	satisfactory (adj)	مُرضٍ
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	significant (adj)	هام/ذو مغزى
flying vehicle (n)	مركبة طائرة	solution (n)	حل
governorate (n)	محافظة	stress (n) (v) (ed)	ضغط/يضغط/يؤكد على
grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممتن	style (n)	أسلوب
impossible (adj)	مستحيل	timetable (n)	جدول المواعيد
issue (n)*	قضية		

The famous doctor spoke on the issue of private healthcare in his/her last programme.

Workbook Vocabulary

appropriate (adj)	مناسب/ملائم	level (n)	مستوى
conclusion (n)	خاتمة	planet (n)	كوكب
cycle (v) (d)	يركب دراجة	playground (n)	ملعب
decrease (v) (d)	ينخفض/يقل	present (adj)	حالى
disability (n)	إعاقة	region (n)	إقليم
inexpensive (adj)	غير مكلف	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
lead (v)	يقود/يؤدى		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We had a/an .... with our neighbours, and now they won't even talk to us.
   a) argument b) arrangement c) replacement d) involvement
2. The call centre worker told me that they would try to .... to my complaints within 48 hours.
   a) learn b) refer c) prefer d) respond
3. Carob الخروب is sometimes used in sweet foods as a healthier .... to chocolate.
   a) affection b) alternative c) remain d) attribute
4. The new defender played a .... role in helping our team to victory.
   a) useless b) poisonous c) significant d) valueless
5. I'm sorry for being grumpy. I've been under a lot of .... at work lately.
   a) stress b) amusement c) pleasure d) cost
6. The spokesman .... for drinking some water before continuing his speech.
   a) acquired b) offered c) called d) paused
7. It is .... bad manners in some cultures to speak with your mouth full of food.
   a) regarded b) reminded c) considered d) assisted
8. Many experts warn of the bad effects of the .... of violent video games on children and young people.
   a) ability b) popularity c) exploration d) avoidance
9. Road repairs were .... to take three weeks, but they took much longer.
   a) refused b) accepted c) expected d) rejected
10. Hyundai has plans to show its first .... vehicle that could be seen in the sky in a few years.
   a) flying b) steam c) revised d) explored

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at least	على الأقل	make ... better	يجعله ... أفضل
do some research	يقوم ببعض الأبحاث	on behalf of	بالنيابة
keep in mind	يتذكر/يبقى فى ذهنه	point of view	وجهة نظر
alternative to	بديل لـ	lead to	يؤدى إلى
arrive at/in	يصل إلى	possible for	ممكن لـ
decrease in	تقليل فى	respond to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
provide	يزود/يوفر	provision provider	تزويد مقدم/موفر	provisional	مؤقت
respond	يرد/يستجيب	response	رد/استجابة	responsive	متجاوب
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
satisfy*	يرضى/يقنع	satisfaction	رضا/قناعة	satisfactory satisfied	مُرضٍ راضٍ
stress	يضغط	stress	ضغط	stressed stressful	مضغوط مجهد
conclude	يختم/يستنتج	conclusion	خاتمة/استنتاج	concluding conclusive	ختام/مستنتج جازم/قاطع

- The company was unable to satisfy demand for the product.
- Good people find satisfaction in helping others.
- Although my son didn't get full marks, his exam results were satisfactory.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
alternative	بديل	option/substitute	obligation	إلزام
convenient	مناسب	appropriate/suitable	improper/unsuitable	غير مناسب
grateful	شاكر/ممتن	appreciative/thankful	ungrateful/rude	غير ممتن/وقح
present	الحالى	current/existing	distant/previous	بعيد/سابق
provide	يزود/يوفر	supply/present	deprive	يحرم
respond	يرد/يستجيب	answer/reply	question/request	يستجوب/يطلب
satisfactory	مُرضٍ	sufficient/adequate	inappropriate/unsatisfactory	غير مُرضٍ/غير مناسب
significant	هام/ذو مغزى	important/noteworthy	insignificant/unimportant	ـر هام

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fish is a significant part of the diet of people in Alexandria. The antonym of the word "significant" is "..................".
   a) important b) noteworthy
   c) unimportant d) repetitive
2. We have a limited amount of money to spend, and we need to .... that in mind while we're planning our holiday.
   a) keep b) change
   c) design d) damage
3. Experts say that fruit is a healthy alternative .... chips and sweet products as snacks.
   a) in b) to
   c) of d) out
4. Companies work hard to satisfy customers' needs. The noun of the verb "satisfy" is "..................".
   a) satisfies b) satisfied
   c) satisfactory d) satisfaction
5. I find it convenient to be able to do my banking online. The synonym of the word "convenient" is "..................".
   a) suitable b) improper
   c) gorgeous d) strange
6. Voluntary work doesn't only help society but also can .... you better.
   a) do b) miss
   c) make d) deny
7. I am extremely grateful to all the teachers for their help. The adjective "grateful" is similar in meaning to ....
   a) rude b) thankful
   c) helpless d) naughty
8. Some scientists are planning to .... some research into the genetic causes of the disease.
   a) carry b) make
   c) run d) do

Reading Text (1)

Dear Sir or Madam,

A I am writing on behalf[1] of myself and the other students in my class at school.

B We would be very grateful if the governorate would consider organising the expansion to our town's public transport network. The current network is not satisfactory[2] because there are not enough buses to take children to school early in the morning.

C I have done some research and some children arrive at school much earlier[3] than they need to, and the buses are very crowded.

D I would suggest that the governorate office either provides more buses at the time when students travel to school or it changes the bus timetable so that the buses arrive at our school twenty or thirty minutes earlier.

E I would be very happy to discuss this issue further at any time that would be convenient[4]. Then we could discuss which solution(s) would be possible for our city. Should you have any further questions about the public transport students need, please respond[5] to this email.

Yours faithfully,
Sara Abdelaziz

(1) بالنيابة
(2) مرضٍ
(3) مبكرًا
(4) مناسب/ملائم
(5) يرد/يستجيب

Reading Text (2) Workbook

I'd like to make the argument[1] that we will all have stopped driving cars in fifty years' time. That is because there will be lots of inexpensive and environmentally -friendly[2] forms of public transport. Another significant point I'd like to make is that, because roads will be safer, there will be alternatives[3] to using trains and buses, too. For example, more people will walk and cycle. It's important to keep in mind that these ways of travelling will lead to a significant[4] decrease in levels of pollution.

(1) جدال
(2) صديق للبيئة
(3) بدائل
(4) هام/ ذو مغزى

Reading Text (3) Workbook

Join us to help your community!

We are a group of volunteers who are working for the local government and we help out with local problems. Would you like to work with us?

Our present project is improving the local playgrounds. These are great places for local families, but some of the equipment is not good enough.

Our volunteers are working hard to make sure that all the playground equipment is safe and fun to use for children of all ages.

We will be at the town hall all day on Tuesday 6th July. Come and join us at a time that is good for you!

Listening Text

Presenter: I'm here today to talk to you about cars and tell you why we will not have stopped driving them by 2050. The first argument I would like to make, and something we should never forget, is that cars are everywhere, everywhere. Just look around! Most people drive their cars every day. It's hard – perhaps impossible[1] – to imagine that people will have changed the way they travel so much that by 2050, nobody will be driving.

Another very significant point[2] that I'd like to make is that it's hard to imagine a good alternative to the car at the moment. Some people have suggested that we will have started using flying vehicles[3] by 2030, but I doubt that. Alternatives to the car are usually too expensive, too dangerous, and many of them might also damage the environment in the same way that some cars do. It's important to keep in mind that more and more of the cars that we're making today are environmentally friendly. Just look at the popularity[4] of electric cars. They don't damage the environment when we drive them and so we can expect[5] that, in a few years' time, they will have become even more popular.

(1) مستحيل
(2) نقطة/رأى
(3) مركبات طائرة
(4) شهرة/ذيوع
(5) يتوقع

Video Script

Will people have stopped flying in the future? Most experts believe they won't, but airports[1] and aeroplanes will be very different.

Many experts believe that high-tech robots will have replaced[2] most or all airport staff by 2050. At Changi Airport in Singapore, more and more robots are already doing jobs that people did before, for example cleaning the building and doing some security controls[3].

Aeroplane passengers will use their mobile phones to do everything at the airport. They will check in[4] online, pay for everything online and there will be technology at the airport gate[5] that can tell who each passenger is.

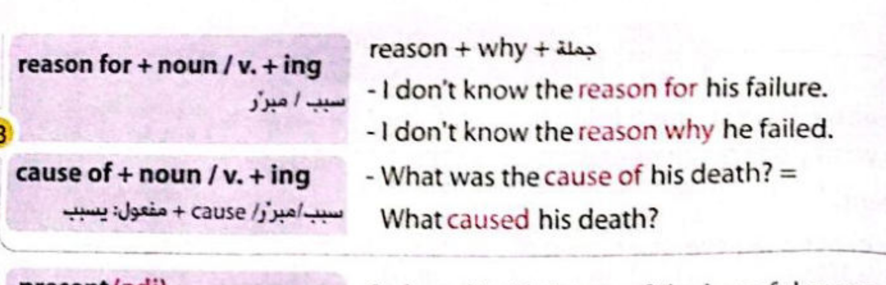
Environmentally-friendly aeroplanes that produce little or no polluting[6] gases will have become normal in a few years from now. However, the cost of air travel will have gone up because these aeroplanes will be far more expensive to build.

0:00

(1) مطارات
(2) يستبدل
(3) إجراءات تحكم أمنية
(4) يقوم بمراجعة أوراق السفر
(5) بوابة
(6) ملوث

Notes on Vocabulary

1	**effect** تأثير (يتبعه حرف الجر on/of)	Burning petrol and gas has a bad effect on the environment.
	affect يؤثر على (لا يتبعه حرف جر)	Burning petrol and gas affects the environment badly.
2	**pause** صمت/توقف شخص عن الكلام أو فعل شيء (لفترة قصيرة قبل العودة)	There was a short pause before the minister continued his speech.
	silence صمت/سكوت (لفترة طويلة)	Nothing disturbed the silence of the night.
	hesitation تردد (التوقف عن الحديث/فعل شيء لعدم الاطمئنان أو التأكد)	After some minutes of hesitation, we continued our way through the forest.



	reason + why + جملة
reason for + noun / v. + ing سبب / مبرر	- I don't know the reason for his failure. - I don't know the reason why he failed.
cause of + noun / v. + ing سبب/مبرر/ cause + مفعول: يسبب	- What was the cause of his death? = What caused his death?

(3)

present (adj) حاضر/الحالي/موجود	Carbon dioxide is one of the harmful gases present in the Earth's atmosphere.
present (n) هدية	I was given this book as a present from my father.
present (v) يقدم	The computer centre presented a cheque for £500 to cancer research.

(4)

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We do not have much information about the earthquake at the .... time.
   a) central b) present c) presented d) gifted
2. The group finished their meal in total .... after hearing the bad news.
   a) rejoice b) pause c) hesitation d) silence
3. Eating junk food will eventually have a bad .... on your health.
   a) affect b) effect c) infect d) defect
4. Your opinion will not .... my decision about joining university.
   a) affect b) effect c) infect d) defect
5. I can't think of any .... for your desire to leave your good job.
   a) result b) aim c) cause d) reason



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We're .... buying a new car as our old one causes us a lot of trouble.
   a) considering b) accepting c) pausing d) leading
2. I think that flying is the most .... way to travel in such a large country as America.
   a) crowded b) convenient c) extensive d) unsuitable
3. There are twenty-seven .... in Egypt, and Cairo is the biggest one.
   a) governors b) regions c) governorates d) districts
4. I'm so .... for all the help and support my family gave me.
   a) ungrateful b) convenient c) reliable d) grateful
5. The department managers have a meeting to discuss the .... of working conditions at the factory.
   a) governorate b) conclusion c) reason d) issue
6. Social services try hard to .... poor families with their needs.
   a) respond b) provide c) prevent d) pause
7. The student failed to give a .... reason for coming to school late, so the head teacher was angry.
   a) grateful b) inexpensive c) satisfactory d) unsuitable
8. Experts believe that there are no simple .... to the problem of overpopulation.
   a) reasons b) issues c) solutions d) timetables
9. As he was greatly appreciated, many Arab novelists have tried to copy Naguib Mahfouz's ....
   a) point b) popularity c) attack d) style
10. We worked very hard for four hours without a .... to complete the report.
    a) pause b) silence c) trouble d) state
11. Many children with mild .... are integrated with general education.
    a) arguments b) conclusions c) reasons d) disabilities
12. Because of the floods, the river water rose to a dangerous ....
    a) step b) grade c) level d) rank

13 The rainforests are important .... habitats for animals of many kinds.

a) humans b) wildlife c) biology d) crop

14 Chess is a game that has existed in its .... form for more than 300 years.

a) present b) updated c) dead d) available

15 This tropical forest .... is characterised by frequent heavy rainfall.

a) district b) planet c) region d) level

16 All energy companies are seeking .... to fossil fuels.

a) relatives b) representatives c) preservatives d) alternatives

17 I think it is more .... to use a calculator, rather than adding the numbers yourself.

a) considered b) appropriate c) arranged d) moved

18 You must .... in mind that the price does not include flights.

a) take b) give c) keep d) miss

19 Experts believe that there has been a decrease .... the number of visitors to the Mediterranean beaches in summer.

a) out b) about c) for d) in

20 The team captain receives the trophy on .... of the whole team.

a) account b) behalf c) expense d) grade

21 There is real .... in helping other people to overcome their problems.

a) satisfy b) satisfied c) satisfactory d) satisfaction

22 Michael didn't respond to any of her emails. The synonym of the verb "respond" is "........".

a) send b) reply c) receive d) question

23 Eating too much sugar can lead .... health problems.

a) in b) to c) at d) away

24 Solar energy is a safe alternative to fossil fuels such as oil and gas. The word "alternative" is similar in meaning to "........".

a) mission b) obligation c) necessity d) substitute

25 A lawyer speaks on .... of accused persons in the court. *(Longman)*

a) purpose b) account c) behalf d) front

B Language

It's highly important to know how and when to use the new grammar.

Future perfect (extra points)

١) الجملة التي بعد الروابط الزمنية لا يستخدم فيها المستقبل من أي نوع ولكن نستخدم المضارع البسيط أو التام.

- I am going to travel when I have finished my studies.

NOT

- I am going to travel when I ~~will have finished~~ my studies.

٢) إذا كان الحدث لن يقع في المستقبل بل ستكون بدايته بحلول وقت معين نستخدم المستقبل البسيط وليس التام.

- By 2050, most drivers will use solar energy in their cars.
- In 10 years' time, robots will do everything instead of man.

٣) عند استخدام for مع التعبيرات الزمنية الدالة على المستقبل التام فيكون الزمن مستقبلاً تامًا مستمرًا مثل:

- By next week, I'll have been living here for 10 years.
- When he comes, I'll have been waiting here for 2 hours.

- ولكن إذا كان الفعل stative فنستخدم المستقبل التام فقط مثل:

- By next October, I'll have been a teacher for 30 years.
- By next week, I'll have had this mobile phone for 3 years.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... what the problem is by tomorrow.

a) will be discovering b) have discovered
c) will have discovered d) will be discovered

2 He .... the book before he returns it to the library.

a) will have read b) will be reading
c) was reading d) will be read

3 How many cities will you have visited by the time you ....?

a) are retiring b) will have retired c) will retire d) retire

4 By 5:30 this afternoon, my brother .... at work for eight hours.

a) would have been b) will have been
c) had been d) has been

5 I will have been in Tokyo for three months before you .... us.

a) have joined b) joined c) will have joined d) will join

Future forms (Revision)

1 will + inf.

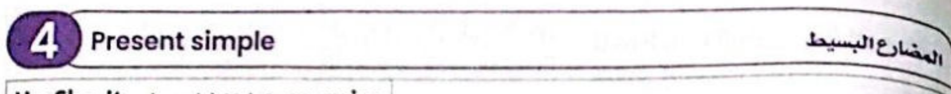
Usage الاستخدام	Examples
Future facts حقائق المستقبل	Tomorrow will be 28 February, 2024.
Prediction without evidence التنبؤ بدون دليل	It will rain tomorrow. I think you will pass the test.
On-the-spot decision قرار فورى	This bag is nice. I'll buy it.
With: sure, think, expect, hope, probably, perhaps, promise, predict	I'm sure my father will buy me a new mobile. He will probably come early tomorrow. I promise you that I'll phone you tonight.
Hoped, thought + would	I thought (didn't expect) that she would visit us.
Offer العرض يكون جملة خبرية	Since you are ill, I'll clean the room for you.
Request الطلب	Will you fetch me my umbrella, please?
Warning التحذير	If you don't study hard, you won't get high marks.
Threat التهديد	I'll punish you if you insult your friend again.
Promise + to + inf.	I have promised them to come early tonight.

2 (be) going to + inf.

Usage الاستخدام	Examples
Prediction with evidence التنبؤ بدليل (شيء يرى)	The wall is moving. It's going to fall. He is driving fast. I think he is going to have an accident.
مع أفعال مثل: **Decide, intend, plan**	She's decided that she is going to buy a new dress.
Ambitions الطموحات	I'm going to be a doctor. This is my ambition.
Look out! Be careful! Watch out! دلالة على قرب حدوث الفعل	Look out! The dog is going to bite you. Be careful! The wall is going to fall.
Be careful + will تحذير من شيء ربما يحدث	Be careful and save money or you will suffer in summer.
Be careful + present cont. التحذير من شيء يحدث بالفعل	Be careful! A car is coming.

3 Future continuous المستقبل المستمر

Usage الاستخدام	Examples
will (won't) + be + v. ing	التكوين
may (may not) + be + v. ing	فى الاحتمال نستخدم may
يعبر عن حدث سوف يستمر لفترة فى المستقبل.	
At + وقت فى المستقبل	I'll be watching the final match at 7 p.m. tomorrow.
From ... to + وقت فى المستقبل	From 3 to 5 tomorrow, I'll be visiting my relatives.
This time + وقت فى المستقبل	This time next week, we will be travelling to Luxor.
In + مدة **+ time**	In a week's time, Ali will be sitting for the final exam.
All ... + وقت فى المستقبل	You have a lot of homework. You will be doing it all day tomorrow.
A routine in the future	Don't invite Samy by phone. I'll be meeting him tomorrow.
المستقبل المستمر والمضارع المستمر للأحداث المرتب لها فى المستقبل.	
Future continuous	I'll be meeting my old friends tomorrow.
Present continuous	I'm meeting my old friends tomorrow.
إذا كان الحدث يستمر فى المستقبل ولا يكون مرتبًا له نستخدم المستقبل المستمر فقط.	
Future continuous	Don't phone me after 11 p.m. I'll be sleeping. النوم لا يرتب له



He, She, It, اسم مفرد + v + s, es, or ies You, We, They, اسم جمع + التصريف الأول	التكوين

Usage الاستخدام	Examples
Timetables جداول المواعيد	The plane reaches London at 9 p.m.
بعد الروابط الدالة على المستقبل	Before the police arrive, I'll leave everything as it is. After he finishes his work, he will help me. When she writes the reports, she will give them to her boss.

5 Present continuous المضارع المستمر

Subj. + am/is/are + v. ing	التكوين

Usage الاستخدام	Examples
For fixed arrangements in the near future (Arranged future plans). - يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل القريب.	I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.) I can't watch the final match with you we're giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Why don't you ask Ahmed for help? I'm sure that he .... you.
   a) is helping b) will help
   c) will have helped d) will have been helping
2. Oh, you'll recognise him. He .... a brown leather jacket and a red scarf.
   a) will wear b) will have been wearing
   c) will have worn d) will be wearing
3. She buys too many things. She .... all her money long before her next pay.
   a) will be spending b) will spend
   c) will have spent d) will have been spending
4. The train from Aswan .... at Giza Station at 12:30.
   a) arrives b) will have arrived c) will arrive d) will be arriving
5. We .... dinner at a seaside restaurant next Sunday.
   a) will have had b) will have been having
   c) are going to have d) have



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ola .... the washing by 6 o'clock, so we can go out for dinner.
   a) will finish b) is finishing
   c) will have finished d) is going to finish
2. I expect that Egypt .... much progress in the coming years.
   a) will achieve b) will have achieved
   c) going to achieve d) achieved
3. I .... him a lift until I've had my car repaired.
   a) wasn't able to give b) won't be able to give
   c) hadn't given d) will be giving
4. Don't wait for me for dinner, I .... my brother with his research.
   a) will be helped b) won't help
   c) may have helped d) may be helping
5. I expect the bridge .... by next October.
   a) to build b) will build
   c) to have been built d) will have built
6. By the time he gets home, she .... the entire house.
   a) will have cleaned b) will be cleaned
   c) will have been cleaning d) will have been cleaned
7. We will wait at the station room until the train ....
   a) will come b) came
   c) had come d) comes
8. After Ahmed finishes this game, he .... 6 computer games.
   a) will be playing b) will have played
   c) will be played d) is playing
9. Will lunch .... by the time we arrive?
   a) eat b) be eating
   c) have been eaten d) have eaten
10. You're carrying too much. I .... the door for you.
    a) won't open b) will open
    c) will have opened d) will be opening

11 By this time tomorrow, we .... all the furniture in the basement القبو.
a) are going to put
b) will put
c) are putting
d) will have put

12 This time next week, I .... for my first exam!
a) will be sitting b) sat c) will sit d) will have sat

13 "I'll send you an email tomorrow." The right situation for the sentence is ....
a) request b) offer c) promise d) threat

14 Experts believe that by 2050 most people .... electric vehicles.
a) will buy b) will have bought c) will be buying d) are buying

15 In the future, half of the world .... English and communicate well with each other.
a) will speak
b) will have been spoken
c) will be spoken
d) is speaking

16 We expect .... building more than 100 natural gas stations by the end of this year.
a) will start b) to be started c) we will be starting d) to have started

17 I'm sorry, but you need to stay in the office until you .... your work.
a) had finished
b) will finish
c) have finished
d) will have finished

18 Do you think more people .... to use public transport in twenty years' time?
a) will have decided
b) will be decided
c) are deciding
d) will be deciding

19 I promise to .... these three pages by the time you come back home.
a) will have translated
b) have translated
c) will translate
d) translate

20 In three years' time, most cars in Egypt .... on natural gas or solar energy.
a) are running b) will have been run c) will be run d) will run

21 "Our team will probably win the game tomorrow." The right situation for the sentence is ....
a) prediction b) request c) warning d) promise

22 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) This time tomorrow, I'll have cleaned the whole house.
b) By this time tomorrow, I'll have cleaned the whole house.
c) By yesterday, I'll have cleaned the whole house.
d) Before tomorrow, I've cleaned the whole house.

23 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) By this time next year, I'll be learning Spanish at university.
b) Next week, I'll be learning 3 languages in addition to English.
c) In two years' time, I will be studying Spanish at university.
d) This time next year, I'll have visited my uncle in Alex.

24 Which one of the following sentences is incorrectly structured?
a) The door is closed. Shall I open it for you?
b) As the door is closed, I'll open it for you.
c) The door is closed. Will you open it for me?
d) As the door is closed, I'll be opening it for you.

25 Which one of the following sentences is incorrectly structured?
a) When Leila finishes her homework, we'll start to have dinner.
b) After Leila has finished her homework, we'll start to have dinner.
c) After Leila had finished her homework, we'll start to have dinner.
d) After Leila had finished her homework, we started to have dinner.

26 The camera is very nice; I .... it. *(Longman)*
a) will be buying
b) will buy
c) won't buy
d) will have bought

27 Tarek has decided to buy a new car, so he .... the old one. *(Longman)*
a) will be selling
b) would be sold
c) will have sold
d) is going to sell

28 I'm sure more trees .... along the way to our town by the end of next year. *(Longman)*
a) will have been planted
b) will be planting
c) will have planted
d) were planted

29 I can't visit you tonight because I .... for the final exam. *(Longman)*
a) will have studied
b) will study
c) will be studying
d) will be studied

30 Which one of the following sentences is structurally correct? *(Longman)*
a) Perhaps Ahmed may visit us tomorrow.
b) A new secondary school for girls will be building in our village.
c) I will have bought a bigger flat by the end of next year.
d) What will you be done all next evening?

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

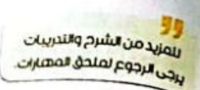
1. The clerk in the tourist office said the passengers must .... in mind that the trip price does not include transport.
   a) keep b) change c) design d) damage
2. The firefighters responded to the fire alarm in minutes. The adjective of the verb "respond" is "..................".
   a) respondent b) response c) responsive d) responsively
3. There has been a/an .... increase in the number of women who work in politics in recent years.
   a) sighted b) available c) significant d) useless
4. Some YouTubers and influencers are ready to do even improper things to increase their .... and views.
   a) scene b) secrecy c) vice d) popularity
5. For a beginner, this camera produces satisfactory results. The antonym of the adjective "satisfactory" is "..................".
   a) inappropriate b) sufficient c) adequate d) affluent
6. Mansura is the capital city of Al Dakahlia .... in northeastern Egypt.
   a) ministry b) governorate c) kingdom d) governor
7. The spokesman .... and thought for a moment before answering the reporter's question.
   a) paused b) jogged c) shouted d) deleted
8. Many new species have been discovered in the Amazon .... when explorers reached it.
   a) division b) suburb c) district d) region
9. My grandfather used to leave his umbrella in a/an .... place by the door so that he couldn't forget it on the way out.
   a) minor b) convenient c) doubtful d) expected
10. The authority was seeking the best .... to the city's traffic problem.
    a) evolution b) solution c) devotion d) deterioration
11. Children have different .... of learning: some learn by seeing, some by hearing, and some by acting.
    a) curricula b) grades c) styles d) recipes
12. Because of his ...., John depended on his mother to dress and feed him.
    a) strength b) skill c) talent d) disability
13. We had a/an .... about what we should buy for our mother's birthday.
    a) argument b) regret c) account d) settlement
14. It is believed that every new system has its good .... and its drawbacks.
    a) paints b) views c) points d) revisions
15. The old bridge will be closed for safety .... until it is repaired completely.
    a) routines b) recipes c) results d) reasons

Language

16. When I see you tomorrow, I .... you my new book.
    a) show b) will be showing c) will have shown d) will show
17. I'm going to be a very rich man. I'm sure by the time I'm forty, I .... my first million.
    a) will be making b) will make c) will have made d) have made
18. I .... my friend at 8 o'clock on Friday.
    a) am meeting b) meet c) will have met d) will be met
19. Don't phone me tonight. I .... for my French exam.
    a) study b) will be studying c) will study d) will have studied
20. If you don't have a car, wait and I .... you to the station.
    a) am driving b) drive c) will drive d) will have driven
21. After you .... a nap غفوة, you will feel a lot better.
    a) have taken b) took c) will take d) will have taken
22. I .... all of the books on the list by the end of the year.
    a) will read b) read c) am reading d) will have read
23. **A:** Where is Judy?
    B: She won't be here .... 8 o'clock.
    a) after b) until c) by the time d) on
24. A new bridge will .... over the Nile by next year.
    a) be built b) be building c) have been built d) have built
25. Do you think you .... to drive in five years' time?
    a) will have learnt b) will be learnt c) are learning d) learn
26. Hopefully, by this time next week, I .... my driving test and I'll finally be able to get a car.
    a) will pass b) will have passed c) have passed d) will be passing
27. They .... the new Desert City centre by 2030.
    a) will establish b) are establishing c) establish d) will have established
28. Once this room is finished, we .... six of the seven rooms in the house. Not bad for two days' work.
    a) will be painting b) will paint c) will have painted d) are painting
29. Do you think you .... children by the time you are 30?
    a) will have b) will have had c) are going to have d) are having
30. I .... this test by 3 o'clock.
    a) won't finish b) am going to finish c) won't be finishing d) will have finished







A blog post

- **You work with a group of volunteers helping the society. Write a post asking for volunteers.**

Writing tips

Tips for preparing the post:

- Say what your group does to help in the area.
- Describe what issues you want to improve.
- Say how you want to do this.



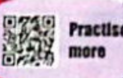
We are a group of volunteers who are working with the local authority which looks after the river and canals in our town. We also help out with other local issues. Would you consider working with us?

Our current project is removing the rubbish from the river and canals near our town. These are important for getting drinking water and for agriculture. However, there is a lot of rubbish in them and this is not satisfactory.

Our volunteers are working hard to clean the river. We raised enough money for the equipment we will use and for hiring special vehicles to take the rubbish to landfill sites. We just need some young men and women to help us do the work.

We will be at the town youth hostel all day on Friday, March 3. Come and join us at a time that is convenient.

Practice



1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people who are looking for a pet dog get a puppy. Puppies are cute[1], friendly, and playful[2]. But there are good reasons why you should consider getting an adult dog instead.

You have to teach a puppy how to behave. The puppy is housebroken. You have to teach the puppy not to jump up on your guests or chew[3] on your shoes. This is a lot of work.

On the other hand, an adult dog will already know how to do all of the previously mentioned[4] things. Many adult dogs have already been housebroken. Many adult dogs will not jump on or chew things that you do not want them to jump on or chew. Puppies also have a lot of energy and want to play all of the time. Puppies will not always sleep through the night or let you relax as you watch television.

On the other hand, most adult dogs will wait for you to play. What is more, they will sleep when you are sleeping and are happy to watch television on the couch right beside you.

There is one last reason why you should get an adult dog instead of a puppy. When most people go to the pound[5] to get a dog, they get a puppy. This means that many adult dogs spend a lot of time in the pound, and some never find good homes. So if you are looking to get a dog for a pet, you should think about getting an adult dog. They are good pets who need good homes.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The author thinks that puppies are ....
   a) bad pets because they take too much work to own
   b) friendly, playful, but need a lot of work
   c) not as cute as adult dogs
   d) not as playful as adult dogs
2. As used in paragraph 2, which is the best synonym for "behave"?
   a) To listen. b) To understand. c) To train. d) To act.
3. Based on the information in the passage, which of the following statements is false?
   a) Puppies have a lot of energy.
   b) Puppies need a lot of attention.
   c) Many people get a puppy as a pet.
   d) Adult dogs do not need to eat very much.



(1) ظريف (2) لعوب/ملاعب (3) يمضغ (4) المذكور مسبقًا (5) حظيرة

4 The phrase "On the other hand" is used to ....
a) contrast previous information
b) support the upcoming paragraph
c) highlight an example
d) contradict a later statement

5 Why should you get an adult dog instead of a puppy? Because ....
a) puppies always sleep through the night
b) puppies don't need to learn how to walk nicely on a leash
c) adult dogs have less energy than puppies do
d) adult dogs jump on and chew things

6 It's clear that the writer of the article ....
a) prefers puppies to adult dogs
b) prefers adult dogs to puppies
c) prefers to get both of them at a time
d) doesn't like pet dogs

7 According to the passage, puppies can cause trouble unless they are ....
a) small b) cute c) sleep d) trained

8 Dogs always have names like ....
a) people b) students c) animals d) lions

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 The expansion of the underground lines is one of the biggest challenges that Egypt faces nowadays. However, the Egyptians have always proved that they are able to carry out such great projects.

a) إن توسيع خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التى واجهتها مصر فى الوقت الماضى ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه البرامج الكبيرة.
b) إن توسيع خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التى تواجهها مصر فى الوقت الحالى ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.
c) إن تحديث خطوط مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التى واجهتها مصر فى الوقت الحالى ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على تنفيذ مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.
d) إن توسيع خدمات مترو الأنفاق أحد أكبر التحديات التى تواجهها مصر فى الوقت الحالى ومع ذلك فلقد أثبت المصريون أنهم قادرون دائما على إصلاح مثل هذه المشروعات الكبيرة.

2 Egypt hosted a United Nations conference about the world climate last November. Many world leaders and organisations attended it to make serious decisions about the climate change problem.

a) استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للطقس فى شهر نوفمبر الماضى ولقد حضره كثير من القادة والمنظمات العالمية لإصدار بيانات هامة فيما يخص مشكلة التغير المناخى.
b) استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للمناخ فى شهر نوفمبر الماضى ولقد حضره كثير من المسئولين والمنظمات المحلية لاتخاذ قرارات هامة فيما يخص مشكلة التغير المناخى.
c) استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للمناخ فى شهر نوفمبر الماضى ولقد حضره كثير من القادة والمنظمات العالمية لمناقشة قرارات هامة فيما يخص مشكلة الاحتباس الحرارى.
d) استضافت مصر مؤتمر الأمم المتحدة للمناخ فى شهر نوفمبر الماضى ولقد حضره كثير من القادة والمنظمات العالمية لاتخاذ قرارات هامة فيما يخص مشكلة التغير المناخى.

3 Private schools and universities can play an important role in developing education and enhancing students' abilities. They have more facilities than governmental ones.

a) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورًا هامًا فى تطوير التعليم وتعزيز قدرات الطلاب فلديهم تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.
b) لا بد أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورًا هامًا فى تطوير التعليم وتعزيز قدرات الطلاب فلديهم رأسمال أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.
c) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الدولية دورًا هامًا فى تطوير التعليم وتعطيل قدرات الطلاب فلديهم تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.
d) يمكن أن تلعب المدارس والجامعات الخاصة دورًا ثانويًا فى تطوير التعلم وتعزيز قدرات الطلاب فلديهم تسهيلات أكثر من مثيلاتها الحكومية.

4 Modern technology plays an important role in the field of transport. Fast trains, monorails, and flying vehicles are examples of what transport will be like in the future.

a) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى مجال التنقل. القطارات السريعة وقطارات المونوريل والأطباق الطائرة هى أمثلة على شكل النقل فى المستقبل.
b) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا مهمًا فى مجال النقل. القطارات السريعة وقطارات المونوريل والمركبات الطائرة هى أمثلة على شكل النقل فى المستقبل.
c) تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دورًا ثانويًا فى مجال النقل. القطارات السريعة والسفن الحربية والمركبات الطائرة هى أمثلة على شكل النقل فى المستقبل.
d) تلعب تكنولوجيا المعلومات دورًا مهمًا فى مجال النقل. وسائل النقل السريعة وقطارات المونوريل والمركبات الطائرة هى أمثلة على شكل النقل فى المستقبل.

5 The government has built one of the biggest solar power stations in Aswan. It is expected to produce about 90% of the electricity produced by the High Dam when the project is complete.

a) قامت الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة الضوئية فى أسوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالى ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التى ينتجها السد العالى قبل اكتمال المشروع.
b) ستقوم الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أهم محطات الطاقة الشمسية فى أسوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالى ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التى ينتجها السد العالى عند اكتمال المشروع.
c) قامت الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات توليد الطاقة فى أسوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج ما يزيد على ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التى ينتجها السد العالى عند اكتمال المشروع.
d) قامت الحكومة ببناء واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة الشمسية فى أسوان. ومن المتوقع أن تنتج حوالى ٩٠٪ من الكهرباء التى ينتجها السد العالى عند اكتمال المشروع.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 الزيادة السكانية أحد أهم معوقات التنمية والتقدم فى كثير من بلاد العالم وخاصة الدول النامية؛ لذلك يجب البحث عن حلول لها.

a) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to development and progress in few world countries, especially developed ones. So, we should look for solutions to them.
b) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to investment and progress in many world countries, generally developing ones. So, we should look for solutions to them.
c) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to development and progress in many world countries, especially developing ones. So, we should look for solutions to them.
d) Overpopulation is one of the obstacles to development and progress in many world communities, especially developing ones. So, we may look for solutions to them.

7 تولى الحكومة أولوية كبرى لمشروعات النقل العام؛ وذلك لأنها أحد أهم الطرق لمكافحة التلوث، لكن تلك المشروعات تتطلب استثمارات كبيرة ووقتا طويلا لتنفيذها.

a) The government gives great priority to the projects of general transport. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight population. However, these projects require big investments and a long time to carry out.
b) The government gives great priority to the projects of public transport. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects require big investments and a long time to carry out.
c) The government gives minor priority to the projects of public transport. This is because it is one of the most important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects require big treatment and a long time to carry out.
d) The government gives great priority to the projects of public transport. This is because it is one of the least important ways to fight pollution. However, these projects develop big investments and a long time to carry out.

8 حماية الآثار مسئولية كل مواطن فى مصر وليست مهمة تقوم بها الحكومة وموظفو الآثار فقط؛ فعلينا جميعًا أن نشارك فى ذلك ولو حتى بحملات التوعية.

a) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monument officials. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.
b) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the government and monument managers. We all should take part in this, even through awareness companies.
c) Predicting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a task done only by the environment and monument officials. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.
d) Protecting the monuments is the responsibility of every citizen in Egypt. It is not a tour done only by the government and monument offices. We all should take part in this, even through awareness campaigns.

9 يجب أن تقوم المؤسسات الكبرى بالاستثمارات فى البحث العلمى لمساعدة الحكومة على تطويره. وذلك سيساعد المجتمع للاستفادة من نتائجه.

a) Big institutions should invest in science research to help the public develop it. This will help society to benefit from its results.
b) Big institutions should invest in scientific research to help the government develop it. This will help society to benefit from its results.
c) Big institutions should invest in scientific search to help the government develop it. This will help the association to benefit from its results.
d) Big institutions should provide in scientific research to help the environment develop it. This will help society to benefit from its results.

10 تتطلع شعوب العالم إلى السلام والاستقرار اللذين تهددهما النزاعات التى تسود أجزاء كثيرة من العالم وأهمها منطقة الشرق الأوسط.

a) World countries look forward to peace and stability which are frightened by the disputes which spread in many parts of the world, generally the Middle East.
b) World countries look forward to peace and stability which are threatened by the disputes which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Middle East.
c) World countries search for peace and stability which are threatened by the changes which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Middle East.
d) World countries look forward to peace and capability which are threatened by the disputes which published in many parts of the world, especially the Far East.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Ways to solve the traffic problem in Egypt"



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. These books are also available in an .... form which you can read on an e-reader or mobile phone.
   a) electricity b) electric c) electrical d) electronic
2. The Suez Canal .... is responsible for running and developing it.
   a) Responsibility b) Authority c) Validity d) Expiry
3. Egypt has a lot of sports .... which make it able to host international competitions.
   a) probabilities b) accessibilities c) facilities d) availabilities
4. Can we look for a quieter place for our conversation? This café looks very ....
   a) public b) private c) special d) general
5. Egypt is going to develop transport completely .... the next ten years.
   a) on b) for c) about d) over
6. There are no plans to build more houses in the desert at the present time. The antonym of the adjective "present" is ....
   a) previous b) informal c) current d) main
7. I don't think you .... any problems when you land in Cairo.
   a) have b) won't have c) will have d) aren't having
8. By the time he ...., Tamer will have taken all the necessary classes.
   a) graduates b) is going to graduate c) graduated d) will graduate
9. By this time next month, I hope they .... the community centre مركز مجتمعى.
   a) will be building b) have built c) will build d) will have built
10. We are already building a new shopping centre and we .... it by 2024.
    a) will have completed b) are completing c) complete d) will be completing
11. You should come earlier if you want to speak to her. By three o'clock, she ....
    a) won't leave b) will leave c) will have left d) is leaving

12 Do you think you .... writing that report by the time I get back?

a) will finish
b) will have finished
c) will be finishing
d) are finishing

13 By next month, I will .... him for five years and I think he is reliable enough.

a) know
b) be knowing
c) have been knowing
d) have known

14 The project is going to .... before the deadline.

a) have been completed
b) be completing
c) complete
d) have completed

15 I promise my father .... the homework by 8 p.m. this evening.

a) to finish
b) will finish
c) will have finished
d) to have finished

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People from long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered[1] from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts[2], roots, wild fruits and berries[3].

Then later, people began to settle[4] along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile[5] soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to cultivate their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers were also used as a form of transport. Men began to use rafts[6] and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. They sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So, they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learnt about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transport grew, the population[7] also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations[8] had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.



(1) يتسكع/يتنقل (2) جوز الهند (3) توت (4) يستقر (5) خصب (6) عوامة (7) سكان (8) حضارات

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 All the statements are true EXCEPT: ....

a) As trade and transport grew, the population of river settlements also grew
b) As the river settlements grew, they became cities and centres of civilisation
c) Egypt, India and China were at one time centres of a great civilisation
d) Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers

17 The word "cultivate" can best be replaced with ....

a) grow
b) look for
c) buy
d) obtain

18 The best title for this passage would be "...............".

a) River water
b) River cities
c) Rivers and the beginning of civilisation
d) Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers

19 Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be ....

a) farmers
b) farmers and traders
c) travellers
d) sailors

20 "They wandered from place to place" means they ....

a) were surprised
b) travelled
c) settled
d) developed

21 The river banks were suitable for farming for the early settlers because ....

a) the land is used once a year
b) the river is used for transport
c) people settled down there
d) the soil was fertile

22 The land isn't as fertile as it was in the past because ....

a) people wandered from place to place
b) there is no more flood
c) the people started to cultivate their own crops
d) there are great civilisations

23 Trade and transport help .... to appear.

a) people
b) civilisations
c) fertile soil
d) rafts

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- We must try to make our world better. If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler and the high temperatures we currently suffer from would decrease.

a) يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر فى السيطرة على الاحتباس الحرارى، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفا ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التى نعانى منها حاليًا ستنخفض.

b) يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر فى السيطرة على التنوع البيئى، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفا ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التى كنا نعانى منها ستنخفض.

c) يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل بيتنا أفضل. إذا ساهم البشر فى التأقلم على الاحتباس الحرارى، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفا ومعدلات الحرارة المرتفعة التى نعانى منها حاليًا ستنخفض.

d) يجب أن نحاول أن نجعل عالمنا أكثر راحة. إذا تجاهل البشر السيطرة على الاحتباس الحرارى، سيكون هذا العالم أكثر لطفا ودرجات الحرارة المرتفعة التى نعانى منها حاليًا ستنخفض.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيا شيئًا أساسيًا في حياتنا فقد قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية، ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمي يصعب الوصول إليه.

a) Technology has become a secondary part in our lives. Modern technology has provided us with many medical miracles, including things that some thought were easy-to-reach science fiction.

b) Technology has become an essential part in our habits. Modern technology has provided us with many physical miracles, including things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.

c) Technology has become an essential part in our lives. Modern technology has proved us with many medical miracles, especially things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.

d) Technology has become an essential part in our lives. Modern technology has provided us with many medical miracles, including things that some thought were hard-to-reach science fiction.

26 Answer the following questions:

1. In your opinion, why did Edgar easily accept his father's request to take him to Dover?
2. Do you think that Albany agreed to his wife's bad treatment of her father? Why?
3. If you were Kent, would you continue your support to the King despite the danger this might cause? Why?

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How we can protect our children from the disadvantages of modern technology"

....

....

....

....

....

....

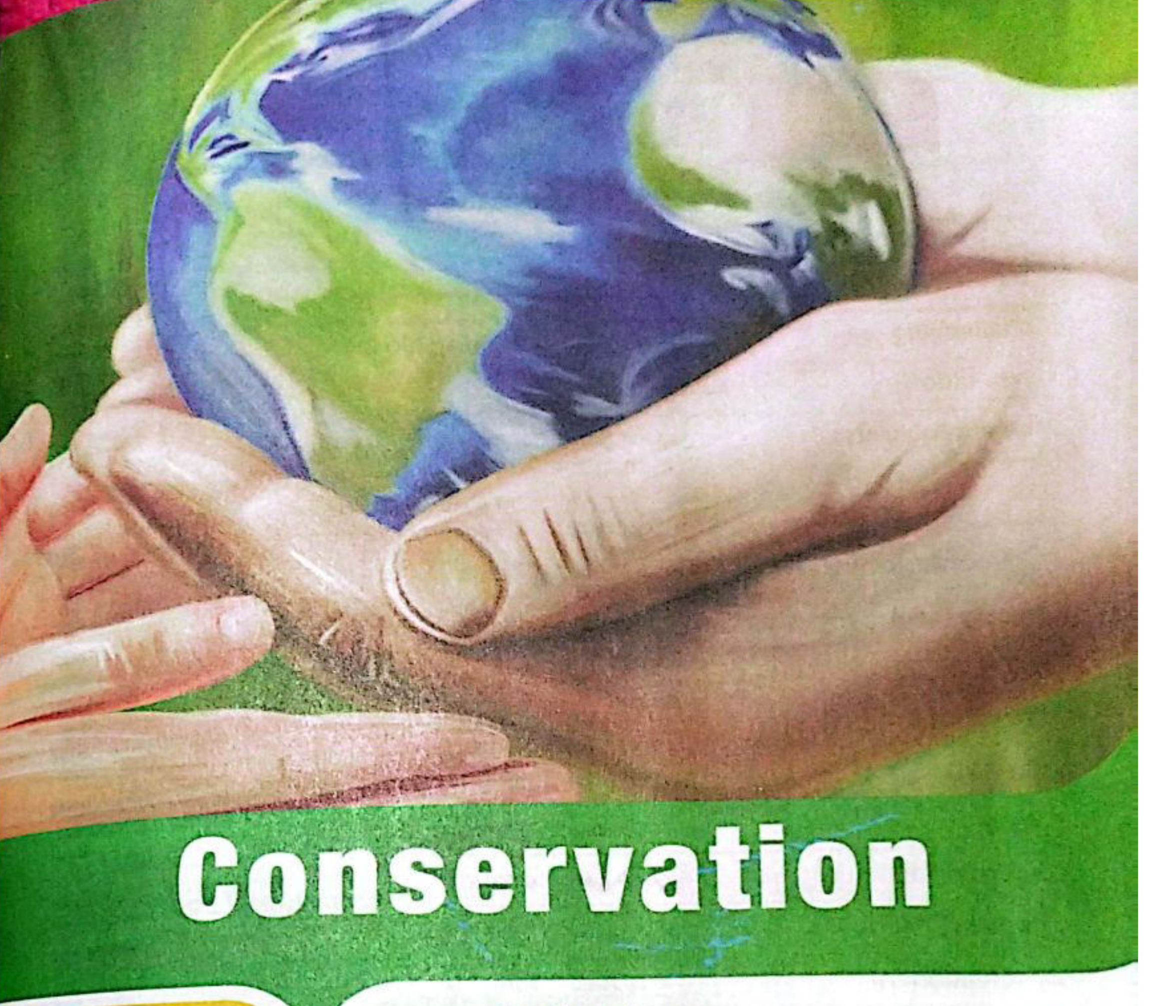
....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص351

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Conservation

Unit 9

Objectives



Reading : An online advertisement for volunteer conservation trips

Writing : An email on the best solution to a local problem; An opinion essay about the benefits of volunteering

Listening : A news report about the protection of the environment

Speaking : Discussing the benefits of volunteering; Discussing problems and choosing the best solution

Language : Comparative phrases; Used to / didn't use to

Life Skills : Problem-solving; Negotiation and decision-making; Collaboration



Part 1
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

biodiversity (n)	التنوع البيئى	preserve (v) (d)*	يحافظ على/يحفظ
challenging (adj)	متحدٍّ/صعب التحقيق	scholarship (n)	منحة دراسية
expedition (n)	بعثة/رحلة استكشافية	species (n)	نوع/فصيلة
native inhabitants (n)	السكان الأصليين		

*The organization works to preserve rainforests.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

actually (adv)	بالفعل	diving (n)	الغطس
advert (n)	إعلان	economy (n)	اقتصاد
bay (n)	خليج	endangered (adj)	معرض للخطر/للانقراض
coast (n)	ساحل	ensure (v) (d)	يضمن/يؤكد
colony (n)	مستعمرة	environment (n)	البيئة
colourful (adj)	زاهى الألوان	exotic (adj)	مثير/غريب
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	face (n) (v) (d)	وجه/يواجه
conservation (n)	حفاظ/وقاية	forest (n)	غابة
coral reefs (n)	الشعاب المرجانية	form (n) (v) (ed)	شكل/يشكل
council (n)	مجلس	generation (n)	جيل
creature (n)	مخلوق	Great Barrier Reef	الحاجز المرجانى العظيم
crop (n)	محصول	industry (n)	صناعة
culture (n)	ثقافة	involved (adj)	منخرط فى/متورط/مشترك
digital (adj)	رقمى	limit (n)	حد/قيد
disappear (v) (ed)	يختفى	livestock (n)	ماشية

monitor (v) (ed)	يراقب	soil (n)	تربة
partly (adv)	جزئيًا	sports fields (n)	ملاعب رياضية
progress (n)	تقدم	starfish (n)	نجم البحر
project (n)	مشروع	survival (n)	النجاة/البقاء حيًا
rainforests (n)	غابات استوائية	task (n)	مهمة
realise (v) (d)	يدرك	threat (n)	تهديد
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	tourism (n)	السياحة
return (v) (ed)	يرجع/يعود	unique (adj)	متميز/متفرد
rewarding (adj)	مجزٍ/مرضٍ	variety (n)	تنوع
rule (n)	قاعدة/قانون	volunteer (n) (v) (ed)	متطوع/يتطوع
site (n)	موقع	waste (n) (v) (d)	نفاية/يسرف/يضيع
slightly (adv)	بشكل طفيف	well-known (adj)	مشهور/ معروف جيدًا

Workbook Vocabulary

art (n)	فن	rubbish (n)	قمامة
behaviour (n)	سلوك	souvenir (n)	تذكار/هدية تذكارية
complain (v) (ed)	يشكو	state (n)	حالة
female (n) (adj)	أنثى/أنثوى	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند
male (n) (adj)	ذكر/ذكورى	tusk (n)	ناب الفيل
original (adj)	أصلى/أساسى	typical (adj)	أصلى/نموذجى
recognise (v) (d)	يتعرف على		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mary is attending college on a full .... that pays fully for a student's fees.
a) race b) medal c) scholarship d) league

2 The .... inhabitants of America are now called the "Red Indians".
a) modern b) native c) mixed d) foreign

3 We should stop pollution as it's our duty to .... the planet for future generations.
a) damage b) waste c) reverse d) preserve

4 Planning a wedding reception for over 1000 guests will be very .... to a new planner.
a) challenging b) simple c) normal d) ordinary

5 .... is the number and types of plants and animals that exist in a particular area or in the world generally.
a) Conservation b) Zoology c) Biodiversity d) Botany

6 Wheat is a vital and widely-used .... for millions of people across the world.
a) crop b) diary c) spice d) species

7 Most people in Cameroon speak French as it was a former French African ....
a) district b) attorney c) colony d) space

8 When you take any test, you'll have a time .... to follow.
a) border b) limit c) mark d) remark

9 An increase in tourism will help the .... of our country.
a) research b) trade c) agriculture d) economy

10 The company has chosen a new .... for its office building.
a) scenery b) view c) site d) scene

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

around big cities	حول المدن الكبيرة	have a bath	يأخذ حماماً
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	keep ... clean	يحافظ على النظافة
go on a trip/journey	يذهب فى رحلة	make sure	يتأكد
apply for	يتقدم بطلب	happen to	يحدث لـ
care for	يهتم بـ	interested in	مهتم بـ
difference between	اختلاف بين	involved in	منخرط/مشارك فى
fight for	يحارب/يناضل من أجل	ready for	مستعد لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	تحدى	challenging	متحدٍ/صعب التحقيق
conserve	يحفظ	conservation	حفظ/وقاية	conservative	واقٍ/محافظ
preserve	يحفظ	preservation	حفظ/وقاية	preservative	واقٍ/محافظ
recognise	يتعرف على	recognition	تعرف/تمييز	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
recycle *	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recyclable recycled	يمكن تدويره معاد تدويره
support	يدعم/يساند	support supporter	دعم/مساندة مدافع/مساند	supportive/supporting	داعم/مساند
survive	ينجو	survival survivor	النجاة ناجى	surviving	ناجى
vary	يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various variable	متنوع متغير

- These materials are recycled into other packaging products.
- There should be a recycling plant in each town to protect the environment.
- The blue basket in the park is for recyclable garbage.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
complain	يشكو	protest/disapprove/criticise	approve/agree	يستحسن
conservation	حفاظ	preservation/protection	destruction/negligence	تدمير/إهمال
ensure	يضمن	guarantee/assure	deny/endanger	ينكر/يعرض لخطر
monitor	يراقب	observe/supervise	ignore/neglect	يتجاهل
preserve	يحفظ	keep/care for	abandon/harm	يترك/يهجر/يضر
rewarding	مُجزٍ/مُرضٍ	profitable/valuable	worthless/valueless	بلا قيمة
support	دعم	backing/encouragement	disapproval hindrance	عدم استحسان إعاقة

task	مهمة	duty/assignment	irresponsibility/aid	عدم مسئولية/مساعدة
unique	متميز	extraordinary/exceptional	common/familiar	عادى/مألوف
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity	تشابه

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Employees complained about working conditions in the factory. The synonym of the word "complain" is "..................".
a) protest b) approve c) agree d) deprive

2 We .... on a trip to Siwa Oasis during the vacation and we were happy.
a) gave b) went c) made d) relied

3 They took steps to ensure the safety of the passengers. The verb "ensure" is the opposite of "..................".
a) guarantee b) apply c) assure d) deny

4 To apply .... the bank's credit card, just fill in this form and send it to the main office.
a) on b) off c) for d) out

5 The club has improved under his unique style of leadership. The antonym of the adjective "unique" is "..................".
a) extraordinary b) exceptional c) common d) respective

6 In Thailand, elephants are used to take tourists on rides .... big cities.
a) around b) down c) for d) on

7 The majority of ordinary citizens did not support the war. The adjective of the verb "support" is "..................".
a) supports b) supporter
c) supportive d) supportively

8 The captain couldn't understand what was happening .... the boat and it began to sink.
a) of b) on c) in d) to

9 Food prices can fairly vary from shop to shop. The noun of the verb "vary" is "..................".
a) variable b) variety c) various d) variously

10 Through the years they have made significant contributions to species conservation. The noun "conservation" is similar in meaning to "..................".
a) destruction b) preservation c) expedition d) negligence

Reading Text

Book your conservation volunteer trip today!



Are you interested in conservation? Are you ready for a new challenge? If your answer to both of these questions is 'yes', we have some excellent volunteer programmes for you.

A – New Zealand

Come to New Zealand and help us preserve[1] the country's unique biodiversity[2]. You'll plant trees so that endangered birds have a far better environment to live in. You'll also help us to monitor changes in a variety of plant species[3] in different areas. Another slightly more challenging[4] task is cleaning beaches and helping to run recycling centres where local people can bring their waste.

Twenty-one days/Prices with flights from $3,799

B – Thailand

Here in Thailand, we're involved in caring for elephants who used to take tourists on rides around big cities. You'll monitor these elephants' progress as they start their new lives in the forest to make sure that they're healthy and happy. These unique and beautiful creatures love to play with our volunteers almost as much as they love having a bath in the river with them!

Fourteen days/Prices with flights from $2,599

C – Brazil

Brazil is well-known for its amazing biodiversity. However, the native inhabitants[5] of the Amazon face exactly the same threat as the rainforests – they are also fighting for their survival. You can help the native inhabitants to preserve their languages in digital form for future generations. What is more, you can apply for a scholarship[6] for the costs of this rewarding trip.

Sixteen days/Prices with flights from $2,599

(1) يحافظ على
(2) التنوع البيئى
(3) نوع/فصيلة
(4) متحدٍ/صعب التحقيق
(5) السكان الأصليون
(6) منحة دراسية

Listening Text (1)

My name's Mohamed Mansour, and I'm reporting from a small town on the Red Sea coast[1] in Egypt. It's an area that has been popular with tourists from all the over world for a long time, but a few years ago, it became clear that tourism was causing damage to the local environment.

The biggest problem was that too many tourists would visit diving[2] centres at the same time. Local companies didn't use to put a limit[3] on how many people could dive. During the summer, they used to take ten divers at a time to explore one reef. That's just too many.

However, things have changed since the local council[4] decided to take action. There are now rules[5] about how many divers can be in one area at the same time. Divers also have to pay a small amount of money which goes towards projects which help to protect the local environment.

Another problem that the local people had in the past was that hotel companies would buy the best land in the town, remove any buildings already on it and build hotels instead. In places where there used to be facilities for local people like sports fields[6], cafés and a cinema; there are now hotels. Fortunately, the council now has new rules for how much land hotel companies can buy.

Local people used to complain[7] about tourists in their town because it changed the lives that they were used to, but now they realise that the tourists can help local businesses, and they're a lot happier to see them. This should help tourists to enjoy their visit even more, and then, they will return[8] to the area more often, helping to support the local economy[9] into the future.

(1) ساحل
(2) الغطس
(3) حد/قيد
(4) مجلس
(5) قواعد
(6) ملاعب رياضية
(7) يشكو
(8) يرجع/يعود
(9) اقتصاد

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Presenter: Welcome to programme. Today, I'm reporting from the Great Barrier Reef[1] in Australia and I'm going to be talking about the problems this beautiful place is facing. The Great Barrier Reef is an area of coral which lives under the sea in an area that is 2,600 kilometres long. People love visiting the reef because there are so many colourful[2] fish that live here.
In the past, all of the reef used to have beautifully coloured coral. Today, things are changing and much of the coral is white. Why is this?

Interviewee: First, let me explain what coral and reef is for your listeners. Coral is made from millions of very small sea animals. Corals live in groups called colonies[3]. Very large colonies are called reefs, like the Great Barrier Reef. Now, you asked me why the coral on the Great Barrier Reef is white. Well, it's partly[4] because the sea didn't use to be as warm as it is today. Global warming is starting to kill the coral, which turns white when it dies. Another problem is starfish[5]. In the past, there used to be many species of fish that ate the starfish. But people have caught so many of these fish that they have disappeared[6]. There is nothing to eat the starfish, so today, the starfish actually[7] eat the coral.
Another problem, I'm afraid, is people! The area did not use to have so many tourists visiting the Barrier Reef. Now, about two million people visit every year. Boats damage the reef and pollution is not good for the coral either.

Presenter: So life is difficult for the coral here. In next week's programme, we will be looking at what we can do about this problem.

(1) الحاجز المرجاني الكبير
(2) زاهي الألوان
(3) مستعمرات
(4) جزئية
(5) نجم البحر
(6) اختفى
(7) بالفعل

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

Notes on Vocabulary

journey رحلة طويلة أو معتادة	Although the train journey to Aswan was tiring, we enjoyed the sights.
trip رحلة قصيرة (لغرض معين-لمكان محدد)	My father went on a business trip to China to buy new machines.
expedition بعثة (رحلة منظمة خاصة إلى مكان خطر أو غير معتاد)	The soldiers were sent into a military expedition behind enemy lines.

1

realise ١- يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا) ٢- يحقق (شيئًا كان يتمناه)	- Do you realise you're an hour late? - She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.
recognise ١- يتعرف على (يعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل) ٢- يقبل ويعرف أهمية شيء	- I didn't recognise you in your uniform. - The new doctor tried to get his work recognised by the medical profession.

2

coast ساحل (مساحة من اليابسة قريبة من البحر)	We set up many tourist villages along the north coast of the Red Sea.
shore شاطئ (جزء من اليابسة مُحاذٍ لحافة البحر)	The ship reached the shore after a long voyage.
beach بلاج (شاطئ ممهد)	People like to sit relaxed under umbrellas on the beach.
bank ضفة (نهر أو بحيرة)	The hotel is located on the river bank.

3

help يستخدم الفعل (help) بمعنى يساعد بأكثر من صيغة بعده	- My teacher helped me do my research. - My teacher helped me to do my research. - My teacher helped me with my research. ولاحظ أيضًا الاستخدام التالي: (I can't help + v-ing) لا أستطيع أن أمنع نفسي من: - I can't help laughing every time I see my funny neighbour.

4

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Lamia took a good book to read as she knew it was a long, boring ....

a) journey b) trip
c) expedition d) mission

2 A lot of water flooded the river .... after heavy rain last month.

a) coasts b) banks
c) beaches d) harbours

3 The famous artist put on a large hat and glasses as a disguise and hoped no one in the mall would .... him.

a) forget b) organise
c) recognise d) realise

4 We always help our mother .... the housework when we have free time.

a) by b) at
c) with d) for

5 Unfortunately, many illegal immigrants' boats sank near the Mediterranean .... of Spain and Greece.

a) coast b) beach
c) bank d) ocean





Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The panda was listed as a threatened .... because there are only a few of them left.
a) piece b) species c) spice d) pace

2 A camera crew accompanied the explorer on his last Arctic .... to record it.
a) flight b) duty c) expedition d) picnic

3 It is believed that few living .... can survive without water or with little of it.
a) creatures b) features c) cultures d) materials

4 The art, beliefs, behaviour and ideas of a particular society or group of people are their ....
a) industry b) agriculture c) commerce d) culture

5 Many people believe that we shouldn't invest in any company that pollutes the ....
a) environment b) involvement c) replacement d) improvement

6 When his team lost the match, the coach had to .... the consequences of his bad decisions.
a) involve b) fetch c) face d) enjoy

7 The workers are working overtime to finish the engineering .... on time.
a) message b) project c) object d) career

8 My teacher advised me to .... for a charity in order to help the community and spend my free time usefully.
a) enlist b) deny c) volunteer d) fight

9 Regular tests enable teachers to monitor the .... of each student.
a) decrease b) failure c) effect d) progress

10 The assistant at the gallery pointed out يلفت النظر that none of these paintings is ...., but they are copied cleverly.
a) fake b) original c) stolen d) normal

11 I'm going to .... to the customer service about the salesman's bad treatment.
a) complain b) explain c) greet d) salute

12 Galapagos Island has more .... in plant life than other islands nearby.
a) biology b) biodiversity c) biochemistry d) terrorism

13 I think it's important to .... local businesses by buying local products.
a) report b) import c) export d) support

14 The native .... of the Amazon depend on the rainforests for their life.
a) pioneers b) discoverers c) inhabitants d) players

15 The exhibition is a/an .... opportunity to see the famous artists' latest works.
a) common b) unique c) simple d) ordinary

16 The resort in the New Alamein has a beautiful golden .... where you can enjoy marvellous time.
a) coast b) beach c) bank d) side

17 The report commented on the poor .... of the old roads.
a) state b) series c) scenery d) exhibition

18 The students in Faiyum planned to take a picnic on the east .... of Lake Qaroun.
a) coast b) bank c) beach d) bay

19 All tourists enjoy the .... wildlife of the deserts in Sinai and Siwa Oasis.
a) common b) awful c) exotic d) terrible

20 The museum is a part of the local history and should be preserved. The verb "preserve" can be the antonym of "..................".
a) conserve b) waste c) keep d) value

21 Teaching young children is considered a/an .... and rewarding job.
a) challenge b) challenged
c) challenging d) unchallengeable

22 It is very kind of you to care .... your old parents.
a) in b) at c) by d) for

23 My mother insists that we all should .... a bath before going to bed.
a) have b) give c) do d) devise

24 Ali has improved his .... since he joined the summer camp.
a) behave b) behaving c) behaviour d) behaved

25 My father really agrees with the idea that women can have children and a job .... the same time.
a) in b) at c) with d) of

26 These days, getting a degree doesn't guarantee you a job. The word "guarantee" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
a) ensure b) ignore c) refuse d) show

27 Don't worry; the new job is really ...., and the salary is much higher than the old one. (Longman)
a) decreasing b) rewarding c) charging d) changing

28 A good teacher should .... the behaviour of young children so that he/she can learn much about their characters. (Longman)
a) monitor b) interrupt c) stop d) corrupt

29 I am over the moon; I have won a/an .... to study at the University of Cambridge. (Longman)
a) ownership b) lightship c) scholarship d) spaceship

30 A lot of local communities are keen on the .... of forest resources. (Longman)
a) observation b) reservation
c) conversation d) conservation

B Language

It's highly important to know how and when to use the new grammar.



A) Comparative phrases

عند المقارنة بين الأشخاص والأشياء نستخدم مجموعة من التعبيرات التى تبين ما إذا كان الشيئان أو الشخصان متساويين أم هناك فارق كبير أو صغير فى الصفة المشتركة بينهما:



1 exactly the same (noun) as .....

وجه المقارنة الثانى + exactly the same (noun) as + وجه المقارنة الأول

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أنه لا فرق بين شخصين أو شيئين.

- Your bag is exactly the same as my bag.
- Your bag is exactly the same colour as my bag.
- Ola is as old as Hala. They are exactly the same age.
- My father does exactly the same job as your father.

2 almost as + adj. صفة + as — slightly + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين شخصين أو شيئين.

- I'm almost as tall as my brother.
- We're almost as good at maths as you.
- The trip to New Zealand is slightly more expensive than the trip to Brazil.

3 far + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين شخصين أو شيئين.

- In my opinion, playing football is far more interesting than watching it on TV.

تنبيه هام: يجب مراجعة درس الصفات والمقارنة والتفضيل من الوحدة الثانية.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The movie is almost as .... as the book.
   a) better b) good c) the best d) well
2. You look like your brother, but he is .... than you.
   a) slightly taller b) more tall c) more taller d) as tall
3. The red bicycle is .... as the blue one.
   a) less expensive b) more expensive c) the same price d) slightly expensive
4. His timetable is .... the same as yours.
   a) almost b) far c) slightly d) exactly
5. My new flat is .... as the old one.
   a) slightly as big b) slightly bigger c) almost as big d) so big

B) Past habits

للتعبير عن عادات الماضى يمكن استخدام:

1 Past simple

نستخدم الماضى البسيط مع أحداث وعادات الماضى المتكررة ونستخدم معها عادة ظروف التكرار مثل:

Always, often, every day, etc.

- When I was young, I always walked to school.

2 used to + inf.

نستخدم used to بمعنى اعتاد على للتعبير عن المواقف الدائمة وعادات الماضى والروتين والحقائق التى كانت قديمًا ولكنها لم تعد الآن.

- I used to have a bike, but now I don't.
- My father used to be an accountant, but now he is a manager at a big company.
- I used to play for the school team on Fridays when I was a student.

فى السؤال والنفى نحذف d ونستخدم use بعد Did/didn't

Yes/No questions

Did	Subject	use to	base form			
Did	you	use to	have a mobile phone when	you	were	young?
	she			she	was	
	they			they	were	

Negative

Subject	didn't	use to	base form			
I	didn't	use to	have a mobile phone when	I	was	young.
She				she	was	
They				they	were	

ويمكن النفى بـ never used to + inf.

My father never used to have a mobile phone when he was young.

نستخدم used to أيضًا للأشياء التى كانت دائمًا حقيقية ولم تعد الآن:

- This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.
- Jeans used to come only in blue. Now, you can buy them in any colour.



لاحظ

Subj. + used to + inf., but now + present simple.

- He used to sleep early, but now he sleeps late.

- لا تستخدم used to للتعبير عن الماضى القريب

- We can't say: I used to get up early last week. ✗
- But we can say: I got up early last week. ✓

3 would +inf.

تستخدم would +inf. للتعبير عن العادات والسلوك النمطى المتكرر فى الماضى وليس عن الشىء الدائم وثوابت الأشياء.

At weekends, my father would go and buy fruit, and also he would buy me sweets.

هذه الجملة تعبر عن سلوك متكرر لشخص وليس عن مواقف وأشياء حقيقية مثل امتلاك شخص لشىء أو وظيفة لديه.

I used to have a bike when I was ten years old. (Not: ~~I would have a bike.......~~)

Hotel companies would buy the best land in the town. There used to be a lot of tourists. (NOT: ~~There would be a lot of tourists.~~).

أفعال state verbs لا تستخدم مع would لأنها أفعال ثابتة وتدل على الحالة ولكنها تستخدم مع used to مثل

I didn't use to know about plants before joining the Faculty of Agriculture.

لا نستخدم wouldn't know فى المثال السابق.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When we had a problem, our teacher .... us.

a) used to helped b) was helping

c) helps d) would help

2 My uncle .... me a glass of juice every time I went to his office.

a) used to offer b) offers

c) used to offering d) would be offered

3 I .... my leg in a horse ride when I was 25.

a) would break b) used to break

c) broke d) was breaking

4 When I was a teenager, I .... my grandparents and help them bake bread.

a) was visiting b) would visit

c) visit d) am used to visiting

5 There .... a train station near my house, but now there is one.

a) didn't use to be b) used to be

c) would be d) didn't use to have

Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She's a lovely little girl. I think that she's going to be almost .... her mother.

a) more pretty than b) prettier as

c) so pretty as d) as pretty as

2 Your phone is exactly .... mine.

a) better than b) so good as

c) the same quality as d) much better than

3 My laptop is .... more powerful than Osama's.

a) exactly b) slightly c) the same d) almost

4 The exam was slightly .... than I expected.

a) easier b) as easy c) much easier d) easy

5 When I visited the city centre, it was .... less crowded than usual.

a) so b) many c) slightly d) as

6 Strangely, this food has exactly .... meat.

a) much tastier b) the same taste as c) a good taste as d) tastier than

7 Whenever we stay at this hotel, we sleep exactly in .... room.

a) the same b) same c) the same as d) as the same

8 Petrol is .... expensive as it was last year.

a) slightly b) far c) almost d) almost as

9 My leg hurts. Can you walk .... more slowly?

a) almost b) as c) slightly d) lot

10 It's strange to find that BMW is exactly the same price .... Toyota.

a) than b) as c) from d) at

11 Their house is .... two times as big as ours.

a) almost b) almost as c) slightly d) much

12 Going by train is slightly .... than driving your own car.

a) much expensive b) expensive

c) more expensive d) as expensive

13 When I was younger, I .... swimming with my friends and spend a nice time on the beach.

a) am used to go b) would go c) went d) go

14 When I was a student, I always finished my homework and then .... TV for an hour.

a) used to watch b) watch
c) watching d) watched

15 When he was young, he .... his bike to school.

a) used to ride b) was riding
c) rides d) had ridden

16 On holidays, mum .... me a big breakfast.

a) was making b) is making
c) had made d) would always make

17 Did she .... cry a lot when she was a baby?

a) use to b) used to c) using d) be used to

18 When he was a driver, my dad .... home from work at 7 pm.

a) had arrived b) arrives
c) would always arrive d) used to arriving

19 Ola's laptop .... very good. But now she can't download photos from the Internet.

a) didn't use to be b) used to be c) wasn't d) would be

20 He used to send letters to his friends, but now he .... e-mails.

a) was sending b) used to send c) sends d) is sending

21 When we were children, mother .... accompany us to bed and read us a bedtime story.

a) would b) was used to c) wasn't used to d) didn't used to

22 Your car is expensive and so is Hany's. This means that ....

a) Hany's car is slightly more expensive than yours
b) your car is slightly more expensive than Hany's
c) your car is far more expensive than Hany's
d) your car is exactly the same price as Hany's

23 My flat overlooks two streets. Each is 20 metres wide. This means that ....

a) the two streets are exactly the same wide
b) one street is wider than the other
c) the two streets are exactly the same width
d) the two streets are not as wide as each other

24 When I was young, ...

a) I was used to be slim, but now I don't.
b) I would visit my friends every weekend.
c) I would be slim, but now I'm rather fat.
d) I was used to being slim, but now I'm rather fat.

25 One of the following is grammatically correct.

a) Our new car is much more bigger than our old one.
b) Our old car was much more smaller than our new one.
c) Our old car was much smaller than our new one.
d) Our old car was as almost smaller as our new one.

26 **Student:** Are African elephants .... Asian elephants? (Longman)

Teacher: No, African ones are slightly larger.

a) small than b) the same price as
c) the same size as d) as tall as

27 There .... a lot of tourists visiting that historic place. Now, the number of tourists is a lot lower. (Longman)

a) will be b) used to being c) would be d) used to be

28 My father .... go to work by car, but now he does. (Longman)

a) didn't use to b) isn't used to c) is used to d) used to

29 Your bag is .... mine. It is the same colour, size and price. (Longman)

a) almost as expensive as b) exactly the same as
c) not similar to d) slightly different from

30 You aren't careful, Amir; you make .... mistakes you have made before. (Longman)

a) exactly same b) a slightly different
c) exactly the same d) a completely different

Test yourself



Part 1
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 We need to take action to help .... fish stocks in the Nile.
a) damage b) pollute c) deserve d) preserve

2 The young man won a .... for one of the best universities in England.
a) race b) fair c) scholarship d) tournament

3 I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a .... of my visit to Paris.
a) souvenir b) memory c) reward d) trophy

4 The teacher set a time .... of 30 minutes for the test he gave us this morning.
a) border b) limit c) quota d) amount

5 It is believed that the older .... tends to have more traditional views.
a) generation b) provision c) prohibition d) invention

6 We need to find ways to avoid unnecessary .... which causes pollution.
a) crop b) waste c) diet d) entry

7 Many young men and women became actively involved .... politics after the revolution.
a) on b) out c) in d) for

8 The animals' temperature and heartbeat are regularly monitored. The synonym of the verb "monitor" is "..................".
a) neglect b) improvise c) ignore d) observe

9 It is important to encourage environmental .... and awareness among ordinary people.
a) accommodation b) convention
c) conservation d) scholarship

10 We live in a/an .... age where everything can be downloaded from the internet.
a) digital b) ordinary c) historical d) artistic

11 More and more species are added to the list of .... animals and plants on our planet.
a) preserved b) endangered c) lasting d) banishing

12 The medicine can be taken in the .... of a liquid or tablet.
a) device b) figure c) equation d) form

13 Nurses in the Intensive Care Unit are constantly .... the patients' condition.
a) appearing b) monitoring c) designing d) devising

14 The Red Sea coast is well-known for the amazing .... reefs.
a) coral b) shark c) dolphin d) turtle

15 The slope was .... for even the most experienced climbers.
a) challenge b) changing c) challenging d) challengeable

Language

16 When we worked in the same office, we .... coffee together.
a) didn't used to have b) often have
c) were used to have d) would often have

17 Our present leader is .... than the last one.
a) slightly more experienced b) almost as experienced
c) exactly more experienced d) much experienced

18 What food .... like when you were ten?
a) do you use to b) you used to c) did you use to d) would you

19 My father is almost .... my mother.
a) more enthusiastic than b) as enthusiastic as
c) so enthusiastic as d) the same enthusiastic as

20 Sara .... a novel every week when she was young.
a) would reads b) was reading c) reads d) read

21 Tamer has .... number of books as Osama. Their bags are the same weight.
a) slightly the same b) almost the same
c) slightly much d) exactly the same

22 My father .... slim, but now he suffers from obesity السمنة.
a) would be b) had been c) used to be d) wasn't

23 Let's walk. It's almost .... taking the bus!
a) as quick than b) as quick as c) as quickly as d) quicker as

24 When my uncle visited us in the past, he .... us sweets and give us money.
a) would buy b) bought c) was buying d) used to buying

25 My brother leaves home exactly at .... time as my father.
a) better b) same c) good d) the same

26 Osama .... much hair, but now he is almost bald.
a) used to have b) would have c) almost has d) didn't have

27 The problem is .... complicated than it seems.
a) the same more b) slightly more c) as d) much

28 It's not warm, it is .... yesterday.
a) almost as cold than b) almost as cold
c) almost as cold as d) almost as colder than

29 The area has changed a lot. There .... a large car park on this site.
a) are b) would be c) will be d) used to be

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) When I was young, I would go shopping with my mother every Friday.
b) When I was young, I would have blond hair.
c) How many friends would you have?
d) As a child, I would hate having to get up early.



Part 2
Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق/ينجز	organisation (n)	منظمة
arise (v)	ينشأ	organise (v) (d)	ينظم
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد	pick up (v) (ed)	يلتقط/يجمع
career (n)	حياة مهنية	positive (adj)*	إيجابي
certain (adj)	محدد	program (n)	برنامج
community (n)	مجتمع	psychological (adj)	نفسي
consequently (conj.)	بناء على ذلك	purpose (n)	غرض
contacts (n)	اتصالات/معارف	related (adj)	مرتبط
contrast (n)	تناقض	relax (v) (ed)	يسترخي
cost (v) (n)	يتكلف/تكلفة	repair (v) (ed)	يصلح
discussion (n)	مناقشة	sign (n)	علامة/لافتة
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	skateboard (n) (v) (ed)	لوح تزلج/يتزلج بلوح
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد	skatepark (n)	منتزه للتزلج
explain (v) (ed)	يشرح/يفسر	solve (v) (d)	يحل
goal (n)	هدف	sound (v) (ed)	يبدو
inspire (v) (d)	يلهم/يحث/يوحي بـ	specific (adj)	محدد
laptop (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
lead (v)	يقود/يؤدي	suitable (adj)	مناسب
leader (n)	قائد	valuable (adj)	قيِّم
majority (n)	أغلبية	visible (adj)	مرئي
mental (adj)	عقلي/ذهني	volunteering (n)	تطوع
operating system (n)	نظام تشغيل	youth (n)	شباب
opportunity (n)	فرصة		

*We must take **positive** steps to solve the water problem.

Workbook Vocabulary

argue (v) (d)	يجادل	gain (v) (ed)	يحصل على/يكتسب
charity (n)	عمل خيري/مؤسسة خيرية	necessary (adj)	ضروري
definition (n)	تعريف	result in (v) (ed)	يؤدي إلى/يسفر عن
eventually (adv)	أخيرًا/في النهاية	reward (n) (v) (ed)	مكافأة/يكافئ
expert (n)	خبير	shade (n)	ظل
expression (n)	تعبير	solution (n)	حل
formal (adj)	رسمي	sunny (adj)	مشمس

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The volunteers at Misr El Khir provide a .... service to the poor people all over Egypt.
a) valuable b) valueless c) devalued d) unvalued

2 Windows is probably the most popular .... system; it is used by millions of computers all over the world.
a) sports b) operating c) research d) building

3 The office .... a car to meet the conference guests at the airport.
a) popularised b) realised c) organised d) recognised

4 I couldn't sleep well at the hotel room as a neon .... flashed on and off in the window.
a) project b) note c) scene d) sign

5 Dr Zewail .... generations of scientists through his great achievements.
a) aspired b) inspired c) respired d) expired

6 My parents always advise me to spend my money on something that will .... me.
a) harm b) injure c) heal d) benefit

7 The doctor suspects that my headache is purely .... as he couldn't find any physical reason.
a) medical b) psychological c) defective d) optional

8 It took my friend a long time to .... enough confidence to speak in public.
a) gain b) inquire c) earn d) beat

9 The Cairo Tower is .... from a faraway area in Cairo and Giza.
a) realised b) distant c) visible d) acceptable

10 The young boy doesn't take the school bus. He .... to school every day and now he needs a new board.
a) walks b) skateboards c) hurries d) inspects

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

as a result	نتيجة لذلك	make contacts	يكون صداقات/معارف
give ... the opportunity	يعطى ... الفرصة	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
go diving	يمارس الغطس	the pros and cons of	مزايا وعيوب
aim of	هدف لـ	contrast between	تناقض بين
arise from	ينشأ من	download from	يحمل من
benefit for	فائدة لـ	lead to	يؤدى إلى
contact with	اتصال مع	result of	نتيجة لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achieved achievable	محقق يمكن تحقيقه
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative arguable	جدلي قابل للجدل
define	يعرف	definition	تعريف	defined	محدد/معرف
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existing/existent	موجود
explain	يفسر/يشرح	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory explicable	تفسيرى قابل للتفسير
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
inspire	يلهم/يحث	inspiration	إلهام/إيحاء	inspiring inspirational	ملهم/موحى بـ ملهم
relax	يسترخى	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxing relaxed	مريح مسترخ
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solved solvable	محلول قابل للحل
value *	يقدر	value	قيمة	valuable	قيم

- During my illness, I learned to value the ordinary things in life.
- It is believed that cars go down in value quickly.
- The thieves took three pieces of valuable jewellery.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
argue	يجادل	dispute/quarrel	agree/surrender	يوافق/يستسلم
arise	ينشأ	emerge/appear	disappear/end	يختفى/ينتهى
contrast	تناقض	contradiction/difference	agreement/harmony	اتفاق/تناغم
inspire	يلهم/يحث/يوحى بـ	motivate/stimulate	discourage/depress	يثبط/يحبط
necessary	ضرورى	essential/basic	extra/minor/unnecessary	إضافى/غير هام
psychological	نفسى	mental	physical	جسمانى
reward	مكافأة/يكافئ	honour	penalty	جزاء/عقوبة
specific	محدد	definite/particular	common/indefinite	شائع/غير محدد

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young mother expressed surprise at her son's rude behaviour. The noun of the verb "express" is "..................".
a) expressed b) expression c) expressive d) expressively

2 We are here to give help and support when necessary. The antonym of the adjective "necessary" is "..................".
a) essential b) basic c) suitable d) minor

3 The young actor has .... a lot of contacts in the media who help him a lot.
a) made b) done c) given d) built

4 I watched a documentary about the events that led .... the start of the First World War.
a) with b) of c) to d) in

5 Seven copies of the original book are still known to exist. The adjective of the verb "exist" is "..................".
a) exists b) existence c) existing d) existed

6 The national hero has inspired us to lead better lives. The verb "inspire" is similar in meaning to "..................".
a) motivate b) discourage c) deny d) express

7 When we visited Dahab, we .... diving on the magnificent coral reefs.
a) followed b) went c) did d) released

8 Mariam joined a book club to get a little contact .... other people of her own age.

a) for b) on c) in d) with

9 We talked about the contrasts between his early books and his later books. The synonym of the noun "contrast" is "..................".

a) contradiction b) agreement c) harmony d) deviation

10 Difficulties arise when people fail to consult their colleagues. The opposite of the verb "arise" is "..................".

a) emerge b) appear c) disappear d) intend

Reading Text (1) (Workbook)

Can volunteering benefit young people today?

ينشأ من (1)	
ليس فقط (2)	
ولكن أيضا (3)	
يؤدي إلى (4)	
لكي (5)	
بناء على ذلك (6)	
مع ذلك (7)	

Several research studies have proven that significant psychological benefits that can arise from[1] volunteering, for people of any age. For young people though, there are many reasons why volunteering would benefit them. In my opinion, the most important benefit is that it simply makes them feel good about themselves.

I believe that a further important benefit is that young people can develop useful skills and valuable experience. These can prove extremely useful not only[2] at school, but also[3] in their careers.

For example, a volunteer job with an organisation may lead to[4] paid work. Volunteering could also provide the opportunity to find out if working in a certain area would be enjoyable and suitable.

The third and final benefit of volunteering is that it gives young people the opportunity to make useful contacts. A majority of volunteers work together in order to[5] achieve a specific goal. Consequently[6], they often get to know each other very well and team leaders may then put volunteers into contact with people who can offer them other interesting opportunities.

In conclusion, it is clear that volunteering brings several important benefits for the volunteers involved. However[7], as I explained above, the most important benefit is the positive effects that volunteering has on the volunteers' mental health.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

The problem

Many students at your school take the bus home at the end of each day. The problem is that the bus stop is always very sunny. It is very hot waiting for the bus and some children don't feel well if the bus is late.

Possible solutions

1. Give sun shades to all the students, so that they can stay out of the sun. You can also advise them to wear hats.
2. Plant trees around the bus stop, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
3. Move the bus stop next to a building, so that students can stay out of the sun while they are waiting.
4. Tell the students to wait inside the school until they can see the bus arriving.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

We should reward all volunteers

Some people argue that we should reward volunteers by giving them some money for their work. **However**, I believe that this is not necessary. Why is this?

The definition of to volunteer is to work or help someone without being paid. Many charities need volunteers **in order to** help people who have problems or who are very poor. In my opinion, the charities need all the money they receive to help these people. **Consequently**, they do not have enough money to pay volunteers.

So, why should volunteers work for no money? **Not only** do volunteers gain valuable experiences from volunteering, but they also teach them skills that they can use in their careers. I believe that voluntary work can eventually **lead to** a volunteer getting a good job.

In conclusion, I would say that there are many benefits that **arise from** volunteering rather than being paid.

Listening Text (1)



Student 1: So, we're trying to find a solution for a problem that a lot of young people are having in our town at the moment.

Student 2: Yes, there aren't enough facilities for young people in our town. When you're not at school or doing your homework, the only things you can do are: to go for a walk, go shopping or go swimming.

Student 1: Yes, I think we should have a far wider range of facilities for young people here.

Student 2: We could ask the local council to build a skatepark[1]. That wouldn't cost very much money, and it wouldn't take up very much space either.

Student 1: That's true, but not all young people like skateboarding[2], and what if there's a storm or it's too hot outside?

Student 2: That's a good point. Do you have any other suggestions?

Student 1: Well, what about starting a youth[3] club in a building that's already there? The council wouldn't have to build anything new and the youth club could offer lots of different activities, so there's something for everyone.

Student 2: Well, the council would still need to pay some people to organise[4] the youth club, so it wouldn't be completely free.

Student 1: OK, but it might not cost a lot and they could ask for volunteers.

Student 2: OK, but what activities could we do at the youth club? Playing games and drawing aren't very interesting for older kids.

Student 1: OK, so we have two possible solutions so far. It seems like we need to find something that doesn't cost[5] very much money, but which is interesting and a lot of young people will find interesting.

(1) منتزه للتزلج
(2) التزلج باللوح
(3) شباب
(4) ينظم
(5) يتكلف

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Presenter: In today's programme, we listen to your computer problems, then ask three experts to suggest[1] a solution. First, we have Ola. What's your problem, Ola?

Ola: Hi. I have an old laptop[2] which used to be really good. At school, we did a project for homework about sea life. All my friends could download photos and information from the internet, but now my laptop won't do this. What should I do?

Presenter: OK, let's ask our first expert. What do you think Ola should do, Amal?

Amal: Well, it sounds[3] like your computer is very old. Why don't you buy a new one? Then, I think your problem will be solved.

Presenter: Thanks. Do you agree, Dina?

Dina: No, because new computers are expensive! Even an old laptop should be able to download photos, so perhaps there is a problem with it. I think you should take it to a shop. I'm sure they can repair[4] it.

Presenter: OK. What about you Manal? What advice do you have?

Manal: I think you can solve the problem yourself. You probably just need a new operating system[5]. This is a program you can download from the internet; I think this will solve your problem.

(1) يقترح
(2) كمبيوتر محمول
(3) يبدو
(4) يصلح
(5) نظام تشغيل

Video Script

Conservation isn't only something people do in exotic[1] places. We need to preserve biodiversity in our own community too.

There are hundreds or even thousands of different plant species in your community. Stay on the path when you're walking outside, so you won't walk on the plants. Find out about the plant species in your area and grow them in your garden so there are more of them.

Try to buy meat, vegetables and dairy products from your area. This will help the farmers who produced them to continue to grow the same crops[2] and keep the same livestock[3] on their farms.

Try not to use too much water at home. Take a shower instead of a bath, and turn the water off while you're brushing your teeth.

Remember to recycle any rubbish that is made of glass, paper or plastic. Then it won't be added to the rubbish at a local rubbish site[4] which can pollute the soil[5] and water under it.

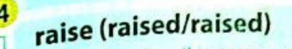
0:00

(1) مثير/غريب
(2) محاصيل
(3) ماشية
(4) موقع
(5) تربة

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

Notes on Vocabulary

1	**present** هدية	My little brother has received a lot of presents on his birthday.
	prize جائزة	I won this new bike as a prize in the sports competition.
	reward مكافأة	The young clerks were given a reward for helping complete the project in a short time.
	award وسام/جائزة رسمية	The young actor is hoping for the best actor award in the film festival.
2	**work** عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	I like this company very much. The work is really easy.
	works أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)	A collection of Shakespeare's works is offered for a cheap price at the book fair.
	job وظيفة (اسم يعد)	The young man has applied for several jobs recently.
	career (مهنة) الحياة العملية للفرد	My father received a lot of honours during his career as a doctor.
	profession (مهنة) تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب	(the medical الطبية/legal القضاء/nursing/teaching profession) - People who work in the medical profession receive much appreciation.
3	**argue for** يناضل من أجل/يؤيد	Dr Aisha Abdel Rahman, the Egyptian writer, always argued for women's rights.
	argue against يناضل ضد/يعارض	He argued powerfully against capital punishment.
	argue with يجادل مع شخص (في الرأي)	Don't argue with me, Emad. Just do what I tell you.
4	**rise (rose/risen)** يرتفع من تلقاء نفسه/تشرق/يزداد/يستيقظ/يقف/يتصاعد (لا يأتي بعده مفعول)	- The river has risen by several metres. - The price of petrol has risen by 3 per cent.
	arise (arose/arisen) يحدث (لا يأتي بعده مفعول)/يظهر/ينشأ	- Several problems have arisen recently. - Some learning difficulties arise from the way children are taught at school.
	raise (raised/raised) يزيد (يأتي بعده مفعول)/يربي/يجمع/يرفع/يثير	- I've never heard him even raise his voice. - We are raising money for charity.
	arouse (aroused/aroused) يثير (يسبب رد فعل معين/عاطفة لدى الناس) يأتي بعده مفعول	arouse feelings مشاعر/interest اهتمام/fears مخاوف/suspicions (doubts) شكوك - The event aroused considerable interest and media coverage.



Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The famous actress is a feminist activist whose films argues .... women's rights.
   a) in b) for
   c) against d) with
2. It's sad that so many young people are unable to find .... these days.
   a) jobs b) works
   c) careers d) professions
3. The police offered a/an .... for any information about the robbery.
   a) present b) award
   c) reward d) prize
4. Used car sales have .... because of the increased cost of new cars.
   a) risen b) raised
   c) aroused d) arisen



Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 To be successful, you must ensure that you do not set .... that are difficult to reach.
a) talents b) presents c) goals d) destinations

2 A couple of people objected to the new project, but the vast .... approved of it.
a) minority b) priority c) seniority d) majority

3 Egypt has maintained trade.................. with India for more than fifty years.
a) debates b) contacts c) facts d) enemies

4 To lose weight, Mary went on a diet which .... good results and was successful.
a) achieved b) applied c) failed d) aspired

5 A serious health problem can .... if the heart stops pumping effectively.
a) raise b) arise c) aside d) arouse

6 Nowadays, banks can offer basic banking facilities to people in rural ....
a) shores b) resorts c) communities d) abilities

7 Winning the gold medal is considered the highlight of any successful athlete's ....
a) job b) task c) work d) career

8 The writer's novels were .... by his long experience working as a diplomat in many countries.
a) inspired b) respired c) designed d) devised

9 I work for a national .... campaigning for the preservation of the countryside.
a) community b) band c) organisation d) league

10 We should upgrade the computer to make it .... to our new powerful software.
a) affordable b) suitable c) possible d) achievable

11 The new program makes .... videos from websites faster.
a) loading b) overloading c) uploading d) downloading

12 Most children's television programmes are aimed at a .... age group.
a) specific b) discussing c) vague d) private

13 Many people believe that small companies will cease to .... in a few years' time due to the hard business competition.
a) resist b) persist c) exist d) vanish

14 Most medical .... believe that a healthy lifestyle is the key element of preventing diseases.
a) exports b) experts c) reports d) trainees

15 Stress has an effect on both your physical and .... health.
a) bodily b) imaginative c) improper d) mental

16 If the bank lends us the money we need, all our problems will be ....
a) solved b) dealt c) caused d) cared

17 More and more businessmen donate to .... work to relieve the effects of the economic prices.
a) popularity b) corporation c) charity d) ability

18 My uncle is beginning to .... strength again after his long illness.
a) rise b) gain c) earn d) deal

19 The temperature can reach 40°C in the .... in Upper Egypt especially in summer.
a) shadow b) shade c) figure d) moisture

20 From the plane, the tops of the mountains were .... above the clouds.
a) available b) accessible c) visible d) obtainable

21 Many programs have been produced with the aim .... increasing public awareness of the disease.
a) for b) to c) in d) of

22 This dictionary provides a clear, simple .... of words that can be easily understood.
a) define b) definition c) defined d) defines

23 In the park, children have to .... turns on the swing and other game tools.
a) take b) give c) add d) provide

24 There is an obvious واضح contrast .... the cultures of East and West.
a) in b) between c) at d) for

25 Sitting on the beach under an umbrella is really .... in summer vacations.
a) relax b) relaxation c) relaxing d) relaxed

26 The children should be .... the opportunity to make their own choices.
a) taken b) turned c) denied d) given

27 The company's failure was a direct result .... bad management.
a) of b) in c) at d) for

28 If she felt he was right; she would agree with him. The verb "agree" can be the opposite of the verb "..................".
a) express b) approve c) argue d) excite

29 It is necessary to answer all the questions on the exam paper. The word "necessary" is the synonym of ....
a) minor b) essential c) trivial d) unacceptable

30 Most young people like football; the .... of them support Al Ahly and El Zamalek teams. *(Longman)*
a) minority b) general c) majority d) private

B Language

Important Notes

1 Comparative phrases

١) بالإضافة إلى ما تم شرحه فى الجزء الأول، هناك كلمات أخرى تستخدم لبيان الفارق الكبير والصغير فى درجة المقارنة ومنها:

1. a bit/a little/even/rather + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Travelling by train is a little/a bit/even/rather cheaper than travelling by car.

2. much/a lot/ far + صفة مقارنة + than

يستخدم هذا الشكل لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Gold is much/a lot/far more expensive than salt.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Wood is .... than gold, but in some cases, it is more useful.
a) as cheap b) more cheaper
c) cheapest d) far cheaper

2 I'm 18 and my brother is 30, so he's .... me.
a) much older than
b) almost as old as
c) exactly the same age as
d) the oldest of

3 When I'm with you, I'm ....
a) more happy b) happier than
c) a lot happier d) as happy

4 This TV has got a .... picture than the one we saw yesterday.
a) good b) much better
c) more better d) best

5 I think French is .... than English.
a) difficult b) much difficult
c) as difficult d) much more difficult

2 Past habits

1. Be (get) used to + v.ing
(Be used to) means "be accustomed to", "be in the habit of".

- تعبر be(get) + used to + v-ing/noun/pronoun عن عادة فى الحاضر.

My father is very active. He is used to getting up early.
I didn't like my job at first, but I'm (get)used to it now.
She isn't used to living in hot climates.

2. Object + (be + used to) + Inf. = passive

- إذا جاء قبل be used to مفعول فيأتى بعدها المصدر، وفى هذه الحالة يكون المعنى (يستخدم) وليس يعتاد.

This knife is used to cut onions.

3. Object + (be + used for) + ing.

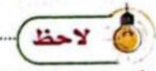
- وتستخدم be used for + v-ing للإشارة إلى الاستخدام العام للأشياء:

Knives are used for cutting things. Pens are used for writing.

4. No longer/any longer

- نستخدم no longer وبعدها فعل مضارع أو any longer معها مضارع منفى بدلًا من used to

Osama no longer smokes.
Osama doesn't smoke any longer. = Osama used to smoke.



١) فى النفى دائمًا نجد didn't use to ولكن هناك نفى صحيح أيضًا وهو used not to

Long time ago, clothes used not to be expensive.

٢) هناك used التى تستخدم صفة بمعنى مستخدم (مستعمل) وهى من الفعل use بمعنى يستخدم.

It's very dangerous to buy used clothes nowadays because of diseases.
Used cars are always much cheaper than the new ones, and they need repairing.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

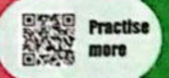
1 On summer evenings, they .... out in the garden and having cold drinks.
a) used to sit b) are used to sitting c) would sit d) sat

2 This dictionary is used to .... up the new and difficult words.
a) look b) looking c) looks d) being looked

3 She never .... to eat soup when she was young.
a) would like b) use to like c) used to like d) likes

4 The dentist .... out two of his teeth. One of them was quite good.
a) used to pull b) would pull c) was pulling d) pulled

5 My brother .... lives in the countryside.
a) used to b) no longer c) would d) any longer

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It was difficult to live in the hot climate at first, but I soon .... it.
a) got used to b) get used to c) changed to d) used to

2 My cat is a bit .... than my dog.
a) friendly b) slightly friendly
c) more friendlier d) friendlier

3 When I was a student, schools .... having more children in the class.
a) no longer b) were used to
c) were using to d) were use to

4 His behaviour was .... than what we thought at first.
a) strange b) slightly strange
c) much stranger d) almost strange

5 I study in London, so I .... abroad.
a) was used to living b) would live
c) used to live d) am used to living

6 For me, science is .... difficult than history.
a) slightly more b) slightly much c) slightly as d) almost as

7 Shimaa .... long dark hair, but she looks different now.
a) would have b) has c) used to have d) was having

8 All my friends are .... than me during races.
a) far quickly b) far quicker c) more quickly d) quick

9 I've started drinking tea recently. I never .... like it before.
a) didn't use to b) no longer c) used to d) any longer

10 She .... in tropical climates. When she does, she suffers a lot.
a) would live b) used to live
c) is used to living d) isn't used to living

11 You'd better wear your coat. It's .... yesterday.
a) much colder than b) colder as
c) cold as d) almost colder as

12 He used to live in Italy, but he .... lives there.
a) used to b) no longer c) any longer d) still

13 I .... a lot, but I do now.
a) am used to reading b) used to read
c) didn't use to read d) am not reading

14 She used to eat a lot of sweets, but she doesn't do ....
a) any more b) hardly
c) no longer d) longer

15 Her illness was .... than we thought at first.
a) serious enough b) far more serious
c) as serious d) slightly serious

16 Every evening, local people .... out onto the streets and sell souvenirs.
a) are used to going b) had gone
c) use to go d) would go

17 My brother .... be a better swimmer than me and he .... always win.
a) used to/would b) would/used to
c) used to/used to d) would/would

18 He behaves .... worse than before.
a) slight b) as c) more d) even

19 He made his money from buying and selling .... cars.
a) used to b) used c) would use d) is used to

20 Which sentence is NOT grammatically correct?
a) I didn't use to like cheese when I was younger.
b) I didn't use to walk home after school.
c) As a child, I would hate having to get up early.
d) I was used to studying in my small room.

21 When I was young, I .... a lot in bed.
a) was reading b) was used to reading
c) used to reading d) didn't use to reading

22 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.
a) When I was young, I always went to the public library with my friends.
b) When I was young, I used to go to the public library with my friends.
c) When I was young, I would go to the public library with my friends.
d) Last week, I used to go to the public library 3 times.

23 The cheapest thing in this shop is the blue suit. This means that: ....
a) Everything in the shop is exactly the same price as the blue suit.
b) Everything in the shop is slightly cheaper than the blue suit.
c) Everything in the shop is more expensive than the blue suit.
d) The blue suit is almost as cheap as everything in the shop.

24 Osama and I have bought two small T-shirts size 8. This means that my T-shirt is ....
a) exactly the same size as Osama's. b) slightly smaller than Osama's.
c) much smaller than Osama's. d) almost as big as Osama's.

25 I had difficulty in driving cars in the past, but now I can drive well. This means that: ....
a) I used to drive cars well in the past.
b) I was used to driving cars well in the past.
c) Driving cars in the past wasn't so easy for me.
d) I no longer drive cars well now.

26 I think we should have a .... wider range of facilities in primary schools. *(Longman)*
a) farther b) many
c) far d) lot

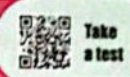
27 I used to catch fish when I was young, but now I don't do ....
a) any more b) some more
c) no more d) lot more

28 There .... as many people living on that isolated island as we see nowadays; the number of people has greatly increased. *(Longman)*
a) didn't use to have b) used to be
c) used to have d) didn't use to be

29 My father no longer smokes as he .... *(Longman)*
a) used to be b) used to have
c) is used to d) used to

30 Which of the following ISN'T structurally correct? *(Longman)*
a) Is your mobile phone the same price as mine?
b) A lot of people think that Arabic is most difficult than English.
c) A train is far faster than a tram.
d) No invention is more important than the Internet.

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 The .... of the summer festival is to attract more tourists to the new city.
a) argument b) reason c) degree d) purpose

2 During the emergency, a lot of people .... to work through the night.
a) immigrated b) volunteered c) duplicated d) relied

3 She pointed to her watch as a .... that it was getting late and she wanted to leave.
a) comment b) traffic c) sign d) note

4 Mohamed has been a .... role model for his brother and helped him to succeed.
a) positive b) negative c) defective d) relative

5 Thanks to a large gift from an anonymous donor, the .... was able to continue its work.
a) stock b) charity c) identity d) popularity

6 The sales of electric devices dropped and .... a result companies' profits have declined.
a) at b) with c) as d) for

7 Amateurs play games more for the love of sport than for financial reward. The antonym of the word "reward" is "..................".
a) honour b) trophy c) immigration d) penalty

8 World .... should meet regularly to consider the world problems and encourage peace.
a) readers b) citizens c) leaders d) clients

9 Our teacher always tries to make his lessons .... for all students.
a) avoidable b) enjoyable c) detestable d) perplexing

10 Sleep disorders اضطرابات النوم are a serious .... problem, but they aren't very hard to cure.
a) physical b) herbal c) psychological d) scientific

11 Our new neighbours rarely .... with each other. They are a perfect couple.
a) agree b) argue c) support d) discuss

12 There was a worried .... on my father's face when I told him about my difficult journey.
a) intention b) description c) aviation d) expression

13 We should all work to find an effective .... to the city's traffic problem.
a) ambition b) impression c) solution d) condition

14 Although he started work only last month, he was able to .... many contacts in the company.
a) do b) make c) practise d) avoid

15 You should read the .... notes at the front of the book to understand its structure.
a) explain b) unexplained c) explanatory d) explains

Language

16 This gadget is used to .... onions.
a) chop b) chopped c) chopping d) being chopped

17 Ahmed's salary is .... as mine.
a) much b) exactly the same
c) much more d) slightly the same

18 I'm terribly nervous, I'm not used to .... to a large number of audience.
a) speaking b) speak c) being speak d) speaks

19 My job is far .... than I expected.
a) much interesting b) interesting
c) more interesting d) as interesting

20 Kareem ran .... faster than Ramy during the race.
a) more b) much c) as d) so

21 After her husband died, the old woman had to get used to .... on her own.
a) live b) lived c) living d) leaves

22 I can't take your smart car. I .... driving an automatic car.
a) am not used to b) used to c) am used to d) didn't use to

23 She .... gets up early; as she used to.
a) frequently b) always c) anymore d) no longer

24 The mouse is almost as .... as the cat. That's amazing.
a) bigger b) biggest c) big d) far big

25 The teacher asked me where I .... at the weekend.
a) used to go b) go c) am used to going d) am going

26 Ragab .... me at 9:00 last night.
a) used to call b) would call c) calls d) called

27 The building is .... taller than the tree.
a) a bit b) a little more c) as d) many

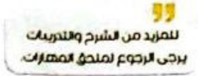
28 I watched TV often in the past, but I .... do this.
a) used to b) no longer c) any longer d) still

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.
a) Ali is much shorter than Hossam.
b) Ali and Hossam are exactly the same length.
c) Hossam and Ali are exactly the same height.
d) Ali is slightly taller than Hossam.

30 All my friends ....
a) are used to walk to school every day
b) used to walking to school every day
c) are in the habit of walk to school every day
d) are accustomed to walking to school every day









Opinion essay: مقال الرأى

مقال الرأى هو مقال توضح فيه رأيك فى موضوع ما، ويجب ذكر رأيك بوضوح خلال المقال، كما تقدم حججا وأسبابا و وجهات نظر مختلفة حول الموضوع وتدعمها أدلة أو أمثلة:

Outline of an Argumentative Essay

Introduction	Main body	Conclusion
فى المقدمة يجب أن تقوم بتقديم موضوعك وإبداء رأيك بوضوح. تأكد من أنها تحتوى على جملة الموضوع أى جملة تلخص النقطة الرئيسية فى مقالتك.	بعد المقدمة يجب أن تدعم بيان رأيك. اكتب عدة فقرات، كل منها يقدم وجهة نظر منفصلة مدعومة بالأسباب. تأكد من أنك لا تبدأ فقرة جديدة؛ لأن الفقرة التى تكتبها الآن طويلة جدًا. ابدأ فقرة جديدة فقط عندما تريد مناقشة فكرة جديدة.	لاختتام مقال رأيك، اكتب فقرة تعيد فيها التعبير عن رأيك باستخدام كلمات مختلفة. يجب تجنب طرح فكرة جديدة أو الرجوع عن رأيك الذى بدأت به المقدمة.

The benefits of volunteering

1. Introduction

Volunteering is important for many reasons that benefit both the community and the volunteers themselves. When someone donates a handful of time, the difference made is tremendous and it shapes a community for the better, while the experience improves the person who donated the time.

2. Main body

Volunteering is what makes a community because it brings people together to work on a goal. Whether it is to cure a disease that affects the whole world, or to help a local family who has fallen in a time of calamity; volunteers make it happen. Community life is improved by helping others and giving a hand to get a job done more effectively. More people working equals less work for each person and less time for the project. So, when it comes to getting the job done, like a community clean up, the more the better.

Donating time will also help volunteers themselves in the future. Volunteering strengthens present skills and also shows an employer that an effort has been made to make an improvement. Such skills include communication skills, ability to work with others, ability to take direction and lead others, dedication and time management. Employers realise that as a volunteer you must be able to prioritise your timetable in order to devote time for activities that benefit others. When employers see active volunteer work, they are much more likely to hire such a person rather than someone who doesn't volunteer. Employers are aware that most people who offer their time are conscientious, honest and hardworking individuals.

3. Conclusion

These are just a few reasons why volunteering is important. Not only does it bring hope and happiness to people, but it also leads to spiritual and personal growth. It is an experience that cannot be bought with any amount of money.

Practice | Practise more | Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Hala and Salwa were best friends. They were together so much of the time that people say that they were like an inseparable[1] twin. They did everything and went everywhere together. One day, however, something happened that almost caused their friendship to break.

Hala had already made plans with Salwa to watch a show. At the last minute, Hala's mother had an errand[2] to run, and someone had to look after her sister. Salwa was disappointed, but said that she would still wait for Hala and watch the show together. The next morning, Hala overheard Salwa telling another friend, "it was a wonderful show. I saw it last night and it was fabulous[3]." Hala got upset. She walked past Salwa and gave her an angry look. Salwa was puzzled. Why was Hala angry with her? When Salwa called out to Hala, she ignored[4] her. After school, Salwa waited for Hala, as usual, for their walk home together. However, Hala just walked on alone, Salwa ran after her and asked, "What's the matter, Hala? Why are you avoiding me like this?" Hala answered angrily, "You broke your promise. Friends aren't supposed to do that." Salwa realised what the problem was and laughed. "I went to a different show. I will never break my promise to you. You are my best friend." Hala apologised to Salwa and they were best friends again.

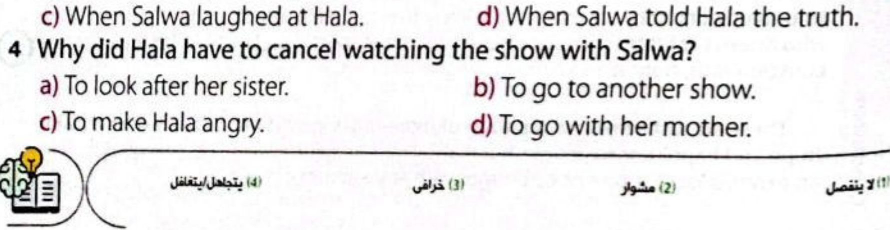
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The phrase "had an errand to run" means ....
a) go for a ride
b) to go for a walk
c) to solve a problem
d) to do a task

2 The antonym of the word "disappointed" is "..................".
a) frustrated
b) satisfied
c) furious
d) free

3 When did Hala and Salwa come to be friends again?
a) When Hala looked angrily at Salwa.
b) When Salwa lied to Hala.
c) When Salwa laughed at Hala.
d) When Salwa told Hala the truth.

4 Why did Hala have to cancel watching the show with Salwa?
a) To look after her sister.
b) To go to another show.
c) To make Hala angry.
d) To go with her mother.



(1) لا ينفصل (2) مشوار (3) خرافى (4) يتجاهل/يتغافل

5 "Hala and Salwa were like an inseparable twin". This means that ....
a) they live together
b) they hate each other
c) they can't leave each other
d) they work in different places

6 Hala was wrong when she ....
a) apologised to Salwa
b) looked after her sister
c) ignored her friend
d) walked home with Salwa

7 Good friends ....
a) shouldn't depend on each other
b) shouldn't think badly of each other
c) should live together
d) should break their promises

8 The best title to the passage is "..................".
a) Friends should be strict to each other
b) Friendship could be broken because of doubt
c) How to end friendship
d) Friends should watch shows together

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Being successful is not an easy task. However, having a set of clear aims and giving priority to the urgent ones are vital to achieve success.

a) النجاح ليس بالمهمة السهلة. و لذلك، فإن امتلاك مجموعة من الأهداف المعقدة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف العاجلة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.

b) تحقيق التقدم ليس بالمهمة السهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك بعض من الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف المؤقتة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.

c) تأجيل النجاح ليس بالمهمة السهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك مجموعة من الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأسبقية للأهداف الدائمة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.

d) تحقيق النجاح ليس بالمهمة السهلة. ومع ذلك، فإن امتلاك مجموعة من الأهداف الواضحة وإعطاء الأولوية للأهداف العاجلة أمر حيوى لتحقيق النجاح.

2 Environmental conservation has become one of the most important issues that need to be discussed to fight climate change and global warming. Sustainable development can save the earth from pollution.

a) لقد أصبح الحفاظ على البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التى يجب نشرها لمواجهة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى. ويمكن للتنمية المؤقتة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.

b) لقد أصبح الحفاظ على البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التى يجب مناقشتها لمواجهة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.

c) لقد أصبح الحفاظ على الكائنات إحدى أهم القضايا التى يجب مناقشتها لمساندة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من الازدحام.

d) لقد أصبح دعم البيئة إحدى أهم القضايا التى يجب تجاهلها لمواجهة تغير المناخ والاحتباس الحرارى. ويمكن للتنمية المستدامة أن تنقذ الأرض من التلوث.

3 Volunteering and tolerance are two of the most important social values. Schools and educational curricula should aim at training children on them at an early age.

a) العمل التطوعى والتسامح قيمتان من أهم القيم الثقافية. وينبغى أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال فى سن متأخرة.

b) العمل التطوعى والتسامح قيمتان من أهم القيم الاجتماعية. وينبغى أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال فى سن مبكرة.

c) العمل التطوعى والتسامح قيمتان من أهم النظم الاجتماعية. وينبغى أن تهدف المدارس والمناهج التعليمية إلى تدريب الشباب فى سن مبكرة.

d) العمل الخيرى والتسامح خاصيتان من أهم القيم الاجتماعية. وينبغى أن تهدف المدارس الأهداف التعليمية إلى تدريب الأطفال فى سن مبكرة.

4 Many projects will be built on the banks of the New Suez Canal. This will add to the national income and offer many job opportunities.

a) سيتم بناء العديد من المصانع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الدخل القومى ويوفر العديد من المنتجات.
b) تم بناء العديد من المشاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. أضاف هذا إلى الدخل القومى ووفر العديد من فرص العمل.
c) سيتم بناء العديد من المشاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الدخل القومى ويوفر العديد من فرص العمل.
d) سيتم بناء القليل من المشاريع على ضفاف قناة السويس الجديدة. سيضيف هذا إلى الأمن القومى ويوفر العديد من فرص العمل.

5 Poverty and social problems may cause some children to live in the streets and become homeless. So, we must try to solve these serious problems.

a) قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاقتصادية فى أن يعيش بعض الأطفال فى الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا وطن. لذلك، يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشاكل الخطيرة.
b) قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية فى أن يعيش بعض الأطفال فى الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوى. لذلك، يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشاكل الخطيرة.
c) قد يتسبب الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية فى أن يعيش بعض الشباب فى الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوى. لذلك، يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشاكل السهلة.
d) قد يتسبب الجهل والمشاكل الاجتماعية فى أن يعيش معظم الأطفال فى الشوارع وأن يصبحوا بلا مأوى. لذلك، يجب أن نحاول حل هذه المشاكل الخطيرة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 لا يحب الكثير من الشباب مشاهدة الأفلام الوثائقية التى تثرى معارفهم ووعيهم بالعالم من حولهم، بل يفضلون مشاهدة أفلام الحركة و الرعب التى قد تسبب المشكلات لبعضهم.

a) Many young people don't like watching documents which enrich their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They prefer active and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.
b) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which enrich their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They prefer action and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.
c) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which offer their knowledge and awareness of the world around them. They dislike action and horror movies which can cause problems for some of them.
d) Many young people don't like watching documentaries which enrich their ambitions and awareness of the world around them. They prefer action and sorrow movies which can cause problems for some of them.

7 يجب أن تكون المنتجات المصرية عالية الجودة لكى تتمكن من منافسة المنتجات الأخرى فى الأسواق العالمية؛ لذا تهتم الحكومة بتدريب كل العاملين على أحدث طرق الإنتاج.

a) The Egyptian production should be of high quality so as to be able to complete the other products in the international market. So, the government is interested in treating all workers in the latest production methods.
b) The Egyptian products should be of high quantity so as to be able to compete with the other products in the national market. So, the government is interested in training all workers in the latest production styles.
c) The Egyptian products should be of high quality so as to be able to compete with the other products in the international market. So, the government is interested in training all workers in the latest production methods.
d) The Egyptian products should be of high quality so as to be able to compete with the other products in the international market. So, the environment is interested in training all workers in the latest production systems.

8 تعتبر الشعاب المرجانية أهم عوامل جذب السياح لمنطقة البحر الأحمر؛ لذا يجب الحفاظ عليها حتى نحافظ على استدامة السياحة فى هذه المنطقة الهامة من مصر.

a) Coral reefs are the most important distractions for tourists in the Red Sea area; so, we should serve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.
b) Coral reefs are the least important attractions for tourists in the Red Sea area; so, we should preserve them to keep tourism attainable in this important area of Egypt.
c) Coral reefs are the most important attractions for tourists beside the Red Sea area; so, we should deserve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.
d) Coral reefs are the most important attractions for tourists in the Red Sea area; so, we should preserve them to keep tourism sustainable in this important area of Egypt.

9 تعتمد طرق التعليم الحديثة على أدوات التكنولوجيا الحديثة مثل الكمبيوتر والإنترنت لذلك تسعى وزارة التربية و التعليم إلى توفيرها فى كل مراحل التعليم و خاصة المرحلة الثانوية.

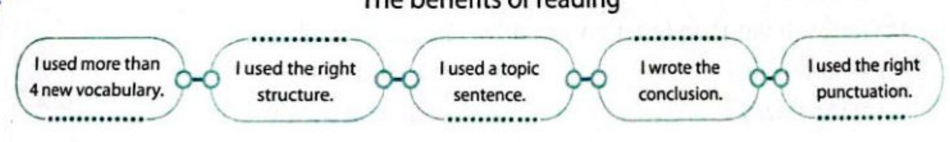
a) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology tools such as computer and the internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary stage.
b) Modern methods of education depend on old technology tools such as computer and the internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the primary stage.
c) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology tools such as computer and the internet, so the Ministry of Health seeks to prevent them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary stage.
d) Modern methods of education depend on modern technology instruments such as smart phones and the internet, so the Ministry of Education seeks to provide them at all stages of education and especially at the secondary stage.

10 يجب أن تهتم المدارس بمواهب الطلاب ومحاولة تنميتها من خلال الأنشطة المختلفة التى تعزز عملية التعلم وتجعل التعليم ممتع.

a) Schools should be interested on students' talents and try to develop them through similar activities that enhance the learning process and make education fun.
b) Schools should be interested in students' talents and try to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning process and make education fun.
c) Schools should be interested in students' hobbies and try to develop them through different activities that enhance the learning cycle and make education fun.
d) Schools should be interested in students' talents and arrange to develop them through different activities that weaken the learning process and make education fun.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The benefits of reading"





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There should be more laws to help .... our natural resources.
a) damage b) reserve c) deserve d) preserve

2 Doctors believe that children abuse الإساءة للأطفال can lead to serious ....
and emotional problems.
a) fictional b) psychological
c) economic d) criminal

3 Up till now, there is no .... proof that life exists on other planets.
a) negative b) doubtful c) positive d) valueless

4 Motor racing is really a .... game that attracts only adventure seekers.
a) challenging b) simple c) fragile d) clear

5 The child is advised to .... a bath before going to bed every day.
a) give b) do c) take d) make

6 My teacher is a volunteer in an organisation working on wildlife conservation.
The synonym of the word "conservation" is ....
a) destruction b) negligence c) protection d) doubt

7 Kamal is exactly .... as Nader.
a) the same age b) old c) so old d) older

8 After the trip, my brother was .... tired as my father.
a) so b) almost as c) almost so d) slightly as

9 I liked the museum. It was .... more interesting than I expected.
a) lot b) almost c) many d) far

10 This bag is .... than the other one.
a) slightly heavier b) slightly heavy
c) almost heavy d) as heavy

11 Tourists .... to dive in this area, but now they do.
a) used to come b) didn't use to come
c) would come d) came

12 You're driving too fast. Can you drive ....?
a) far slower b) much slower
c) too slowly d) a bit slowly

13 It's .... to learn a language in a country where it is spoken.
a) more easier b) as easy
c) a lot easier d) almost easiest

14 Jeans .... in different colours, but now they do.
a) are used to coming b) didn't use to come
c) used to come d) used not coming

15 When I was young, I .... thin and had a lot of health problems.
a) was b) used to be
c) would be d) didn't use to be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A robot is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions[1]. The instructions come from a computer. It does not make mistakes. It doesn't get tired or complain unless you tell it to!

Robots are all around us. Some robots can help make cars. Other robots can help explore[2] volcanoes. Certain robots can help vacuum[3] your house. Some robots can even recognise words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. Over 2,000 years ago, a famous poet imagined robots. The poet's name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They cleaned and made things. But they were not real. They were imaginary[4]. Nobody was able to make a real robot. The first real robot was made in 1961. It was called *Unimate*. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a giant arm.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do. Or they will do things that we don't want to do. Or they will do things that are too dangerous for us. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us discover things. They will help make life better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 The robot doesn't make mistakes, get tired or complain because it ....
a) is made of plastic b) is a machine
c) can't speak d) looks like a human



(1) تعليمات (3) يكنس
(2) يستكشف (4) خيالي

17 As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that something special is NOT ....

a) expensive b) perfect c) tired d) normal

18 What is the main purpose of paragraph 2?

a) To show how easy it is to make a robot.
b) To tell what a robot is.
c) To describe the things a robot can do.
d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine.

19 Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot?

a) To help explore Mars. b) To help make a sandwich.
c) To help read a book. d) To help tie shoes.

20 How does the author of this passage feel about robots?

a) Robots are foolish. b) Robots are helpful.
c) Robots are harmless. d) Robots are dangerous.

21 The robot receives the instructions from ....

a) computer b) man c) another robot d) a poet .

22 Robots have been in man's thoughts for over .... years.

a) 60 b) 62 c) 1961 d) 2000

23 The robot is different from man as it ....

a) needs carbon dioxide to live
b) doesn't mistake even if the instructions are wrong
c) doesn't object to anything
d) doesn't need space to move

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the best sign of a civilised society.

a) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى القليل من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هى حقًا أفضل لافتة للإقليم المتحضر.

b) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من العمال الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة التقليدية. فالأخلاق هى حقًا أفضل إشارة للمجتمع المتحضر.

c) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هى حقًا أفضل سمة للمجتمع المتحضر.

d) تحتاج بيئتنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون صفات أخلاقية حميدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة. فالأخلاق هى حقًا أفضل سمة للمجتمع المتحضر.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

- للهوايات تأثير إيجابي على صحتنا. فالقراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا. فهي يمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الإسترخاء.

a) Hobbies have a positive effect on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

b) Hobbies have a positive affection on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a specific effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

c) Hobbies have a negative effect on our health. Reading is a very useful hobby because it motivates your mind, and experiences say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

d) Hobbies have a positive effect on our wealth. Reading is a very useless hobby because it motivates your mind, and experts say it has a pacifying effect. It can lower stress levels and help you relax.

26 Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Oswald, would you agree to let Regan open Cordelia's letter to Edmund?
2. What do you think Regan's message to Edmund is?
3. What do you think of Edgar's behaviour with his father?

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on Earth important?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص351

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



The News

Unit 10

Objectives



Reading : Online news stories
Writing : A news report
Listening : News stories
Speaking : Presenting news stories
Language : Past perfect and past perfect passive
Life Skills : Critical thinking recognising facts and opinions; Self-management: weighing up situations and taking the appropriate actions

Study   Watch a video

Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

broadcast (n) (v)*	نشر/إذاعة/ينشر/يذيع	photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافى
editor (n)	محرر/رئيس تحرير	reporter (n)	مراسل صحفى
fact checker (n)	مراجع حقائق	search engine (n)	محرك بحث
interview (n) (v) (ed)	مقابلة/يجرى مقابلة	source (n)	مصدر
newsreader (n)	مذيع/قارئ الأخبار		

*The funeral of the prince was broadcast to the whole country.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

accurate (adj)	دقيق	flame (n)	لهب/شعلة نار
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف بـ	headlines (n)	عناوين الأخبار
alarm (n)	إنذار	identify (v) (y ied)	يحدد/يتعرف على
Caribbean islands	جزر البحر الكاريبى	investigator (n)	محقق/مفتش
channel (n)	قناة	journalist (n)	صحفى
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع	Lebanese (adj)	لبنانى
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على	online (adj) (adv)	عبر الإنترنت
correspondent (n)	مراسل صحفى أو تليفزيونى	opportunity (n)	فرصة
deliberately (adv)	عمدًا	originally (adv)	أساسًا/أصلًا
digital nomads (n)	الرحالة الرقميون	perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
disaster (n)	كارثة	photography (n)	التصوير
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف/يخشى	print (v) (ed)	يطبع
fire service (n)	خدمة الإطفاء	printing press (n)	الطباعة/المطبعة

produce (v) (d)	ينتج	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
range (n)	مجال/معدل	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
record (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/رقم قياسي/يسجل	trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة/يثق في
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	truth (n)	حقيقة
responsible (adj)	مسئول	unclear (adj)	غير واضح
scene (n)	مشهد/موقع حدث	unreliable (adj)	غير موثوق فيه
select (v) (ed)	ينتقي/يختار	upload (v) (ed)	يحمل إلى الإنترنت
serious (adj)	جاد/خطير		

Workbook Vocabulary

astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء	onboard (adj)	على متن (سفينة/طائرة)
bomb (n)	قنبلة	origin (n)	أصل/مصدر
competition (n)	مسابقة	photography (n)	التصوير
confirm (v) (ed)	يؤكد	politician (n)	رجل سياسة
crash (n) (v) (ed)	تحطم/يرتطم/يتحطم	press conference (n)	مؤتمر صحفي
crime (n)	جريمة	professional (adj) (n)	محترف
digital (adj)	رقمي	properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	recent (adj)	حديث
find (n)	اكتشاف	satellite (n)	قمر صناعي
fix (v) (ed)	يصلح	space walk (n)	السير في الفضاء
frequently (adv)	غالبًا/بشكل متكرر	species (n)	نوع/فصيلة (حيوانية)
income (n)	دخل	suffer (v) (ed)	يعاني
inform (v) (ed)	يبلغ	talent (n)	موهبة
injury (n)	إصابة	title (n)	عنوان/لقب
leader (n)	قائد	zoom in (v) (ed)	يقرب الصورة
meteorite (n)	نيزك		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A government .... spoke to the press about the plane crash early this morning.
a) source b) section c) voter d) enemy

2 A large crowd of .... collected outside the hotel where the famous actor's wedding was held.
a) consumers b) reporters c) fighters d) inspectors

3 The funeral of Queen Elizabeth II was .... live to the whole world.
a) investigated b) arranged c) broadcast d) accepted

4 The Prime Minister is the most famous person that the presenter has ever .... on TV.
a) offered b) tested c) searched d) interviewed

5 Our new next-door neighbour is a former .... of Al-Ahram Newspaper.
a) editor b) reader c) investigator d) inventor

6 Farming is the main source of .... in this village, but it also has a small factory.
a) energy b) effort c) income d) entertainment

7 The police think that the fire had been started .... and it wasn't an accident.
a) strangely b) personally c) accidentally d) deliberately

8 A car .... went off in the middle of the night which woke us all up.
a) sale b) alarm c) extinguisher d) service

9 The airline is legally .... for the safety of its passengers.
a) available b) acceptable c) responsible d) unreliable

10 The invention of the .... press is considered the most important invention as it helped transfer knowledge and science to next generations.
a) printing b) sewing c) cutting d) welding

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

cause serious problems	يسبب مشكلات خطيرة	in charge of	مسئول عن
come true	يصبح حقيقة/يتحقق	take photographs	يلتقط صورًا
care about	يهتم بـ	send out	يبث
crash into	يصطدم بـ	share ... with	يشارك ... مع
hear about/of	يسمع عن	turn to	يتحول إلى
look into	يفحص	upload to	يحمل إلى
range of	سلسلة من	worried about	قلق عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
....		accuracy	دقة	accurate	دقيق
compete	يتنافس	competition competitor	مسابقة متنافس	competitive	تنافسي
fear	يخشى	fear	خوف/خشية	fearful	مخيف
identify	يحدد	identity	هوية/شخصية	identifiable	يمكن تحديده
inform*	يبلغ	information informer	معلومات مخبر	informative	معلوماتي
investigate	يحقق/يفتش	investigation investigator	تحقيق محقق/مفتش	investigatory	تفتيشي/تحقيقي
select	ينتقي/يختار	selection	اختيار	selective	انتقائي

- The leaflet informs customers about healthy eating.
- How can I get information about enrolling on the course?
- This book is very informative about local customs in Africa.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
accurate	دقيق	precise/exact	inaccurate/false	غير دقيق/مزيف
broadcast	ينشر/يذيع	announce/transmit	hide/conceal	يخفي
collect	يجمع	gather/accumulate	scatter/separate	يبعثر/يفصل
fear	يخشى	worry/fright	face	يواجه
frequently	غالبًا/بشكل متكرر	generally/often	rarely/seldom	نادرًا
identify	يحدد	recognise/determine	confuse/disguise	يربك
professional	محترف	efficient/skilful	amateur/inexperienced	هاو/بلا خبرة
properly	بشكل صحيح	correctly/appropriately	wrongly/ improperly	بشكل خاطئ
select	ينتقي/يختار	pick out/choose	refuse/reject	يرفض/ينبذ
source	مصدر	origin/root	outcome/result	ناتج
traditional	تقليدي	conventional/old	modern/up-to-date	حديث
trust	ثقة	confidence/faith	doubt/uncertainty	شك/عدم تأكد
unreliable	غير موثوق فيه	inaccurate/untrustworthy	dependable/reliable	موثوق فيه

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The witness identified the suspect in the crime. The verb "identify" is the opposite of "..................".
   a) confuse b) determine c) recognise d) defy
2. I'd always dreamed of owning my own home, and now my dream has .... true.
   a) gone b) taken c) come d) made
3. Scientists believe that a large meteorite نيزك may have crashed .... the Earth 65 million years ago leading to dinosaurs' dying out.
   a) to b) into c) of d) out
4. The police are still investigating the murder. The adjective of the verb "investigate" is ....
   a) investigates b) investigation c) investigator d) investigatory
5. Visitors are not allowed to .... photographs inside some famous museums.
   a) take b) do c) paint d) design
6. Our old car's becoming very unreliable. The synonym of the adjective "unreliable" is "..................".
   a) dependable b) untrustworthy c) helplessly d) strangely
7. Passengers complain that trains are frequently cancelled. The antonym of the adjective "frequently" is "..................".
   a) generally b) often c) rarely d) daily
8. With the economic situation, many people always seem to be worried .... money.
   a) for b) on c) at d) about
9. The school will only select 12 applicants for enrolment. The noun of the verb "select" is ....
   a) selected b) selection c) selective d) selectively
10. Children must learn how to behave properly. The adverb "properly" is similar in meaning to ....
    a) correctly b) wrongly c) doubtfully d) occasionally

Reading Text (1)



It seems that today less than 50% of us get our news from traditional sources[1] like newspapers and television. Everyone is turning to the internet and social media[2] for news, and some experts fear that we might accept some unreliable[3] news stories as fact because we read social media sites which share our opinions. But is this true? Search engines[4] lead us to a wider range[5] of sources which means we can read the news from many different places. However, we should always question what we read and never just accept it as true.

(1) مصادر
(2) وسائل التواصل
(3) غير موثوق به
(4) محركات البحث
(5) معدل







Secondary school students in the UK have had the chance to become news reporters[1] for the day. Students created a news website and produced a news report. They selected reporters and photographers[2] who went out to look for interesting news in their community. When they had interviewed[3] people and had written their stories, the reporters gave their work to the newsreaders[4] who then recorded the news. The videos were uploaded to the news website and some were broadcast[5] on local television.

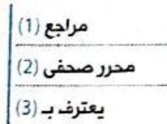
(1) مراسلون صحفيون
(2) مصورون
(3) يقوم بمقابلة
(4) قارئو الأخبار
(5) ينشر/يذيع





Saeed Yousuf is a fact checker[1]. He checks the facts in reports before they are sent to the editor[2]. Saeed explains that news stories can use both facts and opinions, but it must be clear which is which. Facts can be checked, but opinions are the points of view held by the writer. He believes that it's very important for the public to trust the information in the story, but some newspapers, he admits[3], are better at checking facts than others. It can cause serious problems if newspapers print stories without checking the information carefully first.

(1) مراجع
(2) محرر صحفي
(3) يعترف بـ





Reading Text (2) (Workbook)



Astronauts[1] have made yet another amazing discovery in space. During a recent space walk to fix part of a satellite, which had been damaged after a meteorite[2] had hit it, they saw an unexpected shape on the moon. Using their onboard digital[3] cameras, they zoomed in[4] to discover what appeared to be a plane, which used to carry bombs during World War 2 and had crashed into the moon. After reporting the find, NASA confirmed[5] that there are still 124 planes which were lost during the Second World War, and they believe this may be one of them.

(1) رواد الفضاء
(2) نيزك
(3) رقمي
(4) يقرب الصورة
(5) يؤكد على

Listening Text




Newsreader:

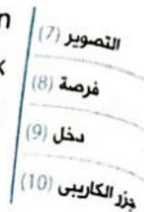
Good morning. Here are today's headlines on Monday, 5th October.

A fire started in a supermarket late last night and 20 fire fighters are still at the scene. Investigators say it is unclear[1] how the fire began, but the police think it had been started deliberately[2]. The police and fire services[3] had been called earlier in the evening, but left when everything appeared to be OK. At the time they believed it was yet another false alarm[4]. At midnight, a woman phoned again and said she had seen flames[5] at the back of the supermarket, and by the time the fire fighters arrived, the fire had moved to the front of the shop.

A Lebanese[6] photographer has won a top photography competition for his photo of a desert sunrise. Twenty-two-year-old, Marwan Hamed told journalists that he had used an old digital camera to take his photo and was surprised that it

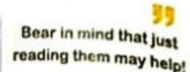
(1) غير واضح
(2) عمداً
(3) خدمات الإطفاء
(4) إنذار مزيف
(5) لهب
(6) لبناني

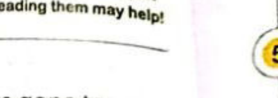
had looked so good. Marwan entered his first photo competition when he was only eight years old after he had been given a book about photography[7] by his uncle. He didn't win that time, but has continued to take photos and is now working as a professional photographer for a news channel.



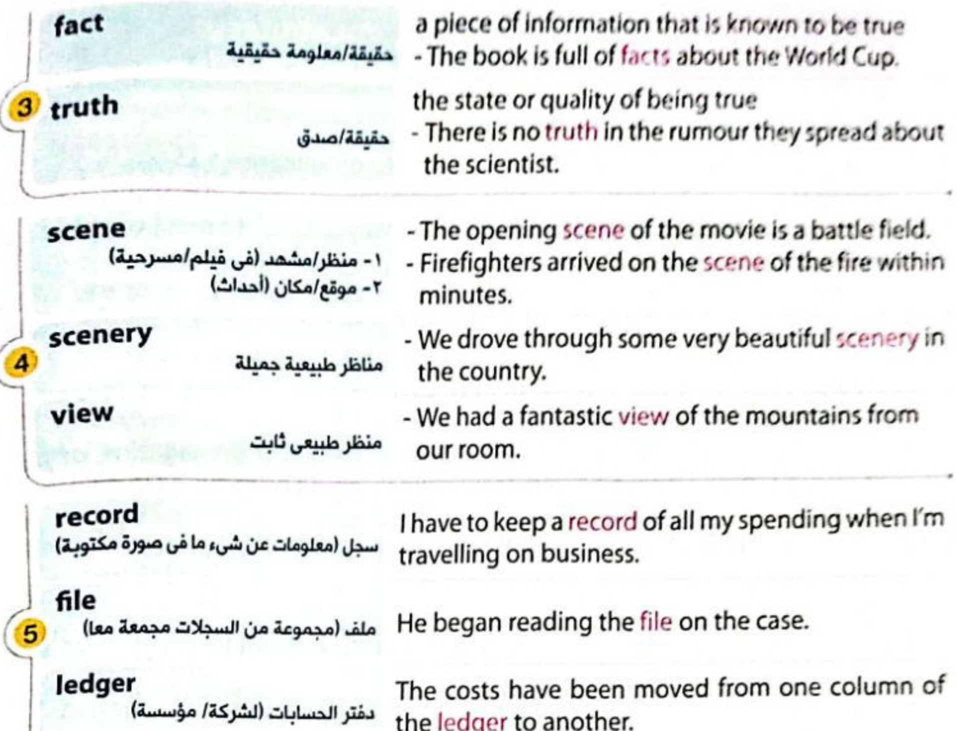
Antigua and Barbuda is the latest country to offer digital nomads, people who can work anywhere in the world on their computer, the opportunity[8] to live and work there for two years. Until Covid-19 arrived, the country's main income[9] had been tourism, but now with people having fewer holidays, the government has offered digital nomads a fantastic opportunity to enjoy life on their Caribbean islands[10]. Our Caribbean correspondent, Melody Smith, told us if you want a relaxing place to work, then this is perfect.







investigator محقق/مفتش (شخص وظيفته اكتشاف الحقائق في الأحداث وخاصة الجرائم والحوادث)	A team of special investigators have gone to the scene of the explosion.
inspector مفتش/مراقب (شخص وظيفته التأكد من أن الناس يؤدون أعمالهم بطريقة صحيحة)	Last year, school inspectors reported that 20% of young pupils were unable to read or write.
conductor مفتش القطار أو الأتوبيس (كمسارى)	As the train pulled out, the senior conductor came around.
admit يعترف/يقر (والمصدر هنا admission)	يستخدم الفعل (admit) بمعنيين مختلفين ويختلف المصدر المشتق منه في كلٍ منهما: - She admitted (that) she had made a mistake. - In court, he admitted (to) lying about the accident.
admit يسمح بدخول جامعة أو مدرسة أو مبنى (والمصدر هنا admission/admittance)	You will not be admitted to the theatre after the performance has started.



fact حقيقة/معلومة حقيقية	a piece of information that is known to be true - The book is full of facts about the World Cup.
3 **truth** حقيقة/صدق	the state or quality of being true - There is no truth in the rumour they spread about the scientist.
scene ١- منظر/مشهد (في فيلم/مسرحية) ٢- موقع/مكان (أحداث)	- The opening scene of the movie is a battle field. - Firefighters arrived on the scene of the fire within minutes.
4 **scenery** مناظر طبيعية جميلة	- We drove through some very beautiful scenery in the country.
view منظر طبيعي ثابت	- We had a fantastic view of the mountains from our room.
record سجل (معلومات عن شيء ما في صورة مكتوبة)	I have to keep a record of all my spending when I'm travelling on business.
5 **file** ملف (مجموعة من السجلات مجمعة معا)	He began reading the file on the case.
ledger دفتر الحسابات (لشركة/ مؤسسة)	The costs have been moved from one column of the ledger to another.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 After confessing his guilt, the criminal agreed to cooperate with the police ....
a) investigators b) conductors c) employers d) leaders

2 Leaving the company is a clear .... that he was responsible for the great losses.
a) admittance b) admission c) affection d) invention

3 My father always speaks the .... whether people like it or not.
a) lie b) fact c) truth d) truce

4 A .... is a book in which a business keeps the documents of how much money it receives and spends.
a) record b) ledger c) file d) folder

5 The movie opens with a .... in a New York skyscraper.
a) view b) scenery c) landscape d) scene



Practice — Practise more — Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Around 2001, the Google search .... rose to prominence بروز/شهرة.
a) engine b) power c) motor d) page

2 The ceremony of the Olympic Games opening was .... to most countries of the world.
a) consumed b) downloaded c) broadcast d) reported

3 The press .... with the President was published in all national newspapers.
a) meeting b) interview c) seminar d) date

4 I've always thought you have the right voice to be a/an ....
a) photographer b) programmer c) editor d) newsreader

5 A/An .... is a person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine, or part of a newspaper or magazine, and decides what should be included in it.
a) editor b) seller c) newsreader d) inventor

6 The Minister told television .... that he was going to resign after the accident.
a) programmers b) reporters c) influencers d) podcasters

7 Journalists were on the .... of the plane crash within minutes to cover it.
a) view b) scenery c) scene d) landform

8 The secretary .... the file to the company's website as soon as she had finished working on it.
a) set b) made c) downloaded d) uploaded

9 The press room was a valuable .... of information for journalists who were covering the tennis championship.
a) result b) source c) reason d) practice

10 The talented player was .... to play for his country's national team at the age of only 18.
a) selected b) replaced c) reformed d) depicted

11 A/An .... is a person employed by a newspaper, a television station, to report on a particular subject or send reports from a foreign country.
a) manager b) agent c) correspondent d) boss

12 I think the school bus driver didn't hit the cat ....; it must have been an accident.
a) hopefully b) excitedly c) inventively d) deliberately

13 Experts advise us that .... of failure should not stop us trying to get success.
a) pleasure b) fear c) treasure d) delight

14 The camera .... in on the old man's face hearing the bad news.
a) zoomed b) boomed c) bombed d) faded

15 Social media have become an important advertising tool in the present .... world.
a) false b) facial c) digital d) trivial

16 The new machines were not yet .... enough to give useful results.
a) valued b) complex c) hazardous d) accurate

17 Winning the Olympic medal was like a dream that .... true for the karate player.
a) came b) went c) fell d) grew

18 You mustn't trust the rumours إشاعات of our country's enemies. The antonym of the verb "trust" is ....
a) recognise b) realise c) depend d) doubt

19 Police officers are looking .... the disappearance of two children kidnapped yesterday.
a) for b) of c) into d) up

20 The Head of the Organisation put the young scientist in .... of the research team.
a) change b) charge c) account d) balance

21 The .... newsletter النشرة الإخبارية at the British Council is published once every two months.
a) inform b) informed c) informative d) information

22 All young people have turned .... social media for news and information.
a) with b) on c) at d) to

23 Big stores have to .... for customers in the Christmas season.
a) compete b) competed c) competition d) competitive

24 The President's speech will be broadcast on all channels at 6.00 this evening. The verb "broadcast" is similar in meaning to ".................." .
a) transmit b) download c) consume d) watch

25 After the boxer won the championship, he turned professional. The word "professional" can be the opposite of ".................." .
a) academic b) smart c) amateur d) experimented

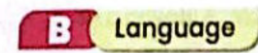
26 My uncle is a/an .... He collects and reports the news for newspapers, radio, and TV. (Longman)
a) reporter b) interviewer c) photographer d) newsreader

27 A/An .... is a person who makes sure the information is true. (Longman)
a) newsreader b) interviewer c) newspaper seller d) fact checker

28 It is important to know the .... of each piece of news to make sure it is true. (Longman)
a) reason b) result c) source d) end

29 When the police arrived at the .... of the crime, the criminal was about to run away. (Longman)
a) vision b) view c) sight d) scene

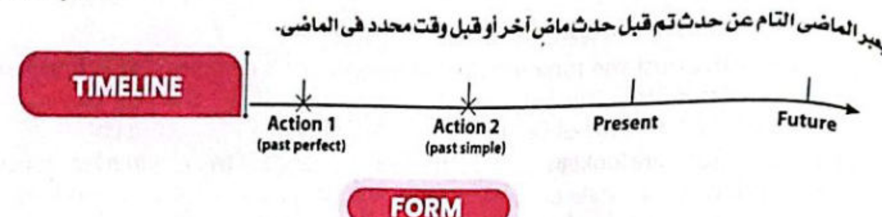
30 The .... of news stories are usually about the most important events. (Longman)
a) headlines b) headphones c) headmasters d) headquarters



Past perfect الماضى التام

For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.

يعبر الماضى التام عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر أو قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى.



FORM

Affirmative الإثبات	• Subj.+ had + P.P. • By yesterday, I had read 5 stories.
Negative النفى	• Subj.+ hadn't + P.P. • I hadn't seen him before he talked to me.
Interrogative الاستفهام	• Had + subj. + P.P.? Had Osama bought the tickets by yesterday? • Wh-question + had+ subj. + P.P.? What had she done before going out?
Passive المبنى للمجهول	• Obj.+ had been + P.P. • By the time I reached the cinema, all the tickets had been sold.

USAGE الاستخدام

1. For an action which happened before another past action or before a stated time in the past.
   يعبر عن حدث تم قبل حدث ماضٍ آخر أو قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى: الحدث الأول تام والثانى بسيط.
   - I showed my mother what I had bought from the market.
   - He admitted that he had lied to his father more than once.

2. For an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past. يستخدم لحدث انتهى فى الماضى ونتيجته كانت واضحة فى الماضى.
   - There was glass on the floor as Osama had broken the window.

3. For duration before something in the past.
   يستخدم لحدث كان مستمرًا لفترة فى الماضى قبل حدث آخر مع الأفعال التى لا تستخدم فى الاستمرار.
   - I had had the bike for ten years before I bought a car.
   - By the time I got used to life in Cairo, I had been there for five years.

The past perfect is used with the following time expressions:

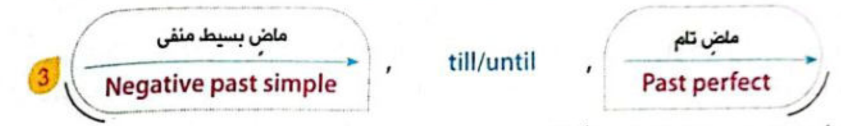
Key Words before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as

1.


- After I had looked both ways, I crossed the street.

2.


- Before I crossed the street, I had looked both ways.

3.


- مع ملاحظة أن الماضى البسيط المنفى له عدة أشكال:

- didn't + inf.	ماضٍ بسيط منفى مبنى للمعلوم
- wasn't - weren't + P.P.	ماضٍ بسيط منفى فى المبنى للمجهول
- couldn't + inf.	عدم استطاعة فى الماضى
- refused - denied -	كلمة تعطى معنى النفى

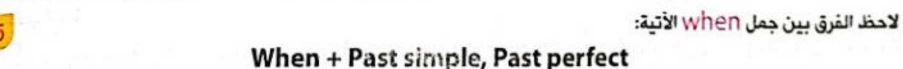
- My son didn't buy the phone until he had taken the money.

4.


إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم v.ing

- After finishing his work, he helped me. = After he had finished, ...
- Before helping me, he had finished his work. = Before he helped, ...

5. لاحظ الفرق بين جمل when الآتية:



When + Past simple, Past perfect

- When I reached the station, the train had left. غادر القطار قبل وصولى (لم ألحق به)

When + Past simple, Past simple

- When I reached the station, the train left. غادر القطار عند وصولى (ربما لحقته أو رأيته)

When + Past perfect, Past simple

- When I had reached the station, the train left. وصلت المحطة قبل مغادرة القطار (لحقته)

إذا لم يكن هناك فارق زمني بين الأحداث



- When he entered the flat, he took off his shoes.
- After he paid the driver, he got out of the taxi.
- Before he left, he asked me to close the door behind him.
- As soon as he read the story, he gave it to me.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I called you at 8:00, but you .... out.
a) have just gone b) had just gone
c) just gone d) just went

2 Tamer .... all his exams before he travelled abroad.
a) had passed b) passes
c) has passed d) had been passed

3 He felt that he .... it wrong.
a) has made b) made
c) was made d) had made

4 The weather was worse last year than I .... it to be.
a) expect b) have expected
c) had expected d) was expected

5 I .... my homework when my mother came.
a) already did b) had already done
c) have already done d) already do


لاحظ

١) إذا وجد أكثر من حدثين في الجملة فيجب تحديد الحدث الأول ليوضع ماضيًا تامًا والأحداث الباقية إما ماضٍ بسيط وإما مستمر حسب المعنى.

- As soon as I saw Ahmed, I realised that I had met him before.

- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد as soon as مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (المقابلة)

- After he got to the station, he realised that he had left the train ticket at home.

- لم نضع الماضي التام بعد After مباشرة لأنه ليس الحدث الأول وأن الحدث الأول هو (ترك التذكرة في المنزل)

- I was shopping with my friend when I realised that I had lost my wallet.

- الحدث الأول فقدان المحفظة.

٢) يستخدم الماضي التام مع أفعال مثل think/say/know/realise عند استخدامها في الماضي للحديث عن اعتقادات ومحادثات ومعرفة وإدراك لشيء سابق

- I thought I had finished my homework, but I realised I had forgotten the last page.
- I knew where I had put the keys.

٣) يجب ملاحظة المبنى للمجهول جيدا إذا بدأت الجملة بالمفعول وهنا نستخدم had been + P.P. للماضي التام و was/were + P.P. للماضي البسيط

- After the food had been cooked, it was eaten.
- Before the e-mail was sent, it had been written.

٤) يمكن استخدام الاسم بعد after/before/until وليس جملة كاملة.

- My friends visited me after lunch yesterday.
- Before the war, the two countries had threatened each other.

٥) يمكن أن يستخدم الماضي التام للإشارة إلى حدث تم في وقت محدد على عكس المضارع التام وفي هذه الحالة يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط بدلًا منه.

- He had been to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.
- He went to Aswan once in 2000 before he moved there in 2015.

- ولكن إذا أشار الماضي التام إلى خبرة وليس حدثًا محددًا لا يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط.

- He had never seen snow until he moved to Europe. NOT ~~He never saw snow.~~

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I couldn't buy the new phone until the money ....
a) had been saved b) saved
c) had saved d) has been saved

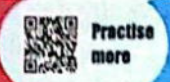
2 When I got to the office, I realised that I .... the key at home.
a) forget b) had been forgotten
c) forgot d) had forgotten

3 I couldn't imagine what .... to her.
a) had been happened b) has been happened
c) had happened d) has been happening

4 The criminal .... until he had tried to leave the country.
a) arrested b) wasn't arrested
c) didn't arrest d) had been arrested

5 I .... that kind of fig until I visited Sinai in 2015.
a) had never eaten b) never ate
c) wasn't eating d) have never eaten





Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I arrived at the bus station late yesterday. Unfortunately, when I got there, my bus ....

a) left b) has left c) leaves d) had left

2 It was dark and cold. At one moment, he thought that he .... his way.

a) lost b) will lose c) had lost d) was lost

3 When I counted my change, I realised they .... me 100 pounds.

a) gave b) had given c) have given d) had been given

4 .... I left the office, I had written 5 reports.

a) By the time b) After c) As soon as d) Having

5 We .... the station before the train arrived.

a) had reached b) were reaching c) would reach d) reach

6 As soon as she .... out of bed, she got dressed.

a) would get b) gets c) has got d) had got

7 He .... a camel before he came to Siwa.

a) has never seen b) did never see c) had never seen d) will never see

8 I wasn't hungry at four because I .... a big meal at one.

a) was having b) had had c) have had d) have

9 It was the first time she .... a prize.

a) had won b) has won c) is won d) would win

10 He continued his journey .... he had changed the tyre.

a) before b) ago c) since d) after

11 When I .... enough money, I bought the smartphone.

a) had saved b) was saving c) have saved d) would save

12 After .... my work, I went back home with my friends.

a) finish b) finished c) finishing d) had finished

13 I knew that she .... Luxor before, so I asked her to recommend a good hotel.

a) visited b) had visited c) has been visiting d) has visited

14 After the house ...., we furnished it.

a) is painted b) has painted
c) had painted d) had been painted

15 By the time Mariam was 26, she .... married for three years.

a) has b) had been
c) has been d) was being

16 I was doing my homework when I realised that I .... to study 2 pages.

a) had forgotten b) forgot
c) was forgetting d) have forgotten

17 She said that the robber .... her when she was opening the door to her apartment.

a) had been attacked b) was attacking
c) has attacked d) attacked

18 They waited patiently until the headmaster .... speaking.

a) was finishing b) has finished
c) finished d) finishes

19 At first, I was very nervous, but after a while I .... to feel more confident.

a) began b) begin
c) have begun d) had begun

20 He .... the Nobel Prize until he had written 100 novels.

a) awarded b) hadn't awarded
c) didn't award d) wasn't awarded

21 My father read the article which .... about cloning.

a) had written b) written
c) had been written d) has been written

22 .... she cooked the food, she washed the dishes.

a) Until b) After
c) No sooner d) By

23 Ali looked both ways, and then he crossed the street. This means ....

a) Ali crossed the street after looking both ways.
b) When Ali had crossed the street, he looked both ways.
c) After crossing the street, Ali had looked both ways.
d) Before looking both ways, Ali crossed the street.

24 Which one of the following is correctly structured?

a) As soon as Samy phoned me, I visited him.

b) As soon as Samy had phoned me, I had visited him.

c) As soon as Samy phoned me, I had visited him.

d) As soon as Samy phones me, I visited him.

25 Which one of the following isn't correctly structured?

a) When I reached home, my mother had cooked the dinner.

b) When I had reached home, my mother cooked the dinner.

c) When I reached home, my mother finished cooking the dinner.

d) When I had reached home, my mother had cooked the dinner.

26 Finally, I finished the task you .... me to carry out. (Longman)

a) had asked b) had been asked

c) ask d) will ask

27 He refused to lend me his camera until I .... to return it on the same day. (Longman)

a) had been promised b) had promised

c) promise d) have promised

28 When I went to the service centre, I was pleased to find that my car .... well. (Longman)

a) has been repairing

b) was repairing

c) had repaired

d) had been repaired

29 After the plane .... off, I felt sad to leave my country. (Longman)

a) had taken b) had been taken

c) is taking d) has taken

30 Which of the following is structurally incorrect? (Longman)

a) When we returned home, our mother had already prepared lunch.

b) By the time I visited Hatim, I had bought him a nice present.

c) I met my friends as soon as I went to the club.

d) I didn't return home until I have finished my work.

Test yourself



Part (1) (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 As an amateur ...., he compiled remarkable shots of forests and their by-products.

a) reporter b) correspondent c) photographer d) writer

2 The lazy student was ashamed to .... his mistakes to the teachers.

a) admit b) deny c) deploy d) apply

3 The research team have been .... data from various sources for months.

a) scattering b) spreading c) telling d) collecting

4 The earthquake was the worst natural .... to hit the city for over 50 years.

a) disaster b) achievement c) acceptance d) trend

5 The marketing leaflets were sent .... to all of the email addresses on the list.

a) in b) out c) away d) off

6 'Capitano' is a TV programme where football scouts are looking for new .... all over Egypt.

a) presents b) talents c) coaches d) managers

7 The announcement of the new Capital was made in an international .... conference.

a) scientific b) code c) dress d) press

8 We often cook traditional Egyptian meals for our guests. The synonym of the word "traditional" is "..................".

a) conventional b) modern c) relied d) designed

9 The President addressed the nation in a television .... after the elections.

a) publication b) spread c) broadcast d) meeting

10 Mrs Mary is a/an .... for a small publishing fashion magazine in Oxford.

a) editor b) discoverer c) programmer d) actor

11 The famous TV announcer has .... celebrities مشاهير and political leaders on her programme for over 25 years.

a) reviewed b) interviewed c) replied d) recovered

12 In the last few years, there has been a great investment in the new .... of energy which don't cause pollution.

a) causes b) results c) consumptions d) sources

13 Some local farmers still use .... farming methods which have been used for hundreds of years.

a) developed b) modern c) traditional d) applied

14 There are plans to send .... and some ordinary people to Mars by 2030.
a) collectors b) sailors c) astrologers d) astronauts

15 You can enjoy an excellent .... of leisure and sporting facilities in Sharm El-Sheikh.
a) range b) queue c) row d) line

Language

16 The woman .... for a taxi before her friends arrived.
a) has phoned b) phones c) phoning d) had phoned

17 After he had written the e-mail, he .... it.
a) has sent b) sent c) was sending d) was sent

18 He said that they .... each other for many years.
a) have known b) had been knowing
c) had known d) have been knowing

19 As soon as the bell ...., the students left the classroom.
a) rang b) didn't ring c) rings d) was ringing

20 I applied for a job in a nearby bank .... I graduated.
a) already b) while c) just d) as soon as

21 The facts .... by the reporter before he wrote his report.
a) had checked b) had been checked c) are checked d) are checking

22 I saw her a few days before she ....
a) immigrates b) had immigrated c) immigrating d) immigrated

23 By the time we got to the stadium, our team .... two goals.
a) has scored b) were scoring c) had scored d) will score

24 I .... a radio programme about William Golding last week.
a) heard b) was hearing c) had heard d) am hearing

25 After .... school, Mahmoud worked in a restaurant for a year.
a) had left b) leaving c) being left d) leave

26 Once the journalists had asked all their questions, the politician ....
a) was left b) was leaving c) left d) had left

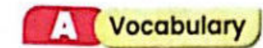
27 Ahmed .... for the publishing company before he quit and went with its rivals.
a) was working b) is working
c) has worked d) had worked

28 I didn't go with you to the cinema because I .... that film.
a) already see b) have already seen c) had already seen d) didn't see

29 The student decided not to make that mistake again after .... by the teacher.
a) being punished b) punishing c) had punished d) punished

30 When they .... the theatre, the play had already started.
a) reach b) reached c) had reached d) will reach





Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

adults (n)	كبار/بالغين	lucky (adj)	محظوظ
agree (v) (d)	يوافق	pronunciation (n)	نطق
brilliant (adj)	متميز/رائع	speed (n)	سرعة
coastal (adj)	ساحلي	stick (v)	يعلق/يلتصق
compare (v) (d)	يقارن	teenage (n)	مرحلة المراهقة
creation (n)	خلق/إنتاج	teenager (n)	مراهق
education (n)	التعليم	tone (n)*	نغمة/نبرة صوت
emergency (n)	طوارئ	uninjured (adj)	غير مصاب
grateful (adj)	شاكر/ممتن	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
involved (adj)	متورط	wave (n)	موجة
journalism (n)	صحافة	website (n)	موقع إنترنت
keen (adj)	حريص/متحمس	witness (n) (v) (ed)	شاهد/يشهد
launch (v) (ed)	يطلق		

The answering machine asked to leave a message after the tone. 

Workbook Vocabulary

artist (n)	فنان	necropolis (n)	مقبرة كبيرة
barrier (n)	حاجز	objects (n)	أشياء
bury (v) (y ied)	يدفن	order (n)	ترتيب
cave (n)	كهف	overhead (adj)	هوائي
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	permission (n)	إذن/تصريح
consequences (n)	نتائج/عواقب	recent (adj)	حديث
council (n)	مجلس/هيئة/معهد	remains (n)	بقايا/آثار
erect (v) (ed)	يبنى/يشيد	remarkable (adj)	رائع
exploration (n)	استكشاف	route (n)	طريق
historian (n)	مؤرخ	sculpture (n)	تمثال/نحت
incident (n)	حادث	spokesperson (n)	متحدث رسمى
location (n)	موقع	successful (adj)	ناجح
monument (n)	أثر	whale (n)	حوت

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The police found a plastic bag containing some .... of a dead man whose body was found two weeks ago.
   a) remains b) heritage c) specks d) cells
2. The key .... for the case was offered police protection after he received death threats.
   a) inspector b) criminal c) witness d) author
3. According to the rules, no child is allowed out of the school during the day, unless accompanied by a/an ....
   a) friend b) adult c) driver d) advocate
4. A new Egyptian scientific satellite was .... from a Chinese base in 2023.
   a) attacked b) competed c) consumed d) launched
5. The wind and a tidal .... sank the ship and killed 10 people who were in it.
   a) wave b) drought
   c) currant d) shot
6. A good university .... is often the best way to get a good job.
   a) treatment b) surgery
   c) education d) punishment
7. Archaeologists have recently uncovered a .... of an ancient Egyptian king in Saqqara where they found his mummy.
   a) palace b) necropolis
   c) valley d) cave
8. We were .... to our neighbours for letting us use their garden for the party.
   a) regretful b) useful
   c) hateful d) grateful
9. My book got wet in the rain and all the pages have .... together.
   a) spread b) stuck
   c) wasted d) affected
10. Scientists believe that many .... areas are in danger of being flooded because of the changes caused by global warming.
    a) desert b) empty
    c) coastal d) mountain

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

call for help	يطلب/يتصل للمساعدة	give permission	يمنح إذنًا/تصريحًا
cover the important information	يغطى/يتناول المعلومات الهامة	in the hope of	على أمل أن
able to	قادر أن	interested in	مهتم بـ
example of	مثال لـ	keen on	حريص على
happy about	سعيد بـ	spokesperson for	متحدث لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
bury	يدفن	burial	دفن	buried	مدفون
compare*	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن/ نسبى
educate	يعلم	education	التعليم	educational	تعليمى
explore	يستكشف	exploration explorer	استكشاف مستكشف	exploratory	استكشافى
locate	يحدد موقعًا/يقع	location	موقع	located	قائم/موضوع
permit	يسمح	permission	إذن/تصريح	permitted	مسموح
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

- I compared several cars before buying one.
- He's a well-behaved child in comparison with his brother.
- She did a comparative study of classical and modern art.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
barrier	حاجز	obstruction/blockade	assistance opening	مساعدة افتتاح
brilliant	متميز/رائع	outstanding/distinguished	ordinary/common	عادى/شائع
compare	يقارن	contrast	discard	يستبعد
consequences	نتائج/عواقب	results	causes/reasons	أسباب
erect	يبنى/يشيد	build/construct	destroy/demolish	يدمر
keen	حريص/متحمس	eager/enthusiastic	unconcerned/indifferent	غير مهتم
launch	يطلق	initiate/introduce	end/stop	ينهى/يوقف
permission	إذن/تصريح	agreement/license	denial/refusal	إنكار/رفض
remarkable	رائع	extraordinary	familiar ordinary	مألوف عادى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The police have launched an investigation into his activities. The synonym of the verb "launch" is "..................".
a) initiate b) end
c) stop d) explore

2 Because Leila seemed very tired, the teacher .... her permission to go home early.
a) followed b) relied
c) took d) gave

3 Many photographers waited outside the hotel .... the hope of taking some photos for the famous couple.
a) on b) off
c) in d) for

4 Photographs should only be taken with the permission of the person. The noun "permission" is the opposite of ....
a) agreement b) license
c) selection d) refusal

5 My younger sister likes biology, but she's not keen .... physics.
a) up b) on
c) at d) by

6 The former war hero was buried with full military honours. The noun of the verb "bury" is "..................".
a) buries b) buried
c) burial d) briefly

7 The artist's drawings are remarkable for their accuracy. The antonym of the adjective "remarkable" is "..................".
a) extraordinary b) odd
c) ordinary d) delayed

8 The patient managed to .... for help before he fainted as a result of the heart attack.
a) fight b) call
c) refuse d) reply

Reading Text (1)

A teenage world!



A new website has just been launched[1] by teenagers for teenagers.

Our World is the creation[2] of Jake and Amy Hope who wanted a news website that other teenagers would enjoy. 'Adults think teenagers are only interested in music and sport,' explained Amy, 'but that isn't true!'

Our World has news, technology, education[3], music and sport, but what makes it different is that all the reporters are teenagers.

'Teenagers sometimes see the world differently to adults[4],' Jake told us and it seems he's right. 'It's brilliant,' said 13-year-old Henry, 'it's much more interesting than most websites.' His sister agrees, 'I really like the fact that all the reports are by teenagers who are keen[5] on the same things as me.

(1) يطلق
(2) خلق/إنتاج
(3) تعليم
(4) كبار/بالغين
(5) حريص/متحمس

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

Two days ago historian, José Galán and his team discovered the ancient remains[1] of a 15 or 16-year-old girl who had been buried[2] for 3,600 years. José was part of a team of Spanish and Egyptian experts, who had been given permission[3] to explore a necropolis[4] on Luxor's West Bank, in the hope of finding out more about the history of the area. What makes the discovery so amazing is that the teenager had been buried with lots of interesting objects.

The Egyptian government was very happy about the new discovery. The government said it was one of the most remarkable[5] discoveries in recent years. 'We plan to show the objects in a museum very soon for everyone to see,' a spokesperson[6] for the government said.

(1) بقايا/آثار
(2) مدفون
(3) إذن/تصريح
(4) مقبرة كبيرة
(5) رائع
(6) متحدث رسمي

Listening Text (1)





1. Two walkers had a lucky[1] escape last night after a storm hit the small coastal[2] village of Largs in Scotland. Heavy rain started at 5pm and by 6pm strong winds had blown a lot of water onto the footpath on the sea front. Witnesses[3] say that the walkers were halfway along the path when a huge wave[4] knocked them over. Police believe that the walkers were two local women, but no names have been given, and the women have been returned safe and well to their families.

2. Police were called to a house in Beedon yesterday to help a teenager stuck in a bathroom window. Neighbours saw the feet of 13-year-old Leila Tahar sticking[5] out of the window and thought it was a thief. When the police managed to free the teenager, they discovered that Leila lived at the house, but had forgotten her keys! She said, 'The only window open was the bathroom one, but it was a bit small!'

(1) محظوظ
(2) ساحلي
(3) شهود
(4) موجة
(5) عالق

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

Newsreader:

Welcome to the Rotterdam local news. Today we have an amazing story of how a sea animal saved the lives of many adults and children by stopping a train ten metres in the air in the middle of a city. Yes, you heard me correctly. The plastic sculpture[1] of a whale's tail, which had been created twenty years earlier by a local artist, had been erected by the Local Council at the end of an overground railway line. Little did they expect the work of art to save lives. However, last week when, for some unknown[2] reason, the train could not stop at the final station on its route, it crashed through the safety barriers[3]. The sculpture at the end of the railway line was able to catch the runaway train and prevent it from falling into a park below where parents with their children were playing happily.

Luckily, the train had been emptied just moments before, so the only person onboard was the train driver. As he got off the train uninjured[4], he said he was glad that nobody had been hurt and was very grateful[5] to the artist who had created the tail.

So, it just goes to show you; art can save lives!

In other news ...

(1) تمثال
(2) غير معروف
(3) حواجز
(4) غير مصاب
(5) شاكر/ممتن

Video Script

Have you ever thought about what the word 'news' actually means? Well, it means new information, usually about something that has happened recently and it's constantly changing as new information is discovered. We may think of the news as being about bad things, such as crime[1] or national disasters[2], but the news can be about good things such as sport or something fun. The news is responsible[3] for telling us about the world we live in, be it good or bad.

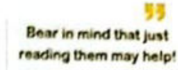
Originally[4] people got the news by word of mouth – travellers going through towns passed on the news they heard to people they met. When the printing press[5] was invented, it was easier and cheaper to produce newspapers and the news spread wider and faster than ever before. For centuries, most people got their news from newspapers, but with access to the internet, sales of newspapers have fallen by half. This doesn't mean that people don't read the news though.

Many people still use newspapers, but they read them online. Social media sites have also become very popular, and people find news on these sites which post regularly[6]. But can we trust this news?

(1) جريمة
(2) كوارث
(3) مسئول
(4) أساسًا/أصلًا
(5) الطباعة/المطبعة
(6) بانتظام







Notes on Vocabulary

1	**permission (uncountable)**	(تصريح) موافقة/رضا	Osama drove his father's car without his permission.
	permit (countable)	تصريح رسمى مكتوب	People from other countries require work permits.
2	**recent**	حديث (مصنوع/تام منذ فترة قصيرة)	All applicants should send a recent photo with their CV.
	modern	حديث/متطور (نتيجة لاستخدام طرق أو وسائل حديثة)	Modern technology has had a huge impact on all of us.
3	**location**	موقع/مكان (للتصوير مثلًا)	- We have not found a suitable location for the new offices. - Most of the movie was shot on location in Africa.
	position	موضع (مثل الوقوف أو الجلوس مثلًا) مكانة/ وظيفة/مركز فى الملعب	- First, get yourself into a comfortable position. - I'm not sure what I would do if I were in your position.
4	**exploration**	استكشاف (مكان)	Scientists from all over the world have plans for space exploration.
	discovery	اكتشاف (شىء لم يكن معروفًا من قبل)	The discovery of oil has shared in the development of industry.
	invention	اختراع (شىء لم يكن موجودًا من قبل)	No other invention had a greater effect on people's life than the internet.
5	**proud of**	فخور بـ (يتبعها اسم/ضمير أو (verb + ing))	The company is proud of its achievements.
	proud to	فخور أن (يتبعها الفعل فى صيغة المصدر)	I'm proud to say we made the right decision.
	proud that	فخور أن (يتبعها جملة كاملة)	We're proud that they chose our school for the competition.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 One by one the old buildings in the city have been demolished and replaced with .... tower blocks.

a) old
b) recent
c) modern
d) vague

2 I'm very proud .... take part in this great project.

a) of
b) to
c) in
d) that

3 The .... of the computer has revolutionised the business world.

a) discovery
b) invitation
c) exploration
d) invention

4 The exact .... of the hotel where the royal couple is staying is a secret.

a) site
b) location
c) position
d) sight

5 Parents have to give their .... for their children to go on school trips.

a) permission
b) grade
c) licence
d) degree



Practice — Vocabulary General Exercises

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Historians have not always .... about the exact date of Ramses II's coronation تتويج.

a) accepted b) agreed c) expected d) explored

2 Yehia El-Fakhrany gave a/an .... performance as King Lear. All the audience liked him.

a) brilliant b) awful c) amazed d) terrible

3 This school is devoted خصصت to the .... of children with reading difficulties.

a) practising b) prohibition c) education d) obligation

4 "Teen Stuff" magazine is very popular among .... as it deals with their interests.

a) adults b) infants c) teenagers d) directors

5 In case of ...., you can call 122 for police, the fire department or an ambulance.

a) evaluation b) emergency c) accuracy d) presentation

6 In Paris, I met a group of young ....: poets, film-makers and painters.

a) fans b) explorers c) enemies d) artists

7 Electric cables are usually .... beneath the streets ground.

a) excavated b) buried c) drilled d) deployed

8 Many people believe that poverty is one of the direct .... of overpopulation.

a) purposes b) causes c) consequences d) reasons

9 The hotel is in a central .... near the facilities at the city centre.

a) post b) location c) destination d) posture

10 Ancient .... are protected by law as part of the human civilisation.

a) regulations b) mountains c) monuments d) points

11 You must get .... from the owners before viewing the flat offered for rent.

a) position b) treaty c) contract d) permission

12 The new .... revealed the artist's skilful hand.

a) intention b) invention c) sculpture d) scene

13 We found that the motorway is the most direct .... outside the city.

a) street b) route c) road d) avenue

14 The driver slowed down as he approached the police .... at which licences were checked.

a) officer b) station c) state d) barrier

15 Winning the cup was a .... achievement for our national team.
a) horrible b) strict c) remarkable d) fearful

16 My son is .... to learn more about art history, that's why he will study it at university.
a) profound b) keen c) brave d) refrained

17 The engineers found an ancient .... while digging for oil.
a) necropolis b) post c) scene d) trial

18 A new version of the game for computers will be .... in February.
a) populated b) printed c) consumed d) launched

19 The teacher .... me permission to go home early as I was ill.
a) took b) got c) gave d) obtained

20 The lady taught her children to .... for help if there was an emergency.
a) offer b) ring c) yell d) call

21 If you are interested .... applying for the job, you should send a complete CV.
a) in b) of c) at d) about

22 I called early in the .... of catching her before she went to work.
a) species b) call c) hope d) shout

23 Using the Internet is an easy way to make a .... between prices.
a) compare b) comparison c) compared d) comparative

24 It is believed that no one can be .... at everything.
a) succeed b) success c) successful d) successfully

25 The church was erected in 1582. The verb "erect" is similar in meaning to the verb "..................".
a) demolish b) destroy c) set d) construct

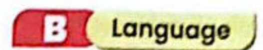
26 My family are all very keen on sports. The synonym of the adjective "keen" is "..................".
a) indifferent b) eager c) strange d) accurate

27 People living in the village are not happy .... the decision to build the factory near their land.
a) in b) about c) of d) up

28 A spokesperson .... the oil company met the reporters to announce the new projects.
a) for b) with c) off d) on

29 The factory launched a new line of jeans. The word "launch" can be the opposite of the word "..................".
a) end b) continue c) start d) release

30 Unfortunately, I have been .... in a very busy street in one of Cairo's districts. (Longman)
a) stored b) stuck c) started d) stood



Past perfect (Extra points)

1 No sooner / Hardly / Scarcely + had + subject + P.P / did + subject + inf. (لم يكد ...... حتى ...... الماضي التام أو البسيط في شكل سؤال) + than / when / when + Past simple ماضٍ بسيط

- No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police.
- No sooner did Marwa find the money than she reported the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات في أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة، وإذا لم تأتِ في أول الكلام يكون الآتي:



- Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.

2 On + v.ing = when + clause جملة

- On looking at the question, I knew the answer. = When I looked ....., I knew .....

3 By + فترة في الماضي + ماضٍ تام

- By yesterday بحلول أمس, he had applied for the job.

4 Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect

- Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit. = After I had booked .....

5 - It was only when إنه فقط عندما / - It wasn't until لم يكن حتى + ماضٍ تام + that + ماضٍ بسيط

- It was only when he had finished his work that he helped me.
- It wasn't until he had finished his work that he helped me.

Past perfect (other uses) استخدامات أخرى للماضي التام

في فعل شرط الحالة الثالثة من if

- If our team had played well yesterday, they would have won the cup.

بعد wish/If only للتعبير عن الندم أو اللوم في الماضي.

- I wish I had studied harder last year.

بعد I'd rather في حالة وجود فاعل بعدها لتعبر عن اللوم والندم في الماضي.

- I'd rather you hadn't done that = I wish you hadn't done that.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. No sooner had Mona cooked the food than she .... a shower.
   a) will have b) had
   c) had had d) has
2. Hardly .... the phone down when it started ringing again.
   a) have I put b) will I have put
   c) did I to have put d) had I put
3. By yesterday, she .... to quit her job.
   a) decided b) has decided
   c) had decided d) was decided
4. On .... tired, he went back home.
   a) feeling b) had felt
   c) felt d) being felt
5. It wasn't until last week that he .... the money he had borrowed.
   a) had returned b) returned
   c) has returned d) will return



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. As soon as I .... a story, I started the next one.
   a) 'd finished b) finish
   c) have finished d) 'd been finished
2. He .... the film until he had booked the ticket.
   a) had seen b) wasn't seen
   c) hadn't seen d) couldn't see
3. He .... his work before you came.
   a) had been finishing b) finishes
   c) has finished d) had finished
4. .... typed the report, the secretary handed it to the manager.
   a) Having b) While c) When d) After
5. No sooner .... he stepped on my foot than he apologised to me.
   a) did b) had c) has d) was
6. .... in a big city before you moved to Alexandria?
   a) Have you worked b) Were you working
   c) Had you worked d) Would you work
7. My cousin .... to a big city before he visited Cairo.
   a) wasn't been b) has never been
   c) won't be d) had never been
8. We weren't allowed to take the plane because we .... the tickets.
   a) forget b) had forgotten
   c) have forgotten d) forgetting
9. Hardly had he found a good job .... he told his father.
   a) than b) then c) when d) what
10. Ramy was hungry because he .... anything all day.
    a) hasn't eaten b) wasn't eaten c) never eats d) hadn't eaten
11. After .... in the company for ten years, he left it.
    a) works b) worked c) had worked d) working
12. The police had solved the problem before many people .... the protest.
    a) joined b) had joined c) joining d) have joined

13 They .... all the doors before they left.
a) have locked
b) will lock
c) had been locking
d) locked

14 I didn't want to have lunch because I .... with my friends at a restaurant.
a) have eaten
b) had eaten
c) was eating
d) hadn't eaten

15 The children weren't allowed to watch TV because they .... their homework.
a) had done
b) haven't done
c) must have done
d) hadn't done

16 It was only when he .... the instructions that he knew how to operate the machine.
a) was reading
b) had read
c) has read
d) reads

17 When we got the bill, Mohamed .... on paying.
a) has insisted
b) had insisted
c) insisted
d) insists

18 After the parcel ...., I received it.
a) has arrived
b) arrives
c) had been arrived
d) had arrived

19 .... had he finished the report when he handed it to the boss.
a) No sooner
b) Scarcely
c) After
d) It was only when

20 .... we had booked the tickets that we took the train to Aswan.
a) No sooner
b) Hardly
c) By the time
d) It was only when

21 .... the money, she bought the kitchen machine.
a) Having saved
b) Having been saved
c) After had saved
d) No sooner had she saved

22 .... my friend, I welcomed him.
a) By the time I met
b) On meeting
c) Having been met
d) Had I met

23 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) The ancient Egyptians used hieroglyphs to write on the walls.
b) The ancient Egyptians had used hieroglyphs to write on the walls.
c) The ancient Egyptians had built the pyramids.
d) The ancient Egyptians believed in life after they had died.

24 Hardly had he made the mistake when he was dismissed. This means ".................." .
a) He was dismissed at first, then he made the mistake.
b) He didn't make the mistake, but he was dismissed.
c) He was dismissed as soon as he made the mistake.
d) He was dismissed before making the mistake.

25 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect.
a) By the time I came back from my trip, a lot of things had changed.
b) By the time I come back from my trip, a lot of things will have changed.
c) By the time I had come back from my trip, a lot of things changed.
d) By the time I have come back from my trip, a lot of things will have changed.

26 No sooner had I arrived at the office than I .... an email to the exporting company. (Longman)
a) was sending
b) have sent
c) sent
d) had sent

27 I had hardly returned home .... my close friends for lunch. (Longman)
a) than I met
b) when I had met
c) when I met
d) when I was meeting

28 ...., the factory became ready to produce high-quality cotton clothes. (Longman)
a) Having constructed
b) After constructing
c) Before constructing
d) Having been constructed

29 Which of the following is structurally correct? (Longman)
a) Having decorated, the house became quite ready for the wedding party.
b) When I reached the office, I realised that I had left my phone at home.
c) Did you understand the lesson that had explained again?
d) Before I go home, I had bought the things I need.

30 Which of the following doesn't give the same meaning of this sentence:
Having heard about the bad accident, I contacted my friend. (Longman)
a) After I had heard about the accident, I contacted my friend.
b) I didn't contact my friend until I had heard about the accident.
c) I had contacted my friend before I heard about the accident.
d) As soon as I heard about the accident, I contacted my friend.

Test yourself



Part (2) (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 Unfortunately, the young couple had a difference of opinion about their child's .... and their new schools.
a) defect b) riches c) health d) education

2 The mother's quick thinking in the health .... saved the baby's life.
a) facility b) test c) emergency d) talent

3 The desert forms a natural .... between many countries in Africa.
a) barrier b) limit c) building d) search

4 The National Circus is .... a big tent for the summer shows next month.
a) demolishing b) erecting c) detecting d) evading

5 The Ministry of Sport .... permission for the rally to take place in March.
a) followed b) took c) gave d) asked

6 What were the economic consequences of the war? The antonym of the noun "consequence" is "..................".
a) result b) cause c) barrier d) research

7 Mohamed was very .... to pass the test because he hadn't studied very well.
a) obvious b) strange c) keen d) lucky

8 I think that starting your own project is a .... idea that will bring you success.
a) brilliant b) interested c) minor d) mean

9 The violent storm caused .... damage to farm buildings, and they would take a lot of time to be repaired.
a) simple b) serious c) light d) dark

10 This dictionary can serve as a guide to English .... as well as meaning.
a) punctuation b) connection c) pronunciation d) communication

11 You shouldn't use that rude .... of voice with old people.
a) ton b) note c) syllable d) tone

12 A .... is a large natural hole in the side of a cliff, hill or under the ground.
a) tunnel b) gap c) hut d) cave

13 Medical science has made amazing progress in .... years.
a) old b) ancient c) recent d) modern

14 You can .... the program by double-clicking on the icon.
a) finish b) launch c) inhibit d) repair

15 The movie is set in the 19th .... during the reign of Queen Victoria.
a) decade b) calendar c) millennium d) century

Language

16 I saw that most people .... the party when I went there. I didn't see them.
a) leave b) left c) have already left d) had already left

17 We couldn't get a table because we .... one in advance.
a) had booked b) haven't booked c) had not booked d) weren't booked

18 When I arrived at the employment agency, twenty other people .... before me.
a) had arrived b) were arrived
c) were arriving d) had been arrived

19 It would have been better if you .... her the truth.
a) told b) had told c) are telling d) tell

20 I asked Ali about Luxor because he .... there.
a) has already been b) had already been
c) is d) would be

21 The criminal changed his name after he .... his hometown.
a) left b) had been leaving c) was leaving d) leaves

22 Hany was late for the meeting and was angry we .... without him.
a) were starting b) starting c) had started d) have started

23 The garden was dirty as people .... rubbish everywhere.
a) were leaving b) have left c) were left d) had left

24 Rameses II .... over ancient Egypt for more than fifty years.
a) was ruling b) had ruled c) has ruled d) ruled

25 Hardly .... the match when I felt that pain.
a) I played b) I had played c) had I played d) will I play

26 No sooner .... his country than he had lots of problems.
a) he had left b) he left c) had he left d) was he leaving

27 On .... the bad news, he fainted.
a) hearing b) had heard c) heard d) he had heard

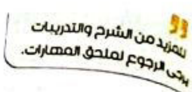
28 Having .... a lot of problems, he asked his uncle for help.
a) had had b) he had had c) have d) had

29 It wasn't until midnight that I .... better and went to sleep.
a) had felt b) felt c) feeling d) was feeling

30 One of the following is grammatically incorrect?
a) Hardly had Osama applied for the job when he took it.
b) No sooner had Osama applied for the job when he took it.
c) No sooner had Osama applied for the job than he took it.
d) No sooner did Osama apply for the job than he took it.









A News Report تقرير إخباري

A Volunteering Campaign!

A group of teenage students in East Alexandria have started a volunteering campaign to clean the beaches in their area. They have been working for ten hours daily. They have done a great work and people started to know about them and give them all the help they could.

"Summer is about to start and a lot of people are about to visit our city, so it would be suitable to find our beaches clean," said Ahmed Agamy who started the campaign. They collected a lot of rubbish from the dirty beaches and collected them in plastic bags. Some restaurant owners near the beaches provided them with vehicles to take this rubbish to landfill sites.

The beaches are cleaner now and look great. Mariam, one of the participants said, "It was hard work, but we are all delighted to help our society." All the students who took part in the campaign were excited after the work had been done. They said that cleaning the beaches is good for the environment and would help the economy in their city.



Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was a homework-free weekend. Shady suggested going swimming. He had just completed his swimming course and was eager to try out the skills he had learnt. His friends readily(1) agreed. They headed straight(2) for their neighbourhood swimming complex(3). It was quite crowded. They changed quickly and leapt(4) into the pool. They splashed(5) around on the shallower(6) end. A lifeguard was keeping a watchful(7) eye on all the swimmers. Shady challenged his friends for a swim over in the deep end. They refused as they knew it was dangerous for them. Besides, they did not swim that well after all. Diving to the deep end wasn't easy for them to do. Shady insisted that he was a better swimmer and set out to prove it. He walked over to the deep end and plunged(8) in. At first everything seemed alright and he did well, so all his friends cheered. Suddenly, Shady gave a shout and started flailing his arms. He was having difficulties! His friends were too shocked to react(9). Luckily, the lifeguard noticed him and quickly dived in. When he was safely out of the pool, the lifeguard gave him a tongue-lashing for fooling around. Shady apologised. All the way home, he had to endure(10) his friends making fun of him. It seemed that he needed a lot of training.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Shady and his friends went swimming during the ....
   a) weekday b) holidays c) break d) weekend
2. Shady suggested swimming as he wanted to ....
   a) show off his swimming skills to his friends
   b) test the lifeguard
   c) teach his friends the skills he had learnt
   d) complete his swimming course
3. As it was the weekend, the swimming pool was ....
   a) deep b) empty c) crowded d) free
4. 'Tongue lashing' means giving a/an ....
   a) warning b) scolding c) encouragement d) advice
5. The synonym of the word "eager" is ....
   a) skilful b) worried
   c) patient and interested d) keen and impatient

(1) طوعًا (2) مباشرة (3) مجمع (4) يثب/ يقفز (5) يتناثر (6) ضحل (7) مستيقظ (8) ينغمس (9) يتصرف (10) يتحمل

6 The lifeguard was praised as he was ....

a) attentive b) rash c) impatient d) eager

7 Why did Shady's friends refuse his challenge? Because they were ....

a) afraid of him b) worried about him c) less skilful d) too shocked

8 Although Shady was a good swimmer, he needed ....

a) lots of money b) much training c) a lot of advice d) to be older

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Mass media play an important part in shaping public opinion and public attitudes. Therefore, there are new laws that assure the credibility and responsibility of them.

a) تلعب وسائل التواصل دورًا محوريًا فى صياغة الرأى العام والاتجاهات العالمية ومن ثم هنالك قوانين معاصرة تؤكد صدقهم ومسئولياتهم.

b) يلعب الإعلام دورًا عابرًا فى تشكيل الرأى العالمى والاتجاهات العامة ولذلك توجد قوانين جديدة تضمن مصداقيتهم ومسئوليتهم.

c) تشكل وسائل الإعلام دورًا بارزفى صياغة الرأى والاتجاهات العامة ومع ذلك لاتوجد قوانين جديدة لضمان مصداقيتهم ومسئوليتهم.

d) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل الرأى العام والاتجاهات العامة ولذلك توجد قوانين جديدة التى تضمن مصداقيتهم ومسئوليتهم.

2 Many young men accept the news they get from social media as a truth. However, much of this news can be misleading and may disturb stability and peace of society.

a) يوافق الكثير من الشباب على الأخبار التى يسمعونها من وسائل الإعلام كأنها حقيقة. لكن الكثير من الأخبار قد تكون مضللة وتضر بمصلحة المجتمع وسلامته.

b) يقبل الكثير من الشباب الأخبار التى يحصلون عليها من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى على أنها حقيقة ومع ذلك فإن كثيرًا من الأخبار قد تكون خادعة وقد تضر الاستقرار والسلم فى أى مجتمع.

c) يقبل كثير من الناس الأخبار التى يمتلكونها من وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى على أنها صدق. ومع ذلك فإن كثيرًا من الأخبار قد تكون صادقة وقد تضر الاستقرار والسلم فى المجتمع.

d) يقبل الكثير من الشباب الأخبار التى تأتيهم من وسائل الإعلام على أنها واقع. ولكن كثير من الأخبار قد لا تكون خادعة وتضر الاستقرار والسلم فى أى مجتمع.

3 Due to modern forms of entertainment such as the TV and the internet, young people lack physical fitness and body flexibility.

a) بسبب وسائل الترفيه الحديثة مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت يفتقر الشباب إلى اللياقة البدنية والمرونة الجسدية.

b) لأن وسائل الاستمتاع الحديثة غير المعروفة مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت قد تجعل الشباب يفقد اللياقة البدنية والمرونة الجسدية.

c) نتيجة لوسائل الترفية السلبية مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت يفتقد المراهقون إلى اللياقة العقلية والمرونة الجسدية.

d) بسبب وسائل الاستمتاع السلبية الحديثة مثل التلفزيون والإنترنت يفتقر الناس إلى الكفاءة النفسية والثبات الجسدى.

4 The life of Taha Hussein, the great Egyptian writer, has always inspired people to improve their lives. His blindness didn't hinder him from great achievements.

a) ألهمت حياة طه حسين المفكر المصرى العظيم الناس لتحسين حياتهم ففقدانه للبصر إعاقة عن الإنجازات الكبيرة.

b) قد ألهمت حياة المفكر المصرى العظيم طه حسين الناس لكى يحسنوا ظروف معيشتهم ففقدانه للبصر لم يعقه عن الإنجازات المهمة.

c) لقد ألهمت حياة طه حسين الكاتب المصرى العظيم الناس لتحسين حياتهم ففقدانه للبصر لم يعقه عن الإنجازات الكبيرة.

d) تلهم حياة الكاتب المصرى العظيم طه حسين الناس لكى ينجحوا فى حياتهم ففقدانه للبصر لم يعقهم عن الإنجازات الهامة.

5 Education is considered the cornerstone to achieving progress in all fields. That's why schools must be attractive places suitable for educational reform.

a) إن التعليم هو الحجر الأساسى لتحقيق الرخاء فى كل الطرق لذلك من الممكن أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة موافقة للإصلاح التعليمى

b) يعتبر التعليم حجر الأساس لتحقيق التقدم فى كل المجالات لذلك يجب أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح التعليمى.

c) يعتبر التعليم ركن الأساس لزيادة التقدم فى كل المجالات وهذا لأن المدارس من الممكن تكون أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح العلمى.

d) إن التعليم هو حجر الأساس لإنجاز التقدم فى جميع المجالات لكن يجب أن تكون المدارس أماكن جذابة مناسبة للإصلاح التعليمى.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 هل توافق على وضع قوانين لمراقبة وحظر بعض مواقع الإنترنت وصفحات التواصل الاجتماعى خاصة التى أصبحت مصدرًا للشائعات المهددة للمجتمع؟

a) Do you accept putting laws to watch and prohibit any websites and mass media pages generally those that become a source of rumours which threat society?

b) Do you agree with making laws to monitor and prohibit some websites and social media pages especially those which have become a source of rumours which threaten society?

c) Do you agree with making laws to monitor and let some websites and social media blogs specially what have become a resource of facts and threaten society?

d) Are you for putting laws to watch and ban any websites and social media ads especially those which became a source of truth and threatened society?

7 يختلف الناس فى نظرتهم لتطور الاتصالات فمنهم من يرى أنها تطور طبيعى، ومنهم من يظن أن أضرارها تفوق مزاياها وأنها أصبحت تضر بالعلاقات الاجتماعية.

a) People differ in their view of communication development. Some of them think it is a natural development. Others think that its harms exceed its advantages and it is harming social relationships.

b) People are different in their sight of communication progress. Few of them think it is normal development. Some of them believe that its damages pass their advantages and it is hurting social relationships.

c) People differ in their opinion of connection development. Some of them see it is a usual development. Others guess that its harms exceed its disadvantages and it is damaging social relationships.

d) People are different in their view of communication development. Some of them say it is a neutral development. Others think that its harms overweight its advantages and it is harmless to social relationships.

8 يستغل المنتجون مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى فى الإعلان عن منتجاتهم لأنها تجذب الملايين من الناس لكن هذه الإعلانات أصبحت مزعجة لتكرارها ولإعاقتها لمستخدمى المواقع المختلفة.

a) Producers use mass media in announcing their products as it attracts millions of people. But these announcements have become annoying and that's because of their repetitions and disturbing different websites pages.

b) Producers use social media in advertising their productions because it attracts millions of people. However, these adverts have become disturbing because of their repetitions and disturbing different websites blogs.

c) Producers use social media in advertising their products because it attracts millions of people. However, these adverts have become annoying because of their repetitions and disturbing different websites users.

d) Producers take social media in advertising their produce since it attracts millions of people. Though these adverts have become disturbing as a result of their repetitions and disturbing different websites users.

9 يعتبر اهتمام الشباب بأفلام العنف ظاهرة تستحق اهتمام كل علماء الاجتماع والمفكرين لمحاولة إيجاد الحلول لها. يقول الخبراء إنه ربما يكون لها آثار على ارتفاع معدل الجريمة.

a) Young people's regards in adventure films is a phenomenon which pays the attention of all sociologists and believers trying to give solutions for it. Experts say that it can have an impact on the rise in crime number.

b) Young people's interest in violence films is a phenomenon which deserves the attention of all sociologists and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts say that it may have an effect on the rise in crime rate.

c) Young people's interest in funny movies is a phenomenon which deserves the attention of all psychologists and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts say that it may have an effect on the rise in crime number.

d) Young people's concern in violent films is a phenomenon which pays the attention of all writers and thinkers trying to find solutions for it. Experts think that it must have an affection on the raise in crime rate.

10 يعمل الكثير من مراسلي الصحف و القنوات التليفزيونية فى مناطق خطيرة مثل مناطق الحروب والكوارث الطبيعية وذلك بهدف توصيل الأخبار والأحداث الجارية للقراء و المشاهدين فى كل أنحاء العالم.

a) Many newspaper and TV correspondents work in dangerous places such as war and disaster areas with the aim of transmitting the current news and events to readers and viewers all over the world.

b) Lots of newspaper and TV correspondents have work in dangerous places such as war and disaster areas with the aim of watching the current news and incidents to writers and viewers all over the world.

c) Some newspaper and TV audience work in dangerous areas such as war and disaster areas with the aim of broadcasting the current news and events to readers and thinkers all over the world.

d) Many newspaper and TV audience have work in areas of dangers such as fight and disaster areas with the aim of watching the current news and incidents to readers and viewers all over the world.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can stories about national heroes inspire young people?"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

Unit 10



Al-Adwaa Test

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Dr Zewail went to America to complete his .... before settling there.
a) affection b) education c) practice d) fiction

2 The .... with the new prime minister رئيس الوزراء will be shown on tonight's news.
a) interview b) criticism c) attack d) truce

3 There are many search .... in competition, but Google is the most popular.
a) powers b) routes c) engines d) motors

4 When my daughter apologised for her mistake, I felt a .... of regret in her voice.
a) sound b) tone c) look d) song

5 This is the first time I've heard .... this kind of trouble in our town.
a) from b) at c) for d) about

6 The city erected a statue in the great singer's honour. The synonym of the verb "erect" is ....
a) deny b) release c) construct d) damage

7 We went to London last year, but we .... there two years earlier.
a) had also been b) were being
c) have also been d) would be

8 Although Kareem .... the test many times before, he was very nervous.
a) has done b) had been doing
c) was doing d) had done

9 She .... until she had done her homework.
a) slept b) didn't sleep
c) had slept d) wasn't sleeping

10 As soon as it stopped raining, the match ....
a) will start b) started c) had started d) has started

11 The boy .... photos after the police had left the scene.
a) was taking b) had taken c) took d) was taken

12 I didn't leave .... I had taken my pocket money.

a) as soon as
b) because
c) after
d) until

13 He said that his mother would be very upset when she .... that he had lo[st] his job.

a) would learn
b) learned
c) learns
d) had learned

14 He knew that she had been crying as her eyes .... red.

a) have been
b) had been
c) are
d) were

15 I met Hesham last week. I .... him since 2018.

a) haven't met
b) hadn't met
c) wasn't meeting
d) didn't meet

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Karl Benz invented the modern car in 1888 in Germany. Emile Roger worked for Benz in France. He made cars in France. By 1900, many people were building cars in France and in the U.S. The first company to build only cars was Panhard et Levassor in France. Panhard started in 1889. The Peugeot car company started in 1891 in France. In the US, Frank and Charles Duryea started the Duryea Motor Wagon Company in 1893. It was the first US car Company. By 1902, Ransom E. Olds started the Olds Motor Vehicle Company. A year later, Henry Ford started the Ford Motor company. It produced the Cadillac. All these early modern cars burned[1] gasoline[2] or diesel fuel[3]. Ford opened factories in France and Britain in 1911. Then, they opened a factory in Denmark in 1923. Later, they opened a factory in Germany in 1925. Ford was one of the first manufacturers[4] to use an assembly[5] line. With an assembly line, factory workers could produce[6] cars faster and safer than other production systems.

Most modern cars still burn gasoline or diesel fuel. These cars cause air pollution. They get the air dirty. Now many people are looking for cleaner cars. And many car companies are looking for cleaner fuels.



(1) يحرق
(2) جازولين
(3) وقود
(4) أصحاب المصانع
(5) المجسم
(6) ينتج

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Which company first built only cars?

a) Benz
b) Ford
c) Panhard
d) D. Duryea

17 Fuel is ....

a) what makes cars move
b) a car production system
c) the price of a car
d) no correct answer

18 What is an assembly line?

a) A way of making products.
b) A safe way of making products.
c) A quick way of making products.
d) All of the previous.

19 The Ford Motor Company opened a ....

a) factory in Denmark in 1911
b) factory in Germany in 1925
c) factory in Britain in 1929
d) factory in France in 1931

20 The Peugeot car company started in ....

a) 1911
b) 1923
c) 1891
d) 1925

21 The assembly line was .... idea.

a) Panhard et Levassor's
b) Ransom E. Olds'
c) Karl Benz's
d) Henry Ford's

22 The place where people make things is called a/an ....

a) factory
b) laboratory
c) line
d) country

23 The cars using .... are considered environmentally-friendly cars.

a) gasoline
b) diesel
c) electricity
d) coal

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Young people should appreciate their elders' sensible advice and wisdom. They are the outcome of their long experience through which they have faced different situations.

a) يجب أن ينجذب الشباب إلى كلمات وحكمة كبار السن الحساسة فهى نتاج خبرتهم فى حياتهم والتى واجهوها فى المواقف المختلفة.
b) يجب أن يقدر الشباب نصائح وحكمة كبار السن العاقلة فهى نتاج خبرتهم فى الحياة والتى واجهوها فى المواقف المختلفة.
c) من المهم أن يقدر الشباب كلمات وحكمة من هم أكبر منهم فهى نتاج تجاربهم فى الحياة والتى واجهوها فى المناسبات المختلفة.
d) ينبغى أن يقدر الشباب نصائح وحكمة من هم أكبر منهم العاقلين فهى نتاج تجاربهم فى الحياة والتى واجهوها فى المناسبات المختلفة.

▶ **25 Choose the correct English translation:**

تؤدي النزاعات والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال من أهمها فقدان الشعور بالأمان والخوف الدائم من المستقبل. لذلك علينا أن نتجنب الحروب بشتى السبل.

a) Wars and fights lead to many social effects on children; one of them is missing the feeling of security and the constant fear of the future. Therefore, we should spread peace by all means.

b) Wars and disputes lead to many psychological effects on children; one of which is losing the feeling of safety and the constant fear of death. So, we must avoid wars in all fields.

c) Wars and disputes bring many social effects on children; one of them is losing the sense of security and the constant pain of the future. Therefore, we don't have to avoid wars by all means.

d) Wars and disputes lead to many psychological effects on children; one of which is losing the feeling of safety and the constant fear of the future. Therefore, we should avoid wars by all means.

▶ **26 Answer the following questions:**

1. If you were King Lear, would you go mad because of Goneril and Regan's bad treatment? Why?
2. Oswald received the punishment he deserved. Do you agree? Why?
3. Was Gloucester right to love the King despite the harm he suffered because of him? Why?

▶ **27 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arab Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with your family. Your name is Adel. Your email address is adel2024@yahoo.com. Salim's email is salimreda@hotmail.com.

....

....

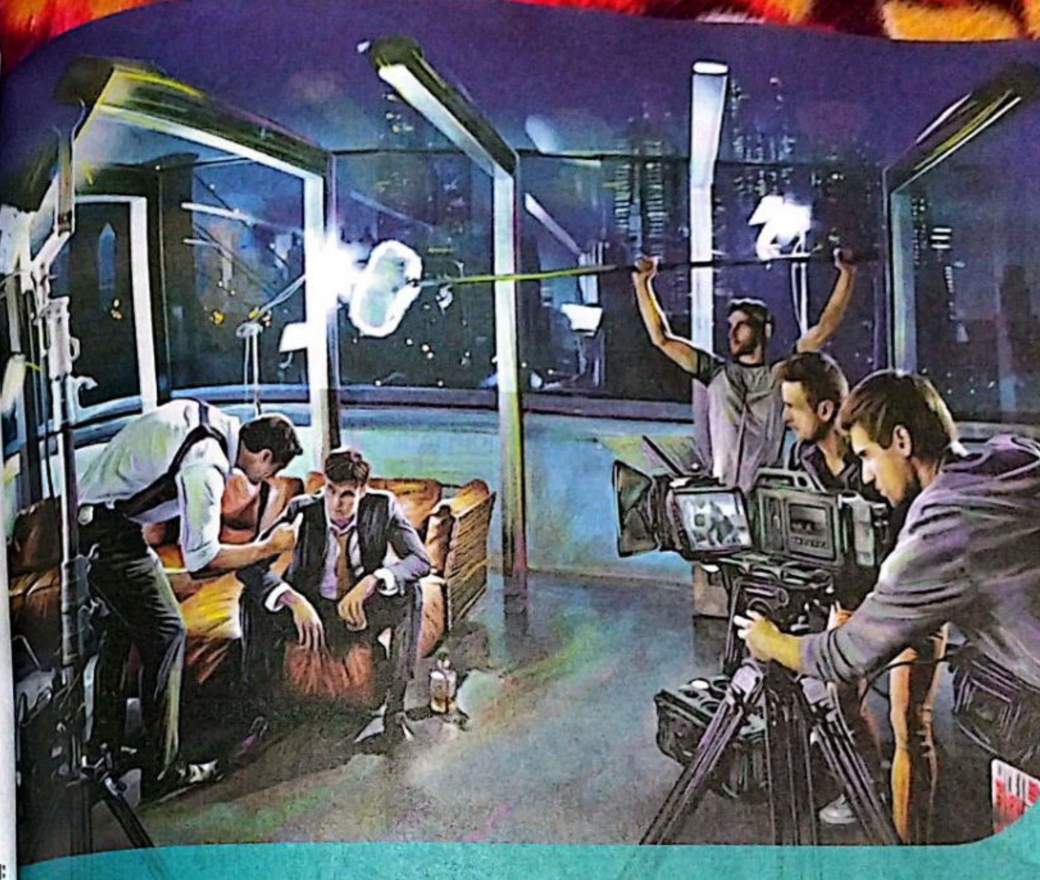
....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص351

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



What a performance!

Unit 11

Objectives



Reading : Online film reviews

Writing : Two film reviews

Listening : Interview with a film critic; intonation

Speaking : Explain how a film affects you

Language : Tag questions, adjectives and adverbs

Life Skills : Critical thinking; listening to others' opinions; recognising differences in opinion



Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

action (n)	حركة	horror (n)	رعب
animation (n)*	الرسوم المتحركة	musical (n)	مسرحية غنائية/فيلم غنائى
comedy (n)	فيلم كوميدى/كوميديا	romantic (adj)	رومانسى
historical (adj)	تاريخى	science fiction (sci-fi) (n)	خيال علمى

*The website has hundreds of animations you can download for your children to watch.

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

adapted (adj)	مقتبس/مأخوذ	incredibly (adv)	بشكل رائع
approve (v) (d)	يوافق/يستحسن	intonation (n)	نبرة صوت
bestselling (adj)	ذو أفضل مبيعات	lack (n) (v) (ed)	نقص/ينقصه
cartoon (n)	رسوم متحركة (كارتون)	Martian (n)	مريخى (متعلق بكوكب المريخ)
certain (adj)	محدد/معين	marvellous (adj)	رائع
choice (n)	اختيار	mate (n)	زميل/رفيق
colleague (n)	زميل (عمل)	mathematician (n)	عالم رياضيات
constantly (adv)	بشكل دائم/باستمرار	meanwhile (adv)	فى غضون ذلك/فى نفس الوقت
crew (n)	طاقم العمل	mission (n)	مهمة/بعثة
critic (n)	ناقد	mixed (adj)	مختلط
demonstrate (v) (d)	يثبت/يبرهن	neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/الحى
director (n)	مدير/مخرج	performance (n)	أداء
documentary (n)	فيلم وثائقى	pity (n)	شفقة/حسرة
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	recommend (v) (ed)	يوصى بـ/يرشح
fan (n)	معجب	remake (v)	يعيد صناعة
film (v) (ed)	يصور فيلما	rescue (n) (v) (d)	إنقاذ/ينقذ

review (n)	عرض نقدى/مراجعة	surprising (adj)	مدهش
scared (adj)	مرعوب	survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى حياً
script (n)	سيناريو/نسخة حوار	typical (adj)	نموذجى/أصلى
soundtrack (n)	تسجيل صوتى	version (n)	نسخة / إصدار
special effects (n)	مؤثرات خاصة	visuals (n)	مرئيات/مشاهد مرئية
storyline (n)	قصة/سير الأحداث	warmth (n)	دفء
style (n)	أسلوب		

Workbook Vocabulary

acting (n)	تمثيل	positive (adj)	إيجابى
cruel (adj)	قاس	powerful (adj)	قوى/مؤثر
escape (n) (v) (d)	هروب/يهرب	return (v) (ed)	يرجع/يعود
genuine (adj)	أصلى	rule (v) (d)	يحكم
hostile (adj)	عدائى	space (n)	الفضاء
negative (adj)	سلبى	talented (adj)	موهوب

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A .... film is a film in which very frightening or unnatural things happen, for example dead people coming to life and people being murdered.
   a) comic b) horror c) romantic d) musical
2. The new musical's songs and .... are now available on CD.
   a) soundtrack b) review c) revision d) replay
3. Cactus الصبار is a kind of plants that can .... on very little water or in the desert.
   a) detect b) deprive c) survive d) derive
4. Sales representatives need to be outgoing, because they are .... meeting customers.
   a) helplessly b) gradually c) temporarily d) constantly
5. I think that watching the film .... of a novel is much more exciting than reading it.
   a) type b) version c) episode d) animation
6. There were some interesting interviews in the .... about the 6th of October War.
   a) correspondence b) copy c) documentary d) competition

7 Tarek El Shenawy is a famous film .... whose reviews are read by most actors.
a) producer b) announcer c) director d) critic

8 The winning team were loudly cheered by their .... when they received the Cup of Nations.
a) fans b) inspectors c) assistants d) enemies

9 The famous writer is currently working on a .... of a historical film about Khalid Ibn El Waleed.
a) wave b) soundtrack c) script d) current

10 The court .... the sale of the businessman's house to repay his debts.
a) discovered b) applied c) remade d) approved

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	of the same name	بنفس الاسم
get lost	يضل الطريق/يتوه	rule over a country	يحكم بلدًا
adapted from	مأخوذ من/مقتبس من	leave behind	يخلف/يترك خلفه
choice of	اختيار لـ	shout at	يصرخ في وجه
climb onto	يصعد إلى	similar to	مشابه لـ
escape from	يهرب من	take off	يطير/يقلع
go back	يرجع/يعود	type of	نوع من

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يقتبس	adaptation	اقتباس	adapted	مقتبس
----------------------		comedy	كوميديا	comic	كوميدى
demonstrate	يبرهن/يثبت	demonstration	إثبات/برهان	demonstrative	توضيحى
power*	يحرك/ يزود بالطاقة	power	قوة/طاقة	powerful	قوى/مؤثر
recommend	يرشح/يوصى بـ	recommendation	ترشيح/توصية	recommended	مرشح
rule	يحكم	ruler	حاكم	ruling	حاكم
scare	يرعب	scare	رعب	scared scary	مرعوب مخيف
survive	ينجو	survival survivor	النجاة ناجٍ	surviving	ناجٍ

- The gas station generates enough energy to power a town of 6000 people.
- Solar power generation is greatly affected by cloud cover.
- Prizes and rewards are a powerful tool for successful encouragement at schools.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
cruel	قاسٍ	violent/brutal	merciful/kind	رحيم/عطوف
demonstrate	يثبت/يبرهن	illustrate/prove	confuse disprove	يربك يدحض
horror	رعب	fear/terror	calmness/delight	هدوء/سعادة
hostile	عدائى	unfriendly/unsympathetic	friendly/kind	لطيف/عطوف
incredibly	بشكل رائع	amazingly/astonishingly	normally/slightly	بشكل طبيعى
powerful	قوى/مؤثر	impressive/influential	impotent/dull/powerless	ضعيف/ممل
recommend	يوصى بـ/يرشح	propose/suggest	deny/oppose	ينكر/يعارض
rule	يحكم	govern/dominate	surrender/serve	يستسلم/يخدم
scared	مرعوب	frightened/terrified/ afraid	brave/courageous	شجاع
talented	موهوب	gifted	untalented/unskilled	غير موهوب/غير ماهر

Vocabulary Check point 2

Let's check our memory!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It's so cruel to keep a dog chained up like that all the time. The antonym of the adjective "cruel" is "..................".
a) violent b) brutal c) merciful d) strange

2 In England, the Prime Minister has the right to rule .... the country and he should be the head of the ruling party.
a) over b) for c) at d) on

3 Some kinds of bacteria can survive in high temperatures. The adjective of the verb "survive" is "..................".
a) survives b) survival c) survivor d) surviving

4 The Brazilian team includes some highly talented young players. The synonym of the word "talented" is ....
a) unskilled b) gifted c) fabulous d) romantic

5 I wish all teachers would stop shouting .... the children at school.
a) about b) for c) of d) at

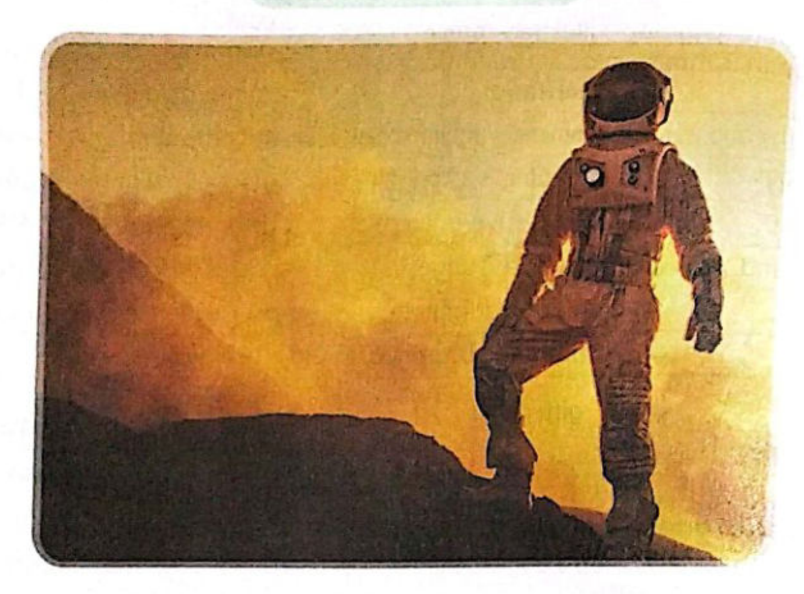
6 The play had been adapted for children. The noun of the verb "adapt" is "..................".
a) adapt b) adaptation c) adapted d) adaptable

7 I have two cousins who are .... the same name as they were both named after our grandfather.
a) out b) off c) of d) for

8 A hostile audience refused to listen to Senator Drummond's reply. The word "hostile" is the opposite of "..................".
a) friendly b) cruel c) devastated d) unsympathetic

Reading Text (1)

The Martian



Clever, exciting, and surprisingly funny, *The Martian* is a brilliant film, adapted from the bestselling book of the same name, and demonstrates[1] the talents[2] of actor Matt Damon and director Ridley Scott.

When astronauts take off from the planet Mars, they leave behind Mark Watney (Damon), who they believe had died in a storm. Watney is left with little food or water and has to find a way to survive[3] on the empty planet. Meanwhile, back on Earth, NASA and a team of international scientists work constantly[4] to bring him home. At the same time his crew mates plan a brave rescue mission.

Unlike most sci-fi films, *The Martian* has no fight scenes. Instead, it is a clever and powerful film and perhaps the best science fiction[5] film that I've seen in a long time.

(1) يبرهن/يثبت
(2) مواهب
(3) ينجو
(4) بشكل دائم
(5) خيال علمي

The Lion King



Although the visuals in the 2019 version[1] of *The Lion King* are quite brilliant, this remake lacks the warmth and energy of the original[2] cartoon film. This is even more surprising when you look at the list of talented actors involved. The storyline[3] is the same and the music and songs are great, but it just isn't as much fun and it's difficult to know why.

Like the 1994 film, the story is about the young lion Simba, his unkind uncle who kills Simba's father and Simba's life in the desert with his new friends Timon and Pumbaa. The director Jon Favreau has created an animation[4] which looks incredibly real and maybe that's the problem – it doesn't look like an enjoyable film, more like a wildlife documentary[5]!

(1) نسخة
(2) أصلي
(3) قصة
(4) فيلم رسوم متحركة
(5) فيلم وثائقي

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

I don't expect to like films about children who get lost, but the film *Lion* was 1) surprisingly good. It's about a family in India who are 2) constantly trying to find enough work to live well. One day, five-year-old Saroo goes to a town with his older brother, but when his brother doesn't return from a job, Saroo climbs onto a train and becomes lost. The story is about the 3) brave boy as he tries to live in a city where the people are often 4) hostile and unfriendly.

I found the second half of the film less 5) enjoyable, although it is still good. Saroo is now a 6) talented student of 25. He has a good life with a kind family who took him to Australia, but he wants to find out what happened to his brother and family in India. The story is very 7) powerful and I'll always remember it. The acting was totally 8) brilliant and I definitely recommend it.

Listening Text (1)

Adel : Tonight, I'm talking to film critic[1] Seleem about the films he's seen recently. Seleem, welcome.

Seleem: Hi, Adel.

Adel : You've been a film critic for many years, so I guess you love watching films, don't you?

Seleem: I do, and there are some great ones out there. You're a fan[2] of action films, aren't you?

Adel : Yes, have you seen any good ones recently?

Seleem: Black Panther. I really enjoyed it, but it's had mixed[3] reviews. The special effects were great and so were the fight scenes, but the dialogue[4] was difficult to follow at times, which was a pity[5]. The best film I've seen lately was the award-winning Hidden Figures. I don't often watch historical films but this one is brilliant. It's the true story of black female mathematicians[6] working at NASA in the 1960s and how hard they had to work to prove themselves.

Adel : They both sound good. Any others?

Seleem: A Beautiful Day in the Neighbourhood[7]. This is another true story. It's about Fred Rogers, an American children's TV presenter and a journalist. It's a story of kindness and has a wonderfully positive message.

Adel : Tom Hanks was in that, wasn't he?

Seleem: Yes, and as you know, I'm a big Tom Hanks fan. He's a marvellous[8] actor and his films are so different. He's done comedy, animation, action – you name it, he's done it.

Adel : Very true. So, when you're not working, what kind of film would you choose to watch?

Seleem: Well, believe it or not I love musicals. You thought I'd say action or science fiction, didn't you?

Adel : I did yes, but why not. I mean I love horror films!

Seleem: Really?

(1) ناقد
(2) مشجع
(3) مختلط
(4) حوار
(5) شفقة/حسرة
(6) علماء رياضيات
(7) الجيرة/الحى
(8) رائع



Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

	Word	Meaning	Example
1	**colleague**	زميل عمل	Friends and colleagues will remember him with affection.
	classmate	زميل دراسة	Osama has been my classmate for years. We are in the same class.
2	**crew**	١- طاقم عمل (فى طائرة/سفينة غالبًا) ٢- طاقم من الفنيين لإنتاج شيء مثل فيلم أو مسرحية	- The plane crashed, killing two of the crew and four passengers. - The film crew were making a political documentary. لاحظ أننا يمكن أن نستخدم (cast) فى المعنى الثانى.
	staff	طاقم عمل (فى مصنع/مدرسة/منظمة)	The school has over 100 full-time staff.
3	**review**	١- مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس) ٢- مقال نقدى.	- The writer sent the press a review of the research. - The newspaper published many reviews about the new film.
	revision	مراجعة/إعادة نظر/مراجعة (دروس)	- I'm making some revisions to the book for the new edition. - I know I haven't done enough revision for tomorrow's exam.
4	**documentary**	فيلم وثائقى	There were some interesting interviews in the documentary about Naguib Mahfouz.
	podcast	تدوين صوتى (ملف يمكن سماعه أو تحميله عبر الإنترنت)	To listen to the podcast, click on the link below.
	webcast	البث الشبكى (مباشر عبر الإنترنت)	There will be a live webcast of the total solar eclipse in the country.
5	**approve**	يوافق على	The Medical Research Council has approved the use of a new drug for cancer.
	pass	يمرر قانونًا (بالتصويت)	Many anti-smoking laws have been passed.
	ratify	يصدق على (اتفاق أو معاهدة بالتوقيع عليها فتصبح رسمية)	The treaty was ratified by the Parliament.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The famous journalist writes film .... for the newspapers.
   a) animations b) revisions c) talents d) reviews
2. Most world countries have agreed to .... the treaty about the earth's environment.
   a) approve b) pass c) ratify d) succeed
3. When my brother started his new job, all his .... were friendly and helpful.
   a) colleagues b) competitors c) classmates d) rivals
4. The captain and .... welcomed the famous footballer themselves on entering the plane.
   a) staff b) crew c) cast d) group
5. We were able to watch a live .... of the launch of the first spaceship to Mars.
   a) documentary b) podcast c) webcast d) musical



Practice




Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Although they are old, Ismail Yassen's .... are still liked by elderly people.
   a) fictions b) romances c) horrors d) comedies
2. There was a look of .... on the little girl's face when she saw the big dog coming towards her.
   a) horror b) historical c) comic d) romantic
3. When it was first produced, *Jurasic Park*, the famous science .... film, shocked many people.
   a) faction b) fission c) fiction d) fact
4. Many children and young people buy books after they have been .... for television.
   a) painted b) adapted c) viewed d) reviewed
5. Thanks to computer ...., it is now possible to make cartoons much more quickly than in the past.
   a) romance b) horror c) animation d) terror
6. We're having a small party for one of our .... who's leaving the company next week.
   a) colleagues b) classmates c) fans d) commuters
7. What we .... in our new house is space to store things.
   a) leak b) lock c) lack d) lick
8. This simplified .... of Shakespeare's play is intended for younger children.
   a) review b) version c) fiction d) visual
9. The UN team were on a mercy .... to take food to the refugees when they were attacked.
   a) mission b) trip c) fight d) treaty
10. The crew of the sinking boat were .... by a passing cruise ship.
    a) reserved b) rescued c) preserved d) deserved
11. This week, our English assignment was to write a .... of a book or a film we watched.
    a) revision b) highlight c) review d) scene
12. The book's .... revolves around يدور حول a woman who is searching for her missing sister.
    a) sale b) criticism c) review d) storyline
13. This announcer is a/an .... who is known for asking tough فظة questions.
    a) interviewer b) interviewee c) simplifier d) applicant
14. After the murder at the bus was announced, people were .... to use the buses late at night.
    a) delighted b) effective c) scared d) fanned
15. Good teamwork is a/an .... tool for effective management.
    a) powerful b) minor c) unsuccessful d) affecting

16 This restaurant was a good ...., I enjoyed the meal very much.
a) recommend b) recommended c) recommendation d) recommendable

17 Without the map we bought at the information centre, we would have .... lost easily.
a) given b) come c) got d) turned

18 Queen Victoria .... over England for more than fifty years.
a) captured b) ruled c) spread d) surrendered

19 The spaceship took .... and landed safely back to the base.
a) at b) off c) in d) out

20 Illegal hunting is threatening the .... of some animal species.
a) survive b) survival c) survived d) survivable

21 My brother was right to recommend watching this exciting film. The antonym of the verb "recommend" is "................".
a) advise b) relate c) associate d) oppose

22 The brave soldier refused to escape and leave his fellow soldiers ....
a) behind b) off c) about d) for

23 The latest test results clearly demonstrate that the vaccine اللقاح works. The synonym of the verb "demonstrate" is "................".
a) improve b) illustrate c) disprove d) approve

24 Alexander the Great ruled over a huge empire. The antonym of the word "rule" is "................".
a) surrender b) seize c) conquer d) aspire

25 Teachers usually use .... aids in the classroom; children like to see what is being introduced. (Longman)
a) unclear b) visual c) listening d) audio

26 A lot of young people prefer watching .... films in which a hero strives to marry the lady he prefers. (Longman)
a) documentary b) romantic c) economical d) historical

27 All workers are very .... to the idea of closing the factory; it's very difficult for them to find other jobs. (Longman)
a) welcoming b) hospitable c) accepting d) hostile

28 Which .... instrument would you like to play? (Longman)
a) musically b) musical c) musician d) music

29 The film .... had a bitter comment on a lot of fight scenes in the new film. (Longman)
a) critical b) criticism c) critic d) critically

30 I don't like such films; I'm a .... of action films only. (Longman)
a) fun b) fan c) fine d) van



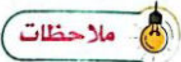
Tag Questions السؤال المذيل

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة الخبرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم عمل هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط وبعده الضمير العائد على الاسم.
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفيًا والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لابد أن يكون السؤال المنفي مختصرًا.
- السؤال المذيل يأتي قبله (,).

Positive statement	+	Negative question tag	Negative statement	+	Positive question tag
+		-	-		+
You are a student	,	aren't you?	Hala is not a nurse	,	is she?

+ sentence		- tag	- sentence		+ tag
Ali is Egyptian	,	isn't he?	John isn't Egyptian	,	is he?
You study hard	,	don't you?	You don't study hard	,	do you?
He lives in Cairo	,	doesn't he?	He doesn't live in Cairo	,	does he?
You were at home	,	weren't you?	You weren't at home	,	were you?
Ola visited her uncle	,	didn't she?	Ola didn't visit her uncle	,	did she?
Omar was watching TV	,	wasn't he?	Omar wasn't watching TV	,	was he?
You have seen my bag	,	haven't you?	You haven't seen my bag	,	have you?
You have dinner at 8 pm	,	don't you?	You don't have dinner at 8 pm	,	do you?
She's finished the report	,	hasn't she?	She hasn't finished yet	,	has she?
She has blonde hair	,	doesn't she?	She doesn't have blonde hair	,	does she?

He'd finished by 6 p.m.	,	hadn't he?	He hadn't come by 6 p.m.	,	had he?
He'd rather leave now	,	wouldn't he?	He'd rather not come	,	would he?
He'd better find a job	,	hadn't he?	He'd better not go now	,	had he?
They'll help us	,	won't they?	They won't help us	,	will they?
He can ride a horse	,	can't he?	He can't ride a horse	,	can he?
We need more money	,	don't we?	We needn't more money	,	need we?
He used to get up early	,	didn't he?	He didn't use to help us	,	did he?
I think he is a thief	,	isn't he?	I don't think he is a thief	,	is he?
I'm right	,	aren't I?	I'm not mistaken	,	am I?
حـــالات خاصـــة					
Let's go out اقتراح	,	shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	,	will/won't you?
Interesting	,	isn't it?	Beautiful	,	isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	,	isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	,	aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	,	isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	,	aren't there?
Stop talking	,	will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	,	will you?


ملاحظات

١) الجملة التى تحتوى على never – rarely – hardly – seldom – nor – neither – few – little – no تعتبر جملة منفية لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتًا.

- He can hardly run, can he?
- He rarely visits you, does he?

٢) إذا كان الفاعل Everything, Something, Nothing يكون الضمير it.

- Nothing can live without energy, can it?

٣) إذا كان الفاعل Everyone, body - Someone, body - No one, body يكون الضمير they.

- Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She comes from a rich family in London, ...?
   a) didn't she b) doesn't she c) hasn't she d) won't she
2. You have finished your work, ...?
   a) don't you b) didn't you c) haven't you d) have you
3. You lived here 3 months ago, ...?
   a) didn't you b) don't you c) had you d) do you
4. My brother isn't here, ...?
   a) he is b) is there c) isn't he d) is he
5. He can't swim, ... he?
   a) does b) can c) will d) is

Adjectives and Adverbs

1 Adjectives الصفات

- الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتى قبله مثل: An interesting film/an easy test
- أو تصف الاسم والضمير وتأتى بعدهما مسبوقة بـ v.to be مثل The boys/They are clever.
- الصفة تأتى بعد أفعال معينة وهى أفعال stative مثل:

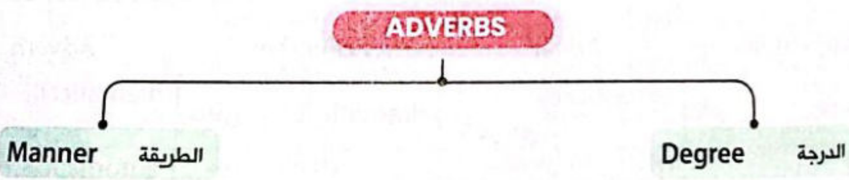
look/sound/seem/taste/appear/get/feel/become/smell, etc.

- The medicine tastes awful.
- The man looks happy.
- The food smells bad.

2 Adverbs الأحوال/الظروف

الحال أو الظرف يصف: ١- الفعل ٢- الصفة

1. He drives carelessly. (Verb + Adverb)
2. The shirt is terribly expensive. (Adverb + Adjective)



1 Adverbs of Manner ظروف الطريقة

هى الظروف التى تبين طريقة أو كيفية حدوث الفعل.

- He must take his study seriously.

١) يتكون هذا النوع بإضافة (ly) للصفة.

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
bad سيئ	badly بسوء	nervous قلق	nervously بقلق
correct صحيح	correctly بطريقة صحيحة	nice لطيف	nicely بلطف
foolish أحمق	foolishly بحماقة	permanent دائم	permanently دومًا
loud عالٍ	loudly بصوت عالٍ	quick سريع	quickly بسرعة
quiet هادئ	quietly بهدوء	slow بطىء	slowly ببطء
sad حزين	sadly بحزن	sudden مفاجئ	suddenly فجأة

٢) إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(l) تضاف (ly) أما إذا انتهت بـ (le) فنحذف e ونضع (y).

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
beautiful جميل	beautifully بجمال	careful حريص	carefully بحرص
terrible فظيع	terribly بفظاعة	horrible رهيب	horribly بشكل رهيب
real حقيقى	really حقًا/فعليًا	probable محتمل	probably من المحتمل

٣) إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(y) تقلب (i) قبل إضافة (ly).

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
angry غاضب	angrily بغضب	easy سهل	easily بسهولة
heavy ثقيل	heavily بثقل/بشدة	hungry جوعان	hungrily بجوع
happy سعيد	happily بسعادة	lucky محظوظ	luckily لحسن الحظ

- It was an easy test. (adj)
- The students answered the test easily. (adv)

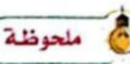
٤) إذا انتهت الصفة بـ(ic) نضيف (ally).

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
fantastic رائع	fantastically بشكل رائع	dramatic درامى	dramatically بشكل درامى
drastic قاس/عنيف	drastically بشكل عنيف	automatic أتوماتيك	automatically أتوماتيكيا

٥) من شواذ تكوين الظروف:

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
good جيد	well بشكل جيد	fast سريع	fast بسرعة
long طويل	long بشكل طويل	low منخفض	low بشكل منخفض
fine جيد	fine جيدًا	high مرتفع	high بشكل مرتفع
straight مستقيم	straight بشكل مستقيم	right صحيح	right بشكل صحيح

- Ali is a fast swimmer. (adj)
- Ali swims fast. (adv)



ملحوظة

بعض الصفات تستخدم كظرف بدون إضافة (ly) مثل الصفات فى الجدول السابق، ولكن إذا أضيفت لها (ly) يكون لها معنى مختلف مثل:

Adjective	Adverb	Adverb
late متأخر	late متأخرًا	lately مؤخرًا (منذ وقت قريب)
hard صلب/صعب/شديد	hard بجد/بشدة	hardly بالكاد/تقريبًا لا
wrong خاطئ/مخطئ	wrong بشكل خاطئ	wrongly بظلم
near قريب	near بالقرب	nearly تقريبًا

- She hardly ever goes out of the house. (She almost never goes out of the house).
- You wrongly accused him. = (unfairly بظلم) not incorrectly.

٦) هناك صفات تنتهى بـ ly ولا تتغير عند التحويل إلى حال ومنها:

hourly فى كل ساعة	daily يومى/يوميًا	weekly أسبوعى/أسبوعيًا
monthly شهرى/شهريًا	yearly سنوى/سنويًا	early مبكر/مبكرًا

- My father is reading his daily newspaper. (adj)
- My father reads the newspaper daily. (adv)

٧) هناك صفات تنتهى بـ ly وعند التحويل إلى حال تكون كالآتى:

in a/an + adj-ly + way/manner

elderly مسن	lonely وحيدًا/يشعر بالوحدة	ugly قبيح
fatherly أبوى	lovely محبوب	deadly مميت
friendly ودود	motherly كالأم	heavenly سماوى
lively مفعم بالحيوية	silly سخيف	cowardly جبان
brotherly أخوى	likely متوقع/محتمل	sisterly خاص بالأخت

- He is a friendly man. (adj)
- He greets/treats me in a friendly way. (adv)

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The students wanted to finish their homework ....
a) so quick b) quicker c) quickly d) quick

2 The girl sang .... and all the audience clapped their hands.
a) as beautiful b) beauty c) beautiful d) beautifully

3 Whoever made the cake did a .... job.
a) wonder b) wonderful c) wonderfully d) more wonderfully

4 The room in which Ahmed sleeps was .... decorated.
a) colourfully b) colourful c) coloured d) colour

5 Although I told him a silly joke, my friend laughed quite ....
a) loudest b) louder c) loudly d) loud

2 Adverbs of degree ظروف الدرجة

١) هى الظروف التى تبين درجة الصفة والظروف الأخرى.

extremely	للغاية	very	جدًا
quite	تمامًا	fairly/slightly	قليلًا

- Mount Everest is extremely high.
- She is quite good at maths.
- My little brother speaks English very well.
- The question is slightly difficult.

٢) الأحوال التى تصف الصفة تأتى قبلها وهى تساوى very فى المعنى تقريبًا:

الاسم	الحال		الصفة
The Nile is	very		long.
	extremely	للغاية	
	fantastically	بشكل مدهش	
	incredibly	لا يصدق	
	tremendously	جدًا/هائل	

٣) وعند تحويل الصفة إلى اسم يتحول الحال إلى صفة ليصف ذلك الاسم ونحذف ly ونضع a/an قبل الصفة.

الاسم	الصفة		الاسم
The Nile has	an extreme ~~ly~~	للغاية	length.
	a fantastic ~~ally~~	بشكل مدهش	
	an incredible ~~y~~	لا يصدق	
	a tremendous ~~ly~~	جدًا/هائل	




Practice — Practise more — Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You don't play the piano, ...?
a) don't you b) does it c) do you d) doesn't it

2 This winter is not very cold, ...?
a) does it b) isn't it c) won't it d) is it

3 The boy wasn't able to do it alone, ...?
a) wasn't it b) was he c) didn't he d) wasn't he

4 My friend doesn't work hard, ...?
a) does he b) doesn't he c) he does d) is he

5 You have a bad headache, ...?
a) does it b) isn't it c) don't you d) haven't you

6 There are so many people in the street, ...?
a) aren't they b) are there c) isn't there d) aren't there

7 He had lunch at home today, ...?
a) did he b) didn't he c) hadn't he d) had he

8 She has never been to Egypt, ... she?
a) has b) does c) hasn't d) doesn't

9 You'd better leave now, ... you?
a) hadn't b) don't c) had d) wouldn't

10 I think he's from India, ...?
a) don't I b) doesn't he c) isn't he d) hasn't he

11 There has been no rain for the last couple of weeks, ...?
a) hasn't it b) hasn't there c) isn't it d) has there

12 ...., isn't it?
a) It's not your dog b) It's very hot in the Sahara
c) This isn't Ahmed d) It's never cold in Aswan

13 ...., aren't I?
a) I'm not your English teacher b) He is your English teacher
c) I'm your English teacher d) You're my English teacher

14 He correctly defined the terms. The answer sounded ....
a) corrective b) correction c) correctly d) correct

15 You must send payments .... We deal on a strict cash basis.
a) regularity b) regularly c) regular d) regularisation

16 He did not pass the course as .... as he thought he would.
a) easily b) easy c) easier d) easiest

17 The footballer played .... today. He scored three goals!
a) brilliance b) brilliant c) brilliantly d) brilliancy

18 Although he arrived an hour ...., he started work immediately.
a) late b) lately c) a late d) latest

19 My brother is a firefighter. He's very ....
a) braver b) bravery c) bravely d) brave

20 At the end of the school year, some students try .... to make up for the wasted time.
a) hardly b) hard c) hardness d) harden

21 Don't touch the machine. It switches itself off ....
a) automatics b) automatical c) automatic d) automatically

22 As there was much time, we walked .... to school.
a) a slow b) slow c) slowly d) slowing

23 He was a very .... person. He acted very ....
a) sensibly/ sensibly b) sensible/ sensibly
c) sensibly/ sensible d) sensible/ sensible

24 Which one of the following is grammatically correct?
a) The teachers in my school are friendly.
b) The teachers in my school treat us friendly.
c) The teachers in my school treat us in a friend way.
d) The teachers in my school treat us friendlier.

25 Which one of the following is correctly structured?
a) She looked happily last week.
b) She looked happy last week.
c) She looked happy at the children.
d) She looked happiness at the children.

26 You're an .... and punctual worker; the manager is going to promote you. *(Longman)*
a) actively b) activate c) action d) active

27 Lions aren't tame animals, ...? *(Longman)*
a) isn't it b) are they c) aren't they d) don't they

28 He'd come to the party if I invited him, ...? *(Longman)*
a) don't I b) hadn't he c) didn't I d) wouldn't he

29 This food tastes ....; you can share the meal with me. *(Longman)*
a) delicious b) deliciously c) badly d) bad

30 He performs ....; he is a .... performer. *(Longman)*
a) surprising / surprising b) surprisingly / surprisingly
c) surprisingly / surprising d) surprising / surprisingly

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 My father doesn't like horror films saying that they can make people nervous. The antonym of the word "horror" is ....
a) fear b) terror c) calmness d) sorrow

2 The Japanese film *"The Seven Samurai"* was .... in Hollywood as *"The Magnificent Seven"*.
a) remade b) derived c) depicted d) foretold

3 Don't miss the class tomorrow – we're having a/an .... of chapters three and four.
a) research b) review c) article d) inspection

4 The old hotel is .... of buildings built during the late 19th century.
a) genuine b) original c) fake d) typical

5 A/An .... is responsible for everything on making a film.
a) director b) officer c) employee d) clerk

6 Tamer Hosny, the famous singer is famous for his exciting live concert ....
a) conferences b) intentions c) invitations d) performances

7 The .... in the new animation film were so amazing that all the audience were very impressed.
a) sights b) reviews c) visuals d) rehearsals

8 The final .... of the report deleted some important points.
a) scene b) version c) site d) image

9 The study .... the link between poverty and malnutrition سوء التغذية saying it is clear.
a) hides b) develops c) invents d) demonstrates

10 There were some interesting incidents in the .... about President Sadat.
a) horror b) documentary c) musical d) historian

11 The .... of the plane instructed everyone to remain seated.
a) crew b) staff c) cast d) flock

12 My brother is fond of .... films which are full of fights or racing scenes.
a) comic b) romantic c) historical d) action

13 It was .... of you to frighten the poor boy like that.
a) friendly b) heartedly c) gentle d) cruel

14 *"Romeo and Juliet"* is thought to be one of the most .... plays of all times.
a) terror b) romantic c) comic d) collaborative

15 Experts believe that the painting is not ...., but it is a brilliant copy.
a) fake b) subordinate c) genuine d) wonderful

Language

16 Somebody is knocking at the door, ...?
a) is it b) isn't it c) are they d) aren't they

17 You think that Ali will come soon, but you aren't sure, ...?
a) don't you b) aren't you c) will he d) do you

18 Give Ahmed this camera tomorrow, ...?
a) don't you b) will you c) do you d) aren't you

19 There's a fly in your soup, ...?
a) is it b) is there c) isn't there d) isn't it

20 Pass me the salt, ...?
a) do you b) aren't I c) aren't you d) won't you

21 They used to live in the New Valley, ... they?
a) didn't b) aren't c) don't d) did

22 Somebody has taken my dictionary, ...?
a) hasn't one b) haven't they c) don't they d) doesn't he

23 Which one of the following is grammatically incorrect?
a) Ali is never lucky, is he? b) Ali is always lucky, isn't he?
c) Ali is never unlucky, is he? d) Ali is always unlucky, is he?

24 My father was .... respected by those who worked with him.
a) great b) greatness c) greatly d) greatest

25 Train services have been .... affected by the heavy snow.
a) bit b) a very c) extreme d) seriously

26 The witness .... recounted everything that had happened during the robbery.
a) accurately b) accurate c) accurateness d) accrete

27 The injured victims of the fire were .... taken to hospital.
a) quick b) quickly c) quickness d) quicker

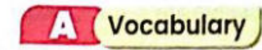
28 The cost of living has risen .... these days all over the world.
a) dramatic b) dramatical c) dramatically d) drama

29 All my friends speak ....
a) fluently English b) fluent English
c) English more fluent d) English fluent

30 As he was found .... the scene of the robbery with a gun in his hand, he was arrested.
a) nearest b) nearing c) nearly d) near



Part (2)
Lessons 3 & 4



Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

animated (adj)	معروض برسوم متحركة	harness (v) (ed)*	يستغل/يستخدم
annoying (adj)	مزعج	hilarious (adj)	مرح/مضحك جداً
awful (adj)	فظيع/سيئ جداً	island (n)	جزيرة
boring (adj)	ممل	Malawi (n)	مالاوى (بلد إفريقى)
carefully (adv)	بحرص	partner (n)	شريك
chase (n) (v) (d)	مطاردة/يطارد	personally (adv)	شخصياً
cheerful (adj)	مرح/مبتهج	politely (adv)	بطريقة مهذبة
ending (n)	نهاية	popular (adj)	شائع/محبوب
fight (n) (v)	قتال/يقاتل	right (n) (adj)	حق/على صواب
generally (adv)	بشكل عام	silly (adj)	سخيف
gun (n)	سلاح نارى/مسدس	windmill (n)	طاحونة هوائية

*Man could harness the power of waterfalls to generate electricity.

Workbook Vocabulary

burning (adj)	محترق	realise (v) (d)	يدرك
equipment (n)	معدات	scenery (n)	مناظر طبيعية
mistake (n)	خطأ	stupid (adj)	غبى
owner (n)	مالك	war (n)	حرب
prefer (v) (red)	يفضل		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Most films for kids under twelve are .... rather than live-action.
a) animated b) romantic
c) devastated d) delivered

2 There is a great deal of increasing interest in .... the wind and waves as new sources of energy.
a) discovering b) harnessing
c) exploring d) expiring

3 A .... is a building or structure with parts that turn around, used for producing electrical power or crushing grain.
a) waterfall b) workshop c) windmill d) panel

4 We preferred to drive to Fayoum to enjoy the .... on the way.
a) site b) treasury c) audience d) scenery

5 Many people enjoyed the .... BBC comedy series *"Absolutely Fabulous"*.
a) serious b) hilarious
c) dangerous d) romantic

6 The manager finally .... the scope of the problem when the sales decreased sharply.
a) realised b) achieved
c) denied d) respired

7 The film was very dull and terribly .... I regretted wasting my time on it.
a) exciting b) exotic
c) boring d) marvellous

8 If you like high-speed car ...., you should watch *"Fast and Furious"* series.
a) chases b) shapes c) scripts d) vogues

9 I left my keys at home, which was a very .... thing to do.
a) fantastic b) clever c) silly d) smart

10 Dr El Baz is .... regarded as the world's greatest expert in remote sensing.
a) hatefully b) privately c) awfully d) generally

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

all the time	طوال الوقت	have the right to	لديه الحق أن
couldn't stop laughing	لم أستطع التوقف عن الضحك	make lots of mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء كثيرة
get married	يتزوج	tell a story	يحكي قصة
hostile to	عدائي/معادٍ لـ	terrible at	فظيع في
look like	يشبه	think about	يفكر في
opinion about	رأي عن	travel to	يسافر إلى

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
animate	يصور برسوم	animation	رسوم متحركة	animated	معروض برسوم متحركة
annoy	يزعج	annoyance	إزعاج	annoying* annoyed	مزعج منزعج
burn	يحرق	burn	حرق	burning	محترق
prefer	يفضل	preference	تفضيل	preferred	مفضل
realise	يدرك	realisation	إدراك	realistic	حقيقي/واقعي

- The journalist annoyed the speaker with too many questions.
- Salim's silly jokes caused great annoyance to his colleagues.
- That noise is very annoying. I can't go on with my studies.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
annoying (adj)	مزعج	disturbing/irritating	agreeable/pleasant	مفضل/سار
cheerful (adj)	مرح/مبتهج	joyful/merry	depressed/gloomy	مكتئب
harness (v)	يسخر/يستخدم	exploit/use/utilise	consume neglect	يستهلك يهمل
hilarious (adj)	مرح/مضحك جدا	humorous/funny	serious/tragic	جاد/درامي
mistake (n)	خطأ	error/misunderstanding	correction/accuracy	تصحيح/دقة

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We must harness the skill and creativity of our workforce. The verb "harness" is the opposite of ....
   a) exploit b) neglect c) defy d) trust
2. People .... a right to know the truth about the economic situation in their country.
   a) have b) do c) gave d) missed
3. We realised a small profit on the sale of the house. The adjective of the verb "realise" is ....
   a) realises b) realisation c) realistic d) reality
4. She was a cheerful and agreeable companion. The synonym of the adjective "cheerful" is ....
   a) developed b) gloomy c) depressed d) joyful
5. I think it is acceptable for a nursery student to .... lots of mistakes in his first year.
   a) correct b) make c) took d) explored
6. It is better to admit your mistake and apologise. The noun "mistake" is the antonym of ....
   a) error b) misunderstanding
   c) credit d) correction

Reading Text (1)

I saw a great film last night. It was called *'The Boy who Harnessed[1] the Wind'*. It was about a boy in Malawi who built a windmill[2] and helped his village get water. I thought it had a really powerful message about positive thinking and never giving up.



(1) يسخر
(2) طاحونة هوائية
(3) مصور برسوم متحركة

I also saw *'Toy Story 4'*, which was great fun. It's a brilliant animated[3] film, and personally, I think that these kinds of films always make people feel good. They're not too long and the stories always have a happy ending.

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

1) If you like musicals, then you'll love the film *"We met in Greece"*. It's about a man who travels to a Greek island and meets the daughter of a hotel owner[1].
2) At first, the hotel owner is very hostile to the man, but when he realises[2] he's both kind and talented, he lets his daughter marry him. Then it also becomes a romantic story!
3) The music is brilliant and the scenery[3] on the island is beautiful. I would definitely recommend this film.

(1) مالك
(2) يدرك
(3) مناظر طبيعية
(4) مرح/مضحك
(5) مزعج

1) Some comedies are hilarious[4], but I didn't think that "visit to a farm" was funny at all. It's about a young man from the city who goes to help on his uncle's farm one summer.
2) The young man is terrible at farming, and makes lots of mistakes all the time. I'm not sure why this was supposed to be funny. Personally, I thought the man was annoying[5]!
3) The farmer is a kind man and some of the acting was quite good, but most of the film was too stupid to enjoy. I would not recommend this film.

Listening Text

Ramy : What kinds of film do you like watching, Dareen? Romantic ones, like Mum?

Dareen : Not really, most of them are a bit silly[1]. I love comedies, especially the old ones, they make me laugh. I always feel happy afterwards. What about you, Tamer?

Tamer : My favourite films are action films. They're really exciting and I love all the car chases[2] and gun[3] fights!

Dareen : Really? I think most of them are really boring[4] and they don't usually have a good story either.

Tamer : True, but I don't mind that. It's all about the action for me. You like action films too don't you, Ramy?

Ramy : Some, but I agree with Dareen that they're generally[5] not very interesting. I don't mind some science fiction films, but I enjoy horror films best.

Dareen : Aren't you scared?

Ramy : Yes, but that's what I like about them.

(1) سخيف
(2) مطاردات
(3) سلاح ناري
(4) ممل
(5) بشكل عام

Video Script

After watching a great film, most people don't think about the work that went into making it.

It can take anywhere between a year and five years to create a Hollywood-style[1] film, and it is a lot of hard work. Every film starts with a story and the writers produce a script[2] with the words the actors need to say. Once the story has been approved [3], the producers start working. They find the money to pay for the film, find the director and choose the actors.

Once the director and the actors have been hired and locations [4] found, the filming begins. This can take from a few weeks to several months to complete. It can take this long because some actors may not be available on certain[5] days, the locations may have to change, or bad weather may mean filming can't happen.

When the filming has finished, the editors get to work, taking all the film that has been made and putting it into the correct order. Surprisingly, films are rarely filmed[6] in the correct order, the last scene might be filmed first and the middle of the film created last. Editors also add the special effects[7] to the film.

Finally, once the film has been made, the music is added. This is very important as a great soundtrack[8] can make the difference between a film being a success or a disaster.

(1) اسلوب
(2) سيناريو/نسخة حوار
(3) يوافق
(4) مواقع تصوير
(5) محدد
(6) يصور فيلمًا
(7) مؤثرات خاصة
(8) تسجيل صوتى



0:00

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

realise ١ - يدرك (يعرف أو يفهم شيئًا) ٢ - يحقق (شيئًا كان يتمناه)	- Do you realise you're an hour late? - She never realised her ambition of winning an Olympic gold medal.
recognise ١ - يتعرف على (يعرف شخصًا أو شيئًا لرؤيته أو سماعه أو المرور به من قبل) ٢ - يقبل ويعرف أهمية شيء	- I didn't recognise you in your uniform. - The new doctor tried to get his work recognised by the medical profession.

2

prefer

prefer + (v-ing/noun) .... to + (v-ing/noun) — يفضّل .... عن ....

(would) prefer + to + inf. .... rather than + inf. — يفضّل أن .... عن أن ....

- He prefers watching tennis to playing it.
- I'd prefer to stay at home rather than go out.
- I prefer English to physics.

3

most

- Love is what the children need most.
- The Pyramids at Giza are the most interesting monuments for many tourists.

تعبر عن التفضيل بمعنى (أكثر/الأكثر) و قد يتبعها صفة.

- Most people think of robots as machines that look like people.
- Most business meetings are held at the company's headquarters.

تأتى بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية بشكل عام ويتبعها اسم جمع.

- Most of the people who attended the party brought me presents.
- My cousin spent most of his life abroad.

تأتى بمعنى معظم للتعبير عن الأغلبية من عدد أو شىء محدد ويتبعها حرف الجر (of) مع اسم مفرد أو جمع.

4

equipment معدات (أجهزة أو آلات تستخدم لغرض ما)	We are raising money for equipment for our playgroup.
kit طاقم أدوات (مجموعة من الأدوات تستخدم لغرض ما مثل الخياطة)	You can buy a special kit for sewing clothes here.
apparatus جهاز (آلة او أداة تستخدم لغرض فنى مثل الطب والعلم)	This experiment can be performed using the apparatus shown in the diagram.

5

mistake خطأ (شئ خاطئ فى حسابات أو كتابة)	The article was full of spelling mistakes.
flaw عيب (خطأ فى نظام أو وجهة نظر تجعله غير مفيد أو غير فعال)	Your argument has a fundamental flaw.
fault خطأ/خلل (مشكلة فى آلة أو تصميم أو نظام يسبب ضررا)	The fire was caused by an electrical fault.
defect عيب/خلل (مشكلة فى منتج أو آلة ناتج عن خطأ فى التصنيع أو التصميم)	Machines are usually tested for defects before they are sold.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you buy an expensive piece of ...., you need to insure it.
   a) kit b) device
   c) equipment d) apparatus
2. When he watched the TV show, he .... he'd seen it before.
   a) realised b) recognised
   c) organised d) forgot
3. Grandfather always prefers .... by train saying that it is the safest way.
   a) travel b) to travelling
   c) travelling d) travelled
4. .... the boys I know prefer football to any other game.
   a) Most b) Most of
   c) Mostly d) The most
5. The rocket launch was delayed because of a technical .... which was harmful.
   a) mistake b) flow
   c) defect d) fault





Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. By law, patients have a .... to keep their medical records confidential.
   a) right b) duty c) race d) destiny
2. Today, modern versions of ...., called wind turbines, are used to create electricity.
   a) waterfalls b) windmills c) panels d) stations
3. Most companies are .... technology to provide better service to their customers.
   a) containing b) wasting c) consuming d) harnessing
4. This TV show is especially .... among women as most of the guests are top chefs.
   a) hateful b) detesting c) popular d) affecting
5. Egypt and Emirates have become close trading .... in the last few years.
   a) servants b) partners c) heroes d) champions
6. Some people make the fatal .... of giving their bank details to criminals.
   a) mistake b) signal c) crime d) mark
7. For a complete change of ...., we decided to take a ferry out to one of the islands.
   a) sense b) flavour c) scenery d) scent
8. *"Beauty and the Beast"* was the first .... film ever nominated for a 'Best Picture Oscar'.
   a) allied b) historical c) apparent d) animated
9. After driving for an hour on the desert road, I suddenly .... that I was lost.
   a) recognised b) realised c) replied d) puzzled
10. All world countries should resolve their conflicts without resorting to ....
    a) tournament b) race c) war d) conference
11. The local charity is supplying new play .... for the playground at the sports centre.
    a) equipment b) software c) design d) machine
12. The restaurant's previous .... was unable to make a profit, so he sold it.
    a) consumer b) owner c) robber d) prisoner

13 *"Robinson Crusoe"* is a novel about a sailor who was shipwrecked تحطمت سفينته on a desert .... near South America.

a) beach b) road c) island d) village

14 On the horizon, a huge cloud of smoke from .... oil tanks stretched across the sky.

a) wealthy b) luxurious c) decorated d) burning

15 That noise is very annoying. The synonym of the adjective "annoying" is ....

a) helpful b) disturbing c) romantic d) funny

16 Car buyers have recently shown a growing .... for smaller vehicles.

a) prefer b) preferred c) preference d) preferable

17 As the athlete always keeps practising, the coach says that he is improving .... the time.

a) all b) in c) for d) both

18 Her most .... habit was eating with her mouth open.

a) annoy b) annoyance c) annoying d) annoyed

19 Many of the employees were hostile .... the idea of closing the factory.

a) in b) to c) at d) from

20 She greeted us with a cheerful smile. The adjective "cheerful" is the opposite of the adjective "..................".

a) merry b) terrible c) funny d) gloomy

21 Leaving school so young was the biggest mistake of my life. The noun "mistake" is similar in meaning to the noun "..................".

a) crime b) state c) error d) correction

22 My little sister thinks that *"Tom and Jerry"* cartoons are the most hilarious. The antonym of the word "hilarious" is ....

a) funny b) irritable c) hopeful d) serious

23 Everyone should have the right .... freedom of expression.

a) to b) in c) out d) up

24 A .... is a building or structure with parts that turn around in the wind, used for producing electrical power or crushing grain. *(Longman)*

a) windmill b) lighthouse c) tower d) factory

25 Turn down the music, please; it's very .... *(Longman)*

a) pleasant b) relieving c) annoying d) annoyed

B Language

Tag questions

لغة المحادثات لها طبيعة خاصة تعتمد على الموقف وطبيعة السؤال ومنها:

١) إذا كانت الجملة التى نريد تأكيدها مثبتة فالإجابة بـ Yes هى الموافقة و No للرفض مثل:

You like chemistry, don't you?

- Yes, I do. موافقة - No, I don't. رفض

٢) إذا كانت الجملة التى نريد تأكيدها منفية فالإجابة بـ No هى الموافقة و Yes للرفض مثل:

You don't like chemistry, do you?

- No, I don't. It's very difficult. موافقة

- Yes, I do. I like it and I find it very easy. رفض

٣) يمكن أن يكون السؤال آخر الجملة الخبرية موجهًا إلى المخاطب وليس عائدًا على الجملة الأولى مثل:

A) I love comedy films, don't you?

B) Yes, I do. I like watching comedy films with my family. We can all laugh together.

السؤال هنا يعود على المخاطب وليس على المتكلم، وهذا لا يصلح إلا فى المحادثات.

٤) نبرة الصوت intonation ترتفع وتنخفض فى السؤال حسب طبيعة السؤال وهذا لا يظهر بالطبع فى الكتابة ولكن يظهر فى الحديث الشفهى:

- عندما يكون المتكلم متأكدًا من صحة الجملة تنخفض نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضح ذلك.

He's your brother, isn't he?

- عندما يسأل المتكلم عن شىء يريد التأكد منه ترتفع نبرة صوته وتتبعها حركة جسد توضح ذلك.

You eat meat, don't you?

٥) عندما تكون has و have للملكية يكون النفى بـ hasn't/haven't وعندما تكون بمعنى آخر نستخدم v. to do.

He has a new car, hasn't he?

He has lunch at 3 pm every day, doesn't he?

٦) فى الاستنتاج الفعل العائد على must have + P.P. هو mustn't.

Hesham must have won the gold medal, mustn't he?

Adjectives and adverbs

بالإضافة إلى وصف الفعل والصفة فإن الحال يصف أيضًا الحال مثله والجملة:

They started the race slowly.	الحال يصف الفعل
He is an incredibly amazing cook.	الحال يصف الصفة
He cooks really amazingly. (very well)	الحال يصف الحال
Interestingly, he won the first medal.	الحال يصف الجملة

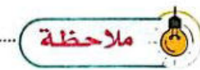
- تستخدم الظروف التالية قبل الصفات الشديدة بمعنى جدًا أما فى الصفات العادية فنستخدم (very) .

(terribly – absolutely – awfully – really – completely – totally – awfully – pretty – entirely – incredibly)

- Mr Ahmed is a **very** good teacher.
- Mr Ahmed is an **absolutely** amazing teacher.

ومن أمثلة الصفات العادية والشديدة ما يلى:

Ordinary	Extreme	Ordinary	Extreme
big	enormous/huge	tired	exhausted منهك
bad	awful/terrible فظيع	frightened	terrified هلع
angry	furious حانق	happy	delighted مُغتبِط
surprised مندهش	amazed منهول	cold	freezing متجمد
clean	spotless نظيف جدًا	good	wonderful, excellent ممتاز
crowded مزدحم	packed مُكتَظ	hot	boiling مُغتاظ/حانِق
hungry	starving يَموت جوعًا	old	ancient عتيق
interesting	fascinating خَلَّاب	small	tiny دقِيق
clever	brilliant بارِع	pretty	gorgeous جَذَّاب	رائع



- هناك بعض الظروف التى تُستخدم مع الصفات والظروف الأخرى:

almost تقريبًا	partly إلى حد ما/جُزئيًا	a lot/much جدًا	a little قليل
enough بدرجة كافية	too أكثر من اللازم/جدًا	just فَقَط/تَقريبًا/بِصُعُوبَة	a bit قليل

- تستخدم بعض الظروف قبل الفعل.

- The earthquake **completely** destroyed the area.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There won't be any trouble, ...?
   a) do there b) will not there
   c) will there d) wasn't there
2. They have to ask somebody else to help them, ...?
   a) do they b) haven't they
   c) have they d) don't they
3. The meeting was very .... organised. Most members were annoyed.
   a) badly b) careful
   c) carefully d) bad
4. That was a .... film – what a waste of money!
   a) terrified b) terrible
   c) terribly d) terrific
5. They were .... delighted with the service in this hotel.
   a) very b) a bit
   c) absolutely d) extreme

Extra Points

تنقسم الأحوال التى تصف الفعل إلى:

طريقة (manner) تجيب عن السؤال بـ How.

- They are **eagerly** بلهفة/بِشَوق waiting for the e-mail.

مكان (place) تجيب عن السؤال بـ Where.

- There is a cinema **nearby** بالقُرب.

زمن (time) تجيب عن السؤال بـ When.

- I'll meet you **tomorrow**.

تكرار (frequency) تجيب عن السؤال بـ How often

- She is **always** ready to help. He **often** complains about the salary.

ملحوظة

إذا أتى اثنان أو أكثر من الأحوال يكون الترتيب كالآتى:

- (manner + place + time).
  Ali is studying **quietly in his room now**.

إذا أتى فى الجملة فعل من أفعال الحركة مثل go/come/leave يكون الترتيب كالآتى:

- (place + manner + time).
  He came **to work by bus this morning**.



Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Help your brother with his homework, ...?
   a) isn't he b) don't you c) shan't you d) will you
2. You have read all Charles Dickens' novels, ...?
   a) didn't you b) haven't you c) have you d) don't you
3. He never thought what might come out of it, ...?
   a) hasn't he b) didn't he c) did he d) won't he
4. Let's have a morning walk, ... we?
   a) shall b) haven't c) don't d) should
5. He used to be a famous doctor, ... he?
   a) wasn't b) didn't c) wouldn't d) weren't
6. They should have been informed long before his arrival, ... they?
   a) mustn't b) didn't c) needn't d) shouldn't
7. Hassan has been painting the walls since morning, ... he?
   a) has b) doesn't c) hasn't d) does
8. The slide show was fantastic, ... it?
   a) wasn't b) isn't c) didn't d) was
9. She rarely cooks meat, ... she?
   a) has b) doesn't c) does d) hasn't
10. ...., could she?
    a) The band couldn't sing well b) Nour couldn't sing well
    c) Shady couldn't sing well d) Shady could sing well
11. ...., don't they?
    a) They often talk to their neighbours
    b) They don't often talk to their neighbours
    c) We often talk to our neighbours d) We often talk to their neighbours
12. A: I'm late, aren't I? B: .... You are just on time.
    a) Yes, you aren't b) Yes, you are c) No, you aren't d) No, you are
13. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
    a) He works hard. b) He works hardly.
    c) He arrived lately at the party. d) The bird flew highly in the sky.
14. Sara thought that the film was .... interesting.
    a) terribly b) extremely c) extreme d) absolute
15. I'm going to .... next term, because the exams are getting closer.
    a) studying hard b) study hardly c) hardly study d) study hard
16. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
    a) Yasser has a good chance to win the game.
    b) Yasser has a well chance to win the game.
    c) Yasser has a better chance to win the game than others.
    d) Yasser has the best chance to win the game.
17. The young woman spoke to us ....
    a) mother b) motherly c) in a motherly way d) motherhood
18. There was a .... end to the film, but I won't tell you what happened!
    a) surprise b) surprised c) surprisingly d) surprising
19. Mona did .... in her exam. She was ill that day.
    a) terrible b) terribly c) good d) well
20. We could walk .... around the aircraft during the flight.
    a) free b) freedom c) freeing d) freely
21. The teacher read my essay and checked everything I had written very ....
    a) carefully b) careful c) care d) carefulness
22. In 2015, Messi was .... famous and had scored most of the goals for his team.
    a) a bit b) incredibly c) rather d) a little
23. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
    a) I speak English fluently now. b) I speak fluent English now.
    c) I speak fluently English now.
    d) I speak English more fluently now than last year.
24. Which sentence is correctly structured?
    a) The food looked perfectly good to me. b) The food looked perfectly well to me.
    c) The food looked perfect well to me. d) The food looked perfect good to me.
25. Hany doesn't know how to cook, does he?
    a) Yes, he doesn't. He hates cooking. b) No, he doesn't. It isn't one of his interests.
    c) No, he does. He likes cooking. d) Yes, he doesn't, but he is trying to learn.
26. Everyone is ready for the exam, ...? (Longman)
    a) aren't they b) isn't he c) are they d) isn't she
27. I don't think Tamer is angry, ...? (Longman)
    a) don't I b) isn't he c) do I d) is he
28. Gaber is a very active worker; he .... all the time. (Longman)
    a) works hard b) hardly works c) works hardly d) a hard worker
29. After he had finished his work, she contacted him, ...? (Longman)
    a) hadn't he b) didn't she c) hadn't she d) didn't he
30. Which of the following is structurally incorrect? (Longman)
    a) Hatim is a fast runner. b) This soup smells badly.
    c) You should speak politely with others. d) What a wonderful book!

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 This make-up .... can be ordered more cheaply online.
a) equipment b) kit c) apparatus d) press

2 For centuries, traditional .... used the wind to drive machinery for grinding wheat into flour.
a) waterfalls b) routes c) windmills d) recipes

3 You're .... to be annoyed - you've been treated by the sales assistants very badly.
a) right b) moral c) wrong d) rightly

4 Please, stop making that noise—it's getting annoying. The antonym of the adjective "annoying" is ....
a) irritating b) terrible c) disturbing d) pleasant

5 The teacher found two spelling .... in the student's essay, so he wasn't given top marks.
a) mistakes b) deeds c) signs d) marks

6 It's a good idea that they didn't go camping last weekend - the weather was ....
a) fabulous b) awful c) exciting d) soothing

7 My grandfather fought in the 6th of October .... that is one of the greatest events in our history.
a) tournament b) race c) war d) conference

8 The manager blamed me .... for causing the problem with the customer.
a) faintly b) personally c) gradually d) funnily

9 Tourists come to Hurghada to enjoy water sports and the beautiful ....
a) site b) treasury c) audience d) scenery

10 My friends thought that the film by Henidi was so .... that they couldn't stop laughing.
a) serious b) hilarious c) dangerous d) romantic

11 I couldn't .... my friend Munir who has just returned home from his long stay in Europe.
a) realise b) achieve c) recognise d) respire

12 Solar panels enable us to .... the power of the sun to generate electricity.
a) discover b) harness c) explore d) expire

13 *The Lion King* was the first .... film to make profits of more than one hundred million dollars in its time.
a) bad b) historical c) apparent d) animated

14 A successful businessman must keep good relationships with his customers, employees and business ....
a) partners b) enemies c) judges d) applicants

15 Tea and coffee are considered the most .... drinks all over the world.
a) hateful b) detesting c) popular d) affecting

Language

16 Don't talk to Nabil during the lesson, ... you?
a) don't b) do c) won't d) will

17 Nothing can be done at this moment, ...?
a) can it b) can they c) can't it d) can't they

18 You have never seen that film before, ... you?
a) do b) have c) haven't d) don't

19 Hala thinks that the film will be interesting, ...?
a) won't she b) doesn't it c) won't it d) does it

20 A: The manner of addressing people in Britain is quite different from ours, ...?
B: Yes, it is. You're right.
a) isn't it b) isn't there c) it is d) is it

21 The children haven't finished yet, ... they?
a) haven't b) have c) do d) don't

22 We must be at school at 8 o'clock, ... we?
a) aren't b) don't c) needn't d) mustn't

23 ...., aren't they?
a) Omar and I are from Maadi
b) Omar and Hazem aren't from Assuit
c) Everyone in your class is working hard
d) Your parents are never lazy

24 His arm was so .... injured that he couldn't play anymore.
a) bad b) lately c) badly d) hardly

25 I'm feeling .... thirsty.
a) really b) fantastically c) extreme d) terrible

26 The children are very .... What are they doing?
a) quietness b) quiet c) quietly d) quieter

27 When I play football indoors, I feel .... exhausted.
a) very b) a little c) a bit d) absolutely

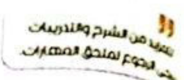
28 It's .... hot in the desert in August, sometimes up to 50°C.
a) rather b) quite c) extremely d) slightly

29 He was careful when he wrote the report to his boss. This means: ....
a) He was carefully when he wrote the report to his boss.
b) He carefully wrote the report to his boss.
c) He carefully when he wrote the report to his boss.
d) He careful wrote the report to his boss.

30 ...., Omar joined the basketball team despite being short.
a) Badly b) Surprisingly c) Terribly d) Awfully






لمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



Film review

- Write about a film. It can be a film you liked very much or didn't like at all.
  - Introduce the film.
  - Say if you would or would not recommend the film and why.
  - Say what happens in the film.
  - Try to include different adjectives and adverbs.

1) If you like action film, then you'll love the film Cazablanca. It's about a gang of three companions who worked in illegal acts and their struggle for a huge sum of diamond which was stolen. The events of the film are divided between Egypt and Morocco. The main actors Amir Karara, Amr Abdel Gileel and Eiad Nassar are all marvellous. Although the film is full of illegal acts, the atmosphere and action scenes are amazing. I would recommend this film for people who like excitement and adventure.

2) Some comedies are hilarious, but I didn't think that "El Harb El Alamia El Talta" "The Third World War" was funny at all! It's about a young man who lives near a wax museum where statues come alive at night. It is an imitation of an American film. The events are all farfetched, the script is not nice and acting is exaggerating. I really regret wasting my time on this film and I wouldn't recommend it to anyone.

Practice



1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Dana Miller is a bus driver. She drives a bus in the city of Philadelphia. She starts work at 10:00 at night and gets off at 6:00 in the morning. In the world of bus driving, this is sometimes called third shift[1]. Dana has been driving a bus for 15 years. She started when she was 23 years old. She loves her job most of the time. She gets to see the beautiful city from her seat. She gets to meet all kinds of people. There is the guitar player. He lugs[2] his heavy guitar on the bus every Friday night. He plays at a nightspot[3] downtown. People call him Get Low. That is because he likes to play the guitar on his knees. If the bus is not too crowded, Get Low plays in the back of the bus. The bus is seldom crowded at night. He likes to warm up on the bus before shows. There is the woman who works at the pretzel factory. Each day the "Pretzel Lady" brings Dana a bag of fresh, soft pretzels[4]. They fill the bus with a wonderful smell! Sometimes Dana's job is hard. It is hard when Dana sees people down on their luck. One time, a young woman left her sleeping baby on the bus. There was a note on the baby's blanket asking for help. Dana had to call the police. Another time, a teenaged boy stole money from Dana on the bus. He had a fake gun. Dana thought it was real. She was very scared. Occasionally[5], driving the bus can be scary. But most of the time, driving the bus is great.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How old is Dana?
   a) 15. b) 23. c) 38. d) 39.
2. How long is Dana's shift?
   a) 6 hours. b) 8 hours. c) 10 hours. d) 12 hours.
3. Who gives Dana pretzels?
   a) The guitar player. b) The teenager.
   c) The young mom. d) The woman who works at the factory.
4. The main reason Get Low rides the bus is because ....
   a) he needs to get to a show b) he likes to see the city
   c) he enjoys talking to Dana d) he likes to play the guitar there
5. Dana drives the bus ....
   a) in the morning b) during rush hours
   c) around Philadelphia d) to help people at night
6. The guitar player is called Get Low because he ....
   a) plays at night b) likes to play on his knees
   c) plays when the bus is crowded d) plays in the back of the bus



(1) وردية (2) يسحب (3) ملهى ليلي (4) قطع بسكويت مملحة (5) من وقت إلى آخر

7 Dana loves her job because she ....

a) meets all kinds of people
b) gets pretzels
c) can call the police
d) has got a bus

8 The antonym of the word "scared" is "...............".

a) frightened
b) terrified
c) brave
d) anxious

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Many young men and women are fond of watching horror and action films. However, these types of films can affect them psychologically and socially.

a) كثير من الشباب رجالًا ونساء مغرمون بمشاهدة أفلام الرعب وأفلام الحركة ومع ذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام يؤثر عليهم نفسيًا واجتماعيًا.

b) كثير من الرجال والنساء غير مغرمين برؤية أفلام الرعب وأفلام الحركة ولكن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام لا تؤثر عليهم نفسيا واجتماعيا.

c) يغرم كثير من الرجال والنساء الصغار بمشاهدة أفلام الرعب وأفلام الكوميديا ولذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام يؤثر عليهم نفسيًا واجتماعيًا.

d) يغرم كثير من الرجال والنساء الصغار بالمشاركة فى أفلام المغامرات وأفلام الحركة ومع ذلك فإن هذه الأنواع من الأفلام غير مؤثرة عليهم نفسيًا واجتماعيًا.

2 Egypt can only reach an outstanding position among countries with hard work and production. Everyone should have sincere intentions and a strong will. The more effort we exert, the more advanced Egypt will be.

a) تستطيع مصر أن تصل إلى مكانة مميزة بين القارات بالعمل الجيد والإنتاج ويجب أن يكون لكل شخص النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما بذلنا مجهودًا أكثر تقدمت مصر.

b) يمكن لمصر أن تصل إلى مكانة مهمة بين الدول عن طريق العمل الصعب والإنتاج وينبغى أن يكون لكل فرد الطموح الصادق والإرادة القوية فكلما بذلنا مجهودًا أقل تقدمت مصر.

c) بإمكان مصر أن تصل لمكانة مميزة بين الدول بالعمل الجاد والإنتاج ويجب أن يكون لكل فرد النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما بذلنا مجهودًا أكثر تقدمت مصر.

d) من الممكن أن تصل مصر لمكانة مختلفة بين الدول بالعمل الصعب والمنتجات ويجب أن يكون لكل فرد النية الصادقة والإرادة القوية وكلما بذلنا مجهودًا أكثر كانت مصر متقدمة.

3 To solve the problem of unemployment, young people should take training that will allow them to get several kinds of jobs and mainly studies connected with technology.

a) لكى نحل مشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بتدريب يسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع عديدة من الوظائف بالإضافة إلى دراسات متصلة بالتكنولوجيا.

b) لأننا لا نجد حلًا لمشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بتمارين تسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع متعددة من المهام بالإضافة إلى دراسات متصلة بالتكنولوجيا.

c) لإيجاد حل لمشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب باكتساب مهارات تسمح لهم بالحصول على أنواع متعددة من الوظائف بالإضافة إلى دراسات لها علاقة بالتكنولوجيا.

d) لكى نحل مشكلة البطالة يجب أن يقوم الشباب بتمارين تسمح لهم بإيجاد أنواع عديدة من المهام بالإضافة إلى دراسات ليس لها علاقة بالتكنولوجيا.

4 Many people fear change, so they oppose those who have different ideas. We should accept others' opinions and be tolerant towards them. We also may expect that our own opinions may not be absolutely right.

a) لا يخاف الكثيرون من التغيير لذلك لا يمانعون الذين لديهم أفكار مختلفة وعلينا أن نقبل آراء الآخرين ونكون متسامحين معهم كما قد نتوقع أن آراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

b) الخوف من التغيير لا يخشاه الكثيرون لذلك يوافقون الذين لديهم أفكار مختلفة وعلينا أن نقبل وجهات نظر الآخرين ونكون غير متسامحين معهم لأننا قد نتوقع أن آراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

c) يخشى الكثيرون التغيير لذلك يعارضون الذين لديهم أفكار مختلفة وعلينا أن نقبل آراء الآخرين ونكون متسامحين معهم كما قد نتوقع أن آراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

d) يخشى معظم الناس التغيير لذلك يعارضون الذين لديهم اقتراحات مميزة وعلينا أن نقبل آراء الآخرين ونكون متسامحين معهم كما قد نتنبأ أن آراءنا يمكن ألا تكون صحيحة بالتأكيد.

5 Nowadays, young people, don't know how to spend their leisure time profitably. They often waste their time keeping company with bad people who spoil their character.

a) فى الوقت الحاضر لا يعرف الشباب كيف يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة فهم أحيانًا يضيعون أوقاتهم بممارسة الأنشطة التى قد تضيع أوقاتهم بدون جدوى.

b) فى الوقت الحالى يعرف الشباب كيف يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة فهم غالبًا يقضون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الناس السيئين الذين يفسدون شخصيتهم.

c) فى الوقت الحاضر يعرف الشباب كيفية قضاء وقت الفراغ بطريقة مثمرة فهم أحيانًا لا يهدرون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الناس السيئين الذين يفسدون حياتهم.

d) فى الوقت الحالى لا يعرف الشباب كيف يقضون وقت الفراغ بطريقة مفيدة فهم غالبًا يهدرون أوقاتهم بمصادقة الأشخاص السيئين الذين يفسدون شخصيتهم.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 تمثل الدراما أهم وسائل قضاء وقت الفراغ لدى معظم الناس لذا يستخدمها المنتجون للوصول بمنتجاتهم إلى المستهلكين رغم التكلفة الكبيرة لهذه الإعلانات

a) Drama is not one of the most main ways of spending free time for some people. Therefore, sellers use it to get their products to consumers despite the high increase of these advertisements.

b) Drama is one of the most important means of spending free time for most people. Therefore, producers use it to get their products to consumers despite the high cost of these commercials.

c) Drama is one of the most important methods of enjoying spare time for most people. Hence, producers use it to get their production to customs despite the high cost of these announcements.

d) Drama is not one of the most main means of spending spare time for most people. Therefore, producers use it to get their produce to sellers in spite of the high rise of these commercials.

7 يعتقد الخبراء أن استخدام الشباب المفرط للتليفون المحمول يؤثر على صحتهم وممارستهم للهوايات المفيدة، كما يؤدى إلى تدهور علاقاتهم الاجتماعية بعائلتهم وأصدقائهم.

a) Experts believe that young people's overuse of mobile phones affects their health and practising useful hobbies. It may also lead to the deterioration of the social relations with their family and friends.

b) Scientists believe that young people's overdose of mobile phones ruins their health and practising useful habits. It can also lead to the decrease of the social connections with their family and friends.

c) Experts guess that young people's overuse of mobile phones influences their health and making useful hobbies. It may also lead to the deterioration of the social relations with their family and friends.

d) Scientists say that young people's overdose of mobile phones enhances their health and doing useful habits. It can also lead to the decrease of the social communications with their family and friends.

8 عُقدت الكثيـر من المؤتمـرات الدولية لمحاولة الوصول إلى حل لمشـكلة التغير المناخى، لكنها مازالت مشـكلة خطيرة تؤثر على الكثير من مجالات حياتنا.

a) Many international conferences were held to reach a solution for climate change. However, it is still a serious problem which affects many fields in our life.
b) Many international meetings were held to reach a solution for global warming. However, it is still a serious problem which affects some fields in our life.
c) Many national conferences were holding to give a solution for global warming. Though, it is still a main problem which affects many aspects of life.
d) Many national meetings were holding to find a solution for climate change. Although, it isn't still a serious problem which affects many aspects of life.

9 لقد أصبحت التكنولوجيـــا الحديثة جزءًا هاما من حياتنا اليومية، لا يمكننا الاســـتغناء عنها لدرجة أننا نتعجب كيف كان الناس يعيشون فى الماضى بدون الأجهزة الحديثة التى نستخدمها يوميًا.

a) Modern technology has become an important part of our everyday life which is so necessity that we are admired how people lived in the past without these technological tools that we use every day.
b) Modern technology is an important part of our everyday life which is so necessary that we admire how people now lived with these technological devices that we use every day.
c) Modern technology isn't an important part of our everyday life which is so necessity that we are puzzled how people now lived without these technological tools that we use every day.
d) Modern technology has become an important part of our everyday life which is so necessary that we are puzzled how people lived in the past without these technological devices that we use every day.

10 تُعتبر الكوارث الطبيعية كالزلازل والبراكين فرصة لاختبار وحدة وتماسك أى أمة، فكلما كان الأفراد متعاونين قلت الخسائر التى يمكن لهذه الكوارث أن تخلفها.

a) Natural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are a chance to test the unity and integrity of any nation. The more cooperative people are, the less the losses that these disasters can cause.
b) Interneuron disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are a choice to test the unity and integrity of any people. The more people are cooperative, the less the losses that these disasters can cause.
c) Unnatural disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes are an option to check the unity and integrity of any nation. The most cooperative people are, the least the losses that these disasters can cause.
d) Environmental disasters such as earthquakes and volcanoes have a chance to examine the unity and integrity of any country. The more people have been cooperative, the less the losses that these disasters can be caused.

3 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following: "The kind of stories or films you enjoy in your free time." Your name is Menna and your email address is: menna10@example.com. Your friend is Mariam and her email address is: mariam@example.com.

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.



Choose the correct answers from a, b, c or d:

1 My cousin joined the .... of a large fishing boat as he had always dreamed of working in the sea.
a) crew b) staff c) cast d) group

2 The children read the novel in its simplified ....
a) video b) version c) episode d) animation

3 At the university gate, you must present .... proof of your admittance.
a) correspondence b) forged
c) documentary d) competitive

4 The Nile passes through a rich variety of .... in some African countries.
a) site b) treasury c) audience d) scenery

5 The manager was openly hostile .... any kind of criticism of his project.
a) to b) for c) about d) in

6 This game is recommended for children aged 12 and above. The antonym of the word "recommend" is ....
a) propose b) depress c) create d) oppose

7 Don't eat the whole chicken, ...?
a) will I b) won't you c) will you d) won't I

8 They had a party last night, ...?
a) didn't they b) weren't they
c) did they d) hadn't they

9 I'm shorter than her, ...?
a) am I b) aren't I c) am not I d) don't I

10 Which sentence of the following is grammatically incorrect?
a) I'm really helpful, aren't I?
b) Stay here, won't you?
c) He rarely visits you, doesn't he?
d) Everybody is coming to the party, aren't they?

11 How .... can a sportsman run?
a) quick b) quicker c) quickest d) quickly

12 It's a pretty village, but there's .... anything to do here.

a) hardly b) harden c) hard d) hardship

13 We all love our teacher of English because he treats us ....

a) in a kindly way b) kindly

c) kind d) kindness

14 Kamal isn't a rash driver. He always drives ....

a) rashly b) rash

c) in a carefully way d) carefully

15 All heavenly religions call for peace and cooperation. The word "heavenly" is a/an ....

a) adjective b) adverb c) verb d) noun

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Generally, rainforests[1] are forests with high rainfall and a large number of different kinds of plants and animals. Human beings depend on rainforests in numerous[2] ways, but it would be wrong to suggest that they should be saved just because they are useful to humans.

Rainforests have been called the womb[3] of life because they are home to 50 – 90 % of the species[4] on earth, although tropical[5] forests cover only 12% of the land area of the Earth. It has been estimated[6] that, as a result of cutting down rainforest, at least 40 species are disappearing every day.

No one knows just how the rest of the global ecosystems[7] depend on rainforests, but we may find out in the next 30 to 50 years.

Rainforests are a vital[8] source of medicine and at least 25% of all modern drugs came originally from rainforests. Rainforests offer a veritable bounty[9] of foods. The Earth's climate is affected by rainforests. When trees are cut down and burnt or left to decompose[10], they release carbon dioxide into the air which is the main gas that causes global warming. Cutting down rainforests also changes the amount of rain that falls in an area. When rain falls on forests, the water is slowed down and absorbed[11] by trees and plants. When they are taken away, the water flows[12] quickly over the ground and this causes floods and erosion[13].

(1) الغابات (2) موفور/متعدد (3) رحم (4) صنف/فصيلة (5) استوائى (6) يخمن / يقدر القيمة (7) أنظمة بيئية (8) حيوى (9) منحة/محصول (10) يتحلل (11) يمتص (12) ينساب (13) تآكل

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Many animals are disappearing from Earth because of ....

a) global warming b) high rainfall and flood

c) cutting down rainforests d) global ecosystems

17 The species mentioned in the passage are ....

a) plants and animals b) medicine and food

c) plants d) animals

18 The underlined word "they" refers to ....

a) floods and erosion b) rain and water

c) absorbed water d) trees and plants

19 The word that gives the opposite to the word "veritable" is ....

a) real b) false c) genuine d) true

20 As they are a vital source of medicine, rainforests ....

a) are rarely found around the world b) are useful to humans

c) don't offer any kind of food d) grow everywhere

21 When rainforests decompose, they release ....

a) carbon dioxide b) global warming c) oxygen d) erosion

22 If rainforests disappeared, ...

a) we would suffer from global warming b) life would be impossible

c) some species of animals would disappear d) all of the previous answers

23 The best title for the passage is "..................".

a) The importance of rainforests to man

b) The effect of rainforests on the earth

c) The importance of rainforests to animals

d) The importance of rainforests to medicine

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Mass media – represented in television, the radio and the press – have a vital effect on everyone. They form the public opinion of any nation.

a) وسائل التواصل الإعلامى على رأسها التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحف لها تأثير حيوى على المجتمع فهى تشكل الرأى العام لأى شعب.

b) وسائل الإعلام مثل التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحافة ليس لها تأثير حيوى على المجتمع فهى تشكل الرأى العام لأى شعب

c) وسائل الإعلام ممثلة فى التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحافة لها تأثير حيوى على الجميع فهى تشكل الرأى العام لأى أمة.

d) صفحات التواصل الإعلامى مثل التليفزيون والإذاعة والصحف ليس فقط لها تأثير قوى على الجميع بل تشكل الرأى العام لأى أمة.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

لو استطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره علـى أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر في كل المجالات، ولأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم. فتنمية البلاد لا تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

a) When somebody plays their role in a complete way, Egypt will develop in all fields and we will be one of the most developing countries. Developing a country can be achieved with hard work and patience.

b) If everyone played their role properly, Egypt would develop in all fields and we would be one of the most developed countries. Developing a country cannot be achieved without hard work and patience.

c) If everyone played their role right, Egypt would develop in all fields and we wouldn't be one of the most developing nations. Development of a country cannot be achieved with hard work and patience.

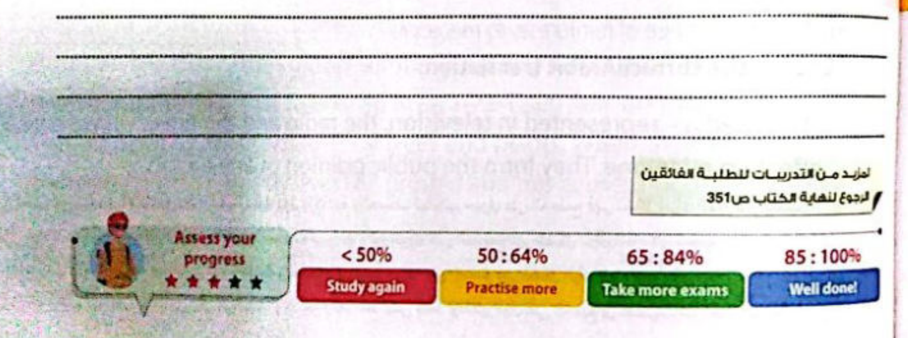
d) Unless nobody had played their role in a complete way, Egypt would have developed in all fields and we have been one of the most developing countries. Development of a country can be achieved without hard work and patience.

26 Answer the following questions:

1. Albany proved to be a patriotic وطنى politician. Do you agree? Give an example.
2. Do you think that Edmund planned to rule the kingdom before he started his plot مؤامرة against his father? Why?
3. Do you agree with Regan's view of Edmund? Why?

27 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words:

To your friend Wafaa telling her about a reading competition on famous writers you are going to take part in and asking her for suggestions. Your name is Sara. Your email address is saranew@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is wafaa2020@gmail.com.



لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
ارجع لنهاية الكتاب ص351

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Achievements and goals

Unit 12

Objectives



- **Reading** : An article about a young entrepreneur
- **Writing** : A report about an experience
- **Listening** : A talk about SMART goals
- **Speaking** : Discussing goals and how to achieve them
- **Language** : Defining and non-defining relative clauses
- **Life Skills** : Self-management; Decision-making; Collaboration



Part 1
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

achievable (adj)	قابل للتحقيق	recipe (n)*	وصفة طعام
entrepreneur (n)	رائد عمل	relevant (adj)	ذو صلة
goal (n)	هدف	set (v)	يحدد
honeybee (n)	نحلة عسل	specific (adj)	محدد
measurable (adj)	قابل للقياس	time-bound (adj)	مقيد زمنيًا
profit (n) (v) (ed)	ربح/يربح		

I enjoy trying out new food recipes from different countries.

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

aim (n) (v) (ed)	هدف/يهدف	failure (n)	فشل/حالة فشل
business (n)	عمل تجارى	final (adj)	نهائى
charity (n)	منظمة خيرية/عمل خيرى	give up (v)	يتوقف عن/يستسلم
coach (n)	مدرب	highlight (v) (ed)	يلقى ضوءًا/يميز نصًا
company (n)	شركة	honey (n)	عسل
conservation (n)	محافظة/حفاظ	importance (n)	أهمية
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	locally (adv)	محلياً
donate (v) (d)	يتبرع بـ	long-term (adj)	طويل الأمد
drop (v) (ped)	يسقط/يخرج (من فريق)	manage (v) (d)	يدير/ينجح/يتمكن
educate (v) (d)	يعلم/يدرس	manager (n)	مدير
end date (n)	تاريخ الانتهاء	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
experience (n)	خبرة	passionate (adj)	عاطفى/متحمس
physics (n)	مادة الفيزياء	share (v) (d)	يشارك
possession (n)	ملكية	short-term (adj)	قصير الأمد
president (n)	رئيس (شركة أو مؤسسة)	smart (adj)	ذكى
progress (n)	تقدم/يتقدم	stand for (v)	يمثل/ينوب عن
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى	unlikely (adv)	من غير المحتمل
qualify (v) (ied)	يتأهل/يؤهل	vague (adj)	غامض/غير واضح
range (n)	معدل/سلسلة	well-known (adj)	معروف
react (v) (ed)	يقوم برد فعل	whenever (conj)	حينما
sensible (adj)	عاقل/حكيم	winner (n)	فائز
series (n)	سلسلة		

Workbook Vocabulary

architecture (n)	العمارة	memory (n)	ذاكرة
detailed (adj)	مُفصل	multi-national (adj)	متعدد الجنسيات
essential (adj)	ضرورى	non-essential (adj)	غير ضرورى
fear (n) (v) (ed)	خوف/يخشى	objective (n)	هدف
fit in (v)	يجد وقتا لـ	practise (v) (d)	يمارس/يتدرب
forever (adv)	للأبد	profession (n)	مهنة
guitar (n)	جيتار	record (v) (ed)	يسجل
individual (n) (adj)	فرد/فردى	related (adj)	مرتبط
lucky (adj)	محظوظ	relax (v) (ed)	يسترخى
magnificent (adj)	رائع	tutorial (n)	دورة تعليمية/درس خصوصى

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The money which we collected is intended to be used for a .... purpose which is helping the new cancer hospital.
a) silly b) hilarious c) timing d) specific

2 The decisions which the world leaders made at the UN conference are directly .... to environmental issues.
a) unaccepted b) achievable c) relevant d) unreliable

3 The new Minister of Scientific Research is a .... supporter of the space programme.
a) rare b) passionate c) specific d) secret

4 After retirement, the head teacher now runs a local .... that gives books to poor children.
a) charity b) chain c) chorus d) market

5 Many organisations are trying to raise money for .... of the environment and save the world.
a) imagination b) convention c) conservation d) condensation

6 The newspaper decided to .... the story of the crime from today's edition because of security reasons.
a) break b) involve c) drop d) discover

7 A team should learn from experience, both successes and ....
a) achievements b) failures c) exercises d) trainings

8 Technological .... has been so rapid over the last few years.
a) suspicion b) search c) failure d) progress

9 The instructions he wrote were .... and difficult to follow.
a) vague b) clear c) precise d) accurate

10 Not many people know that ATM .... for *"automated teller machine"*.
a) sits b) fights c) stands d) represents

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

achieve their goals	يحققون أهدافهم	make a difference	يحدث فرقًا
feel different	يشعر بأنه مختلف	pass (my) driving test	يجتاز اختبار القيادة
had my first sight	رأيت لأول مرة	play the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار
in public	علنًا/أمام الجمهور	reach my goal	أصل لهدفي
depending on	اعتمادًا على	look after	يعتني بـ
donate to	يتبرع لـ	passionate about	متحمس بخصوص
get over	يتغلب على	related to	مرتبط بـ
importance of	أهمية لـ	relevant to	ذو صلة بـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق/ينجز	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	قابل للتحقيق
conserve	يحافظ على	conservation conservationist	حفاظ محافظ على البيئة	conservative	محافظ
manage	يدير	management manager	إدارة مدير	managerial	إداري
measure*	يقيس	measurement	قياس	measurable	قابل للقياس
------------------		passion	عاطفة/حماس	passionate	عاطفي/متحمس
possess	يمتلك	possession	ملكية	possessive	تملكي/اقتنائي
profit	يربح	profit	ربح	profitable	مربح
relax	يسترخي	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed	مستريح/مسترخ
------------------		relevance	صلة/علاقة	relevant	ذو صلة

- We can measure the energy that food provides in calories.
- Take measurements of the room before you buy any new furniture.
- There has been a measurable improvement in the company's performance.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
achievable	قابل للتحقيق	attainable/feasible	impossible unattainable	مستحيل/بعيد المنال
conservation	حفاظ	preservation/protection	destruction/waste	تدمير/إهدار
detailed	مفصل	precise/specific	inaccurate/incomplete	غير دقيق/غير كامل
entrepreneur	رائد عمل	administrator/manager	employee	موظف
forever	للأبد	everlasting/eternally	temporarily	مؤقتا
individual	فردى	single	team	جماعي
manage	يدير	direct/administer	obey/follow	يطيع
measurable	قابل للقياس	determinable	immeasurable	غير قابل للقياس
passionate	عاطفى/متحمس	enthusiastic	unconcerned	غير مهتم
profit	ربح/يربح	benefit/interest	loss	خسارة
progress	تقدم	advance/growth	decline/failure	تدهور/فشل
related	مرتبط	associated/linked	irrelevant	ليس له صلة
relax	يسترخي	calm	worry	يقلق
sensible	عاقل/حكيم	reasonable/rational	irrational/unwise	غير عقلي/غير حكيم
smart	ذكى	intelligent/brilliant	foolish/stupid	أحمق/غبي

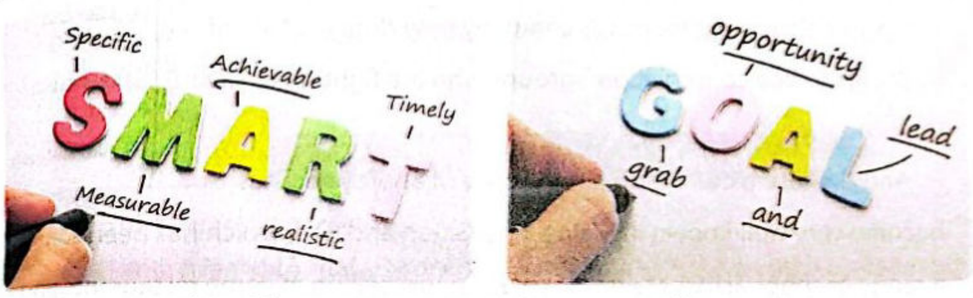
Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There has been significant progress in controlling heart disease. The noun "progress" is similar in meaning to "..................".
   a) decline b) advance c) failure d) planning
2. You must be careful on dealing with your fiancée as most ladies like to .... different or special.
   a) feel b) make c) defy d) keep
3. Body temperature is measured with a digital thermometer. The adjective of the verb "measure" is "..................".
   a) measures b) measurement c) measurable d) measurably
4. Many valuable works of art were lost forever because of the war. The antonym of the word "forever" is "..................".
   a) eternally b) constantly c) direction d) temporarily

5. My elder brothers have always been passionate .... football, but I prefer basketball.
   a) of b) about c) for d) in
6. Before you set your targets, make sure that they are achievable. The synonym of the adjective "achievable" is "..................".
   a) attainable b) impossible c) difficult d) reliable
7. A new TV costs between five thousand and twenty thousand pounds, depending .... the size you want.
   a) at b) out c) on d) for
8. As Kenzy was clever at driving, she .... her driving test the first time.
   a) encouraged b) failed c) did d) passed
9. Scientists are always working on ways to conserve biological diversity. The noun of the verb "conserve" is "..................".
   a) conserved b) conservation c) conservative d) conservatively
10. The six-year-old student is not smart enough to understand some computer software. The opposite of the word "smart" is "..................".
   a) intelligent b) brilliant c) active d) stupid

Reading Text (1)



To succeed in life, it's important to have specific[1] aims or goals. How often have you started something and then given up because it was either too difficult or took too long to complete? It's very easy to give up when things get hard, so how can we make sure we achieve the goals we set ourselves? One way, often mentioned by managers[2], is to have SMART goals. These are five different things you need to consider if you want to meet your goal.

Whenever you plan to set a goal[3], you need to ask yourself these questions: Is my goal specific? Is it measurable[4]? Is it achievable[5]? Is it relevant[6]? and finally Is it time bound[7]? If you answer 'no' to any of these questions, then you are unlikely to reach your goal.

(1) محدد
(2) مديرون
(3) يحدد هدفًا
(4) قابل للقياس
(5) قابل للتحقيق
(6) ذو صلة
(7) مقيد زمنيًا

Reading Text (2)



Andy Robson, who is still a teenager, is the president of Green and Red, which is a small, but successful apple juice business in Maine. What is incredible is that Andy was only eight years old when he started selling apple juice outside his home in Auburn, where he still lives with his family.

Andy adapted a 1920s recipe that he got from his grandmother, but he added honey to the juice to make it a little different from his grandmother's. The reason he decided to add honey(1) was because he is passionate(2) about helping bees and wants to help protect them. His company now donates 15% of its profits to bee conservation(3) groups who are fighting to save the honeybee(4).

(1) عسل

(2) عاطفى/متحمس

(3) حفاظ/وقاية

(4) نحلة العسل

(5) منظمة خيرية

(6) رائد/رائدة أعمال

Andy, whose picture is on every bottle of apple juice, has become very well-known in Maine. And Green and Red, which has been sold in a range of shops across Maine for years, is now selling in some restaurants and is very popular.

But that's not all. Andy has started his own charity(5) with Jessica Webb, whom he met at school. Jessica keeps her own bees and is also a young entrepreneur(6) – she sells her own honey locally. The two teenagers want to teach children about how to look after bees and about how to become an entrepreneur. They plan to go into schools and share their experiences as well as educating the children about the importance of bees and why we need to look after them.

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Tarek

Ever since I saw my cousin playing the guitar last year, I've wanted to learn too. This year I have a little more time, and so I'm going to do it! I bought a guitar last month and I'm going to classes once a week. I've set myself one goal which is to be able to play one song by next month. My father says he's sure I can do it. I practise the song every day for twenty minutes, and this also helps me relax after studying and revising for all my exams.

Salma

I want to be a newsreader when I'm older, so I know I have to get over my fear of speaking in public. The presentations I have to give at school are useful, but they still make me very nervous. I've been talking in front of the mirror and recording myself on video talking in front of the camera. I then watch myself and correct the things I don't like. By doing this once a week, I hope that by this time next month I won't feel nervous when I have to give a presentation in school about the future of the internet. Wish me luck!

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Cairo from a visitor's view

Cairo, 1) which is the capital city of Egypt, is a place which offers the visitor a wide range of experiences. Therefore, depending on 2) who/whom you talk to, they will give you a very different picture of the city.

Last year was a time 3) when I decided to fit in as many difference experiences as possible and so I visited Cairo. I was lucky enough to be invited by a friend 4) whose family lived there and wanted to show me everything the city had to offer. My frienc Fares, with 5) whom I had shared a flat in my first year at university, travelled witł me by train to the city. It was at the Ramses Railway Station 6) where I had my firs sight of the magnificent architecture the city has to offer. However, this was not th only surprise which the city had for me. In my next blog post, I will tell you about a the wonderful people 7) who/whom I will never forget and the places 8) which w forever live in my memory.

Listening Text (1)





Now, let's look at these SMART goals one at a time and check what each one actually means. If you are serious about achieving your goals, you need to make sure they are sensible and definitely[1] something you can do, even if they are a little bit difficult. But your goals mustn't be too general or you'll never reach them. So if your goal is to get fit by next month, it's too vague[2]. Your goal needs to be much more specific such as, 'I want to be able to run ten kilometres without stopping in six months' time.'

Next, you need to make sure that your goal is measurable. To make sure you keep working towards your final goal, you need to have smaller, short-term goals along the way. Instead of saying 'I want to run ten kilometres', start with 1 kilometre. Then, when you can do that, aim for three kilometres and so on until you reach ten. By having smaller targets, you will find that it is easier to achieve your final[3] goal. So, the 'A' in SMART means 'achievable', and your goal should never be too easy, but it should always be possible.

Now let's look at the last two letters 'R' and T'. The 'R' stands for[4] relevant. This is about making goals that are important to you, not your family or friends. If you don't really care about the goal, then you're unlikely to succeed. And finally, 'T' is for time-bound, in other words there is a final time when your goal has to be reached. There's no point saying, 'I'm going to run 10 kilometres one day,' because you won't. You need to plan it and write down a time when you want to finally be able to achieve this.

So, if you want to achieve your goals, you need to ask yourself a series[5] of SMART questions.

(1) بالتأكيد
(2) غامض/غير واضح
(3) نهائي
(4) يمثل/ينوب عن
(5) سلسلة

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

work عمل/مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	- I started work when I was sixteen. - Much of the heavy work on farms is now done by machines.
works أعمال فنية أو أدبية (اسم يعد)	The works of Naguib Mahfouz are still read all over the world.
job وظيفة (اسم يعد)	- It's not his job to tell us what we can and can't do. - I've applied for several jobs without success.
career مهنة (الحياة العملية للفرد)	Choosing a career can be a very difficult decision.
profession مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)	(the medical الطبية /legal القضاء /nursing/teaching profession) - We admit that a few members of our profession have behaved badly.

2

recipe وصفة (مجموعة من الإرشادات لطبق معين)	Could you give me the recipe for that chocolate cake?
prescription روشتة (وصفة طبية)	Dr Magdy gave me a prescription for some sleeping tablets.

3

goal هدف (مستقبلي هام قد يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا)	something important that you hope to achieve in the future, even though it may take a long time - The country can still achieve its goal of reducing poverty by a third.
objective هدف (تم مناقشته وتحديده مسبقًا)	the specific thing that you are trying to achieve – used especially about things that have been officially discussed - We met to set the business objectives for the coming year.
target هدف/مستهدف (كم أو مقدار محدد تتمنى تحقيقه)	a particular amount or total that you want to achieve - The company is on track to meet its target of increasing profits by 10%.

manage ينجح/يتمكن من (يتبعها اسم أو ضمير) أو (المصدر + to)	- I don't think I can manage a long walk today. - We managed to persuade him to come with us.
succeed ينجح/يتمكن من يتبعها noun أو (in + verb + ing)	- Many women were able to succeed in politics. - My brother succeeded in passing his final tests.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was given the wrong tablets when the chemist misread my doctor's ....
   a) prescription b) recipe
   c) direction d) observation
2. The pilot skilfully .... to keep the plane on the runway although an engine stopped.
   a) succeeded b) passed
   c) managed d) accepted
3. There's a feeling among the nursing .... that their work is undervalued.
   a) work b) job
   c) career d) profession
4. The factory workers are working towards a/an .... of twenty cars a week.
   a) target b) aim
   c) consumption d) goal

Practice — Vocabulary General Exercises

Practise more

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The company began as a small family .... and now it is a big corporation.
   a) business b) penalty c) income d) profit
2. My wife never follows .... exactly when she cooks – she just uses them as rough guides.
   a) prescriptions b) studies c) researches d) recipes
3. Building such a big house within only six months isn't a/an .... goal.
   a) awful b) achievable c) hilarious d) imaginary
4. When you have a job as well as children to look after, you have to learn how to .... your time.
   a) succeed b) research c) manage d) devise
5. Your CV should .... your skills and achievements as well as your qualifications.
   a) highlight b) export c) expel d) expire
6. A/An .... is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.
   a) entertainer b) designer c) entrepreneur d) consultant
7. I think that mankind is destroying the planet, all in the name of ....
   a) destruction b) affection c) reflection d) progress
8. My father always encourages us to give a small amount of what we earn to .... to help poor people.
   a) entertainment b) charity c) ability d) loyalty
9. The lawyer insists that the .... documents will be presented in court.
   a) charitable b) unimportant c) relevant d) subsiding
10. The problems of pollution and global warming are closely ....
    a) achievable b) specific c) relevant d) related
11. My daughter has a/an .... interest in animal rights and conservation.
    a) criminal b) passionate c) illegal d) awful
12. Diplomacy is always the most .... way to resolve all kinds of disputes and wars.
    a) sensible b) unreasonable c) sensitive d) irresponsible
13. The new .... of the company called a top-level management meeting on his first day.
    a) minister b) president c) member d) captain
14. The mountain .... in Morocco stretches away hundreds of kilometres.
    a) serial b) department c) range d) district

15. Squash is an individual game in which a lot of Egyptians are champions. The antonym of the word "individual" is "..................".
a) team b) single c) unique d) distinctive

16. Just five minutes' exercise a day could .... a difference to your health.
a) do b) make c) devise d) design

17. The lady was able to give a detailed description of her attacker. The synonym of the adjective "detailed" is "..................".
a) general b) private c) specific d) public

18. The students hope to .... their goal of raising 10,000 pounds for charity.
a) sit b) set c) arrive d) reach

19. Most young people feel nervous about speaking .... public.
a) at b) in c) of d) about

20. The UN warns that too many nations already .... chemical weapons.
a) possess b) possession c) possessive d) possessively

21. The amount of protein you need is directly related .... your lifestyle.
a) in b) to c) at d) for

22. I listen to music for .... before I go to bed.
a) relax b) relaxation c) relaxed d) relaxes

23. I don't know how we're going to get .... this problem.
a) off b) in c) into d) over

24. The supermarket's daily profit is usually around five thousand pounds. The synonym of the word "profit" is "..................".
a) benefit b) loss c) exhibition d) charity

25. Experts are asking people to be sensible about the amount of water they use. The opposite of the adjective "sensible" is "..................".
a) logical b) rational c) sensitive d) unwise

26. Smoking is a very harmful habit to give .... (Longman)
a) up b) back c) away d) in

27. Your goals should be specific, measurable and time- .... ; they should be met by a specific date. (Longman)
a) bound b) out c) consuming d) repeating

28. Our company .... 10% of its profits to people with disabilities. (Longman)
a) refuses b) borrows c) agrees d) donates

29. One should .... his/her goals according to their abilities and efforts. (Longman)
a) let b) set c) sit d) fit

30. Our project is a great success; it has achieved a lot of .... (Longman)
a) losses b) files c) replacements d) profits



Relative clauses جمل الوصل

- هى الجمل التى تستخدم فيها ضمائر الوصل للربط بينها. وضمائر الوصل هى:

who/that	whom	which/that	whose	where	when
للفاعل والمفعول العاقل	للمفعول العاقل	غير العاقل	للملكية	للمكان	للزمان

- تحل ضمائر الوصل بدل الاسم أو الضمير المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.
- يأتى ضمير الوصل بعد الاسم المراد وصله مباشرة.

1 اسم عاقل + who/that الذى/التى/الذين + verb

- تحل (who/that) محل الفاعل العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدهما فعل.

- Mr Said is very rich. He owns this enormous house.
- Mr Said, who ~~(He)~~ owns this enormous house, is very rich. (بعدها فعل فهى فى محل فاعل)
- The footballer has been banned from playing again. He took drugs.
- The footballer who/that ~~(He)~~ took drugs has been banned from playing again.

- فى الجملة الأولى Mr Said اسم علم فجملة الوصل التى بعده تعتبر معلومة زائدة extra information فالجملة الأصلية Mr Said is very rich تؤدى معنى تام بمفردها ولا نضع that هنا ونضع comma.
- فى الجملة الثانية جملة الوصل ضرورية لإتمام المعنى لمعرفة من اللاعب الذى منع من اللعب، وهنا تسمى جملة الوصل defining وهنا يمكن استخدام that مع عدم وضع comma.

2 اسم عاقل + who/whom/that الذى/التى/الذين + subject

- تحل (who/whom/that) محل المفعول العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية ويأتى بعدهم فاعل.

- The woman was happy. We gave ~~her~~ the money.
- The woman who/whom/that we gave the money was happy.
- The people were very friendly. We met ~~them~~ at the party.
- The people who/whom/that we met at the party were very friendly.

بعدها فاعل فهى محل مفعول.

- Ahmed is my neighbour. I go to school with him.
- Ahmed, who/whom I go to school with, is my neighbour.

- لاحظ عدم وضع that لأن الجملة بها comma لأن جملة الوصل non-defining ولاحظ أيضًا أن حرف الجر with لم يأت قبل ضمير الوصل فإذا جاء قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم إلا whom.

- Ahmed, with whom I go to school, is my neighbour.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My pen friend, ... lives in Sweden, is studying biology at university.
   a) whose b) who
   c) that d) which
2. I met the girl .... I used to play tennis with.
   a) whom b) which
   c) where d) whose
3. People .... study the weather are called meteorologists.
   a) whom b) which
   c) who d) whose
4. Ahmed, ... I go to school with, is ill in hospital.
   a) whose b) which
   c) where d) whom
5. The people .... used to live next door moved a long time ago.
   a) which b) that
   c) whom d) whose

3 اسم غير عاقل + which/that الذى/التى/الذين + verb/subject

تحل (which/that) محل الفاعل أو المفعول غير العاقل المكرر فى الجملة الثانية.

إذا كانتا فى محل فاعل يأتى بعدهما فى الربط فعل وإذا كانتا فى محل مفعول فيأتى بعدهما فاعل.

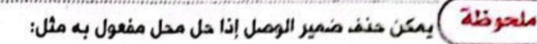
- The food went bad. It was left out of the fridge.
  The food which/that was left out of the fridge went bad. (بعدها فعل فهى فى محل فاعل)
- The film was boring. We watched it yesterday.
  The film which/that we watched yesterday was boring. (بعدها فاعل فهى فى محل مفعول)

فى الجمل السابقة وضعت that لأن جملة الوصل defining ولم نضع comma أيضًا ولكن لاحظ الجملة الآتية:

- The Nile is the main source of water in Egypt. It flows from south to north.
- The Nile, which flows from south to north, is the main source of water in Egypt.

- جملة «ينساب من الجنوب إلى الشمال» معلومة إضافية فهى تعتبر non-defining ولذلك لم نضع that ووضعنا comma إذا وجد حرف جر قبل ضمير الوصل لا نستخدم that ونستخدم which فقط.

- The car in which (~~that~~) I go to work needs replacing.



ملحوظة يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول به مثل:

- The boy was very polite. We met him at Adly Street yesterday.
- The boy who/whom/that we met at Adly Street yesterday was very polite.
- The boy ~~who/whom/that~~ we met at Adly Street yesterday was very polite.
- The stories were interesting. We read them at the school library.
- The stories which/that we read at the school library were interesting.
- The stories ~~which/that~~ we read at the school library were interesting.

4 اسم عاقل/غير عاقل + whose للملكية + sentence (s + v + o)

- تستخدم (whose) للملكية ويتبعها اسم يملكه الاسم الذى قبلها.
- تحل محل صفات الملكية الآتية his/her/its/their

- The writer was extremely delighted. His novel won the Nobel Prize.
- The writer whose novel won the Nobel Prize was extremely delighted.
- My cousin visits Italy a lot. His wife is Italian.
- My cousin, whose wife is Italian, visits Italy a lot.

فى الجملة الثانية وضعنا comma لأن جملة الوصل «زوجته إيطالية» معلومة إضافية non-defining.


ملحوظة من الممكن استخدام حرف جر مع whose كما فى المثال التالى:

- Mr Ali, in whose house we had our meal, is a generous man.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The man .... car was stolen phoned the police.
   a) who b) which c) whose d) that
2. One should quit smoking, ... is very harmful to health.
   a) which b) what c) who d) that
3. The horse .... I bought the other day is lame أعرج.
   a) whom b) that c) whose d) where
4. People .... work is good receive high wages.
   a) who b) that c) who's d) whose
5. I like photographs .... are in black and white.
   a) what b) whom c) which d) whose

5 مكان + where = which .... حرف جر + sentence

- تستخدم (where) للمكان بمعنى حيث.
- يتكرر فى الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + place/here - there)

- The place was really beautiful. We spent our holiday ~~there~~.
- The place where we spent our holiday was really beautiful.
- The hotel wasn't very clean. We stayed ~~there~~ for 3 days.
- The hotel where we stayed for 3 days wasn't very clean.

- تحل where محل ظروف المكان here - there أما which تحل محل it/they لغير العاقل ولذلك يمكن أن تأتى which وقبلها مكان بدون حرف جر وذلك لأنها جاءت محل الضمير المكرر it أو they.

- Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is very crowded.
- Cairo, which is very crowded, is the capital of Egypt.
- The flat is very small. I live ~~in it~~.
- The flat where I live (which I live in) is very small. (حيث أسكن = التى أسكن فيها)
- The flat where I live (in which I live) is very small.

- يأتى قبل which حرف جر.

6 اسم يدل على الزمن + when = that/which ... حرف جر + sentence

- تستخدم (when) للزمان بمعنى (عندما) المكرر فى الجملة الثانية (in/on/at + time/then)

- It's seven o'clock. I get up ~~at that time~~.
- It's seven o'clock when I get up.
- Ramadan is a holy month شهر مقدس. We fast ~~in it~~.
- Ramadan when we fast (which/that we fast in) is a holy month.

أنواع جمل الوصل

١) النوع الأول يعطى معلومات أساسية، وبدون هذه المعلومات سيكون من الصعب أن نعرف من أو ما هو المقصود. ونستخدم فى هذا النوع (who/which/whom) ولا نستخدم (comma) قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام (that) بدلًا من ضمائر الوصل المذكورة.

- The man who (that) robbed the bank was sent to prison.
- The book which (that) tells you about history is useful.

٢) النوع الثانى يعطى معلومات إضافية وليست ضرورية لفهم معنى الجملة ولا بد من استخدام (comma) قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل ولا تستخدم (that) فى هذا النوع.

- My father, whom I love, works as a teacher.
- Alaa's car, which he left outside, cost him L.E. 200.000 (Alaa has one car).

ولمزيد من التوضيح لاحظ الفرق بين المثالين الآتيين:

- My sister, who lives in Assuit, came to visit me in Cairo last week.
- My sister who lives in Assuit came to visit me in Cairo last week.

- فى المثال الأول جملة الوصل معلومة إضافية وهذا يعنى أن لدى أختًا واحدة فقط فلا أحتاج للتعريف.
- فى المثال الثانى جملة الوصل تعطى معلومة أساسية وضرورية وهذا يعنى أننى لدى أكثر من أخت فوجب التفريق مَن التى زارتنى منهن.

Language Check point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1) October 1973, was the month .... our great army restored our dignity.
   a) when b) which
   c) who d) where
2) What is the name of the palace .... the President and his men stayed?
   a) in where b) which
   c) where d) what
3) A library is a place .... we can borrow books.
   a) that b) which
   c) when d) where
4) The student couldn't remember the year .... his father was born.
   a) which b) when
   c) at which d) where
5) My son reached the age .... he can have his independent bank account.
   a) at when b) on which
   c) in which d) at which



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A student .... doesn't study hard enough cannot be successful.
a) which b) whom
c) whose d) who

2 The man about .... you were talking has just come in the room.
a) which b) whose
c) whom d) where

3 A river .... is polluted is not safe for swimming.
a) whose b) that
c) when d) where

4 His wife, ... lives in Paris, is a fashion model.
a) who b) who's
c) whom d) whose

5 The mistake .... Ola made was fortunately not very serious.
a) whose b) when
c) what d) which

6 The town .... I grew up was very small.
a) which b) where
c) that d) when

7 2001 is the year .... my brother graduated from university.
a) where b) whose
c) when d) which

8 We met the man .... car was advertised in the local newspaper.
a) whose b) who's
c) who d) whom

9 That's the beach .... I used to go swimming.
a) which b) that
c) where d) when

10 You wanted to tell me about the time .... you lost your keys.
a) that b) where
c) which d) when

11 My mother .... is the best person in the world.
a) who I love b) , who I love,
c) that I love d) , which I love,

12 My sister made a big mistake, ... she should apologise for.
a) which b) what
c) that d) why

13 The meeting at .... I met a lot of my friends was fruitful.
a) where b) what
c) that d) which

14 Cairo, ... we live, is a crowded city.
a) what b) which
c) where d) that

15 What is the name of the teacher .... used to teach us maths?
a) who b) whom
c) who's d) that

16 Alexandria, ... is the second capital city, has many comfortable resorts.
a) where b) which
c) what d) that

17 El-Shamadan is a food company .... most famous product is chocolate.
a) who b) which
c) whose d) where

18 In hospitals, they wake patients at 6 a.m., ... is much too early.
a) when b) which
c) where d) what

19 The man .... son I shouted was extremely furious.
a) at whose b) whose
c) at whom d) who's

20 She went to a school .... all subjects in English.
a) which they studied b) that they studied
c) they studied d) in which they studied

21 Hong Kong is a place .... a lot of tall buildings.
a) where b) which has
c) in which has d) which there are

22 Tarek has four cats. Two of them are black. Tarek's two cats .... like playing outside.

a) , that are black,
b) whose colour is black
c) , which are black,
d) , whose are black,

23 Which sentence of the following shows that I have *only* one sister.

a) My sister who spent her holiday in France is 25 years old.
b) My sister that is 25 years old spent her holiday in France.
c) My sister whose age is 25 spent her holiday in France.
d) My sister, who is 25 years old, spent her holiday in France.

24 Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured?

a) My friend whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile.
b) My friend in whose car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile.
c) My friend in which car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile.
d) My friend who's car we travel lives in a flat overlooks the Nile.

25 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) I know the candidate whom I am going to support in the next elections.
b) I know the candidate that I am going to support in the next elections.
c) I know the candidate to whom I am going to support in the next elections.
d) I know the candidate who I am going to support in the next elections.

26 The earthquake .... had hit Syria and Turkey was highly destructive. (Longman)

a) when
b) what
c) where
d) that

27 I don't know the man .... has offered to help you. (Longman)

a) whom
b) who
c) who's
d) whose

28 Huda, ... mobile phone was lost, is terribly sad. (Longman)

a) who
b) who's
c) whose
d) that

29 Finland is a country, ... covers an area of 338,455 square kilometres. (Longman)

a) which
b) whose
c) where
d) what

30 Do you remember the day .... you first met your new neighbour? (Longman)

a) where
b) in which
c) when
d) which

Test yourself



Take a test

Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 The teacher gave us very detailed instructions before we started the trip. The antonym of the word "detailed" is ".................." .

a) specific
b) precise
c) helpful
d) incomplete

2 The weather didn't .... a difference in our plans. We were determined to visit the oasis.

a) make
b) do
c) tell
d) give

3 By the second year, the restaurant began to make a good ....

a) profit
b) loss
c) charity
d) list

4 Experts advise everyone to .... realistic goals that they can achieve.

a) cut
b) set
c) prevent
d) destroy

5 We usually .... our old clothes to a home for homeless children.

a) renew
b) consume
c) apply
d) donate

6 We need to clarify the .... of the present project before starting it.

a) causes
b) losses
c) goals
d) diaries

7 Samy was disappointed to be .... from the school handball team.

a) hired
b) dropped
c) included
d) appointed

8 When I visited Italy, I was amazed by the .... of Old Venice; the buildings are nearly surrounded by water canals.

a) fracture
b) architecture
c) structure
d) lecture

9 Mobil Oil Company is a .... corporation which has branches all over the world.

a) national
b) local
c) multinational
d) multimedia

10 To finish the project, we need to perform as a team rather than a group of ....

a) individuals
b) parts
c) hikers
d) fighters

11 A high proportion نسبة of people in the nursing .... are women.

a) work
b) profession
c) mission
d) works

12 The doctor had to .... ten appointments in one morning as he won't work in the evening.

a) fit
b) give
c) make
d) assign

13 I'll .... the lecture on video and we can all watch it later.

a) rehearse
b) overload
c) reload
d) record

14 Her comments were not relevant .... the discussion we had.

a) in
b) at
c) to
d) into

15 We spent an hour trying to buy the movie tickets, but eventually .... up and went home.

a) took
b) gave
c) looked
d) got

16 I'm not one of those people .... deceive others.
a) whom b) who c) whose d) they

17 The ice cream .... comes from Italy is delicious.
a) what b) whose c) who d) which

18 The person .... the police were questioning has been released.
a) which b) where c) that d) whose

19 My friend with .... I went out was generous.
a) whom b) that c) whose d) who

20 That's the hospital .... Ola went when she was ill.
a) whose b) where c) who d) which

21 The bomb .... went off this morning caused a lot of damage.
a) what b) whom c) which d) where

22 Look at that building .... windows are all broken.
a) who's b) where c) which d) whose

23 Mr Emad is the person from .... I got the information.
a) whom b) that c) who d) whose

24 We met the woman .... husband went to school with my father.
a) that b) who's c) where d) whose

25 We called a doctor .... works at a hospital in Aswan.
a) who's b) whose c) who d) whom

26 The accountant .... for my father's company was promoted to a higher position.
a) that works b) who work c) works d) whose works

27 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?
a) The village which I grew up is very small.
b) The village where I grew up is very small
c) The village when I grew up is very small.
d) The village in where I grew up is very small.

28 It was a day .... everything seemed to go wrong.
a) that of b) which
c) why d) when

29 Which one of the following questions is correctly structured?
a) Do you remember the date when we have to submit the essay?
b) Do you remember the date which we have to submit the essay?
c) Do you remember the date where we have to submit the essay?
d) Do you remember the date what we have to submit the essay?

30 Mohamed Salah is a very famous footballer.
a) Mohamed Salah that I met at the Book Fair is a famous footballer.
b) Mohamed Salah whom I met at the Book Fair is a famous footballer.
c) Mohamed Salah, whom I met at the Book Fair, is a famous footballer.
d) I met Mohamed Salah who is a famous footballer at the Book Fair.



A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

access (n)	مدخل/سبيل	dried (adj)	مجفف
accessible (adj)	سهل المنال	ensure (v) (d)	يضمن/يؤكد
afford (v) (ed)	يتحمل نفقات	entry (n)	دخول
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	expand (v) (ed)	يمد/يوسع
attend (v) (ed)	يحضر	experiment (n)	تجربة
available (adj)	متاح/متوفر	filter (n) (v) (ed)*	مرشح/يرشح
benefit (n) (v) (ed)	فائدة/يستفيد	finalist (n)	متسابق نهائي
bleeding (n)	نزيف	improve (v) (d)	يحسن
blood (n)	دم	innovation (n)	إبداع
boil (v) (ed)	يغلي	invention (n)	اختراع
breakthrough (n)	إنجاز/اختراق (علمي)	inventor (n)	مخترع
cent (n)	سنت (عملة أمريكية)	laboratory (n)	معمل
competition (n)	منافسة	life-changing (adj)	مغير للحياة
context (n)	سياق	liquid (n)	سائل
corn cob (n)	كوز الذرة	major (adj)	رئيسي
create (v) (d)	ينتج/يبدع	motivated (adj)	متحفز/مندفع
deaths (n)	وفيات	nationality (n)	جنسية
device (n)	جهاز	operation (n)	عملية جراحية
display (n) (v) (ed)	عرض/يعرض	organiser (n)	منظم

*Many people use water filters in their homes for pure drinking water.

outline (v) (d)	يوجز/يحدد الخطوط العريضة	recycle (v) (d)	يعيد تدوير
overall (adj) (adv)	كلى/فى المجمل	remove (v) (d)	يزيل
pedal-powered (adj)	يعمل ببدال (دراجة)	repair (v) (ed)	يصلح
percentage (n)	نسبة مئوية	sort out (v) (ed)	يفرز/يقوم بـ/يحل
pharmaceutical (adj)	دوائى	surgeon (n)	جراح
present (v) (ed)	يقدم	variety (n)	تنوع
prize (n)	جائزة	venue (n)	مكان إقامة حدث
purpose (n)	غرض	vote (v) (d)	يصوت/يدلى بصوته

Workbook Vocabulary

accessories (n)	مستلزمات/إكسسوارات	joint (adj)	مشترك
amongst (prep)	بين	matching (adj)	ملائم/متجانس
collection (n)	مجموعة	minor (adj)	فرعى/غير أساسى
come across (v)	يصادف	neighbourhood (n)	الجيرة/الحى
community (n)	مجتمع	non-governmental (adj)	غير حكومى
complex (adj)	معقد	option (n)	اختيار
crawl (v) (ed)	يزحف	outfit (n)	ملابس/زى
dairy (n)	منتجات ألبان	promote (v) (d)	يطور/يرقى
effort (n)	مجهود	practical (adj)	عملى
everyday (adj)	يومى	produce (v) (d)	ينتج
fast (n) (v) (ed)	صوم/يصوم	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل/يخفض
fruity (adj)	بطعم/برائحة الفاكهة	secondary (adj)	ثانوى/غير أساسى
global (adj)	عالمى	unique (adj)	متميز

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Experts are studying various ways to .... garbage القمامة into fuel.
a) rewind b) cycle c) rewrite d) recycle

2. The store sells TVs, laptops and other electronic ....
a) devices b) mails c) books d) designers

3. The list of .... in most squash championships usually includes Egyptian players.
a) finders b) bounders
c) finalists d) journalists

4. The museum has a magnificent .... of ancient silver and leather objects.
a) figure b) display c) present d) shape

5. The communication industry has .... greatly over the last decade.
a) expanded b) expired c) expelled d) exhaled

6. The information about the new disease should be .... to all people of the world.
a) accessible b) avoidable
c) stressful d) unreliable

7. The Ministry of Transport took steps to .... the safety of the train passengers.
a) damage b) ensure
c) test d) approach

8. The peace treaty was a historic .... in political history of the area.
a) expansion b) access
c) breakthrough d) argument

9. There is an extensive competition between .... companies to produce new effective medicines for diseases.
a) consuming b) agricultural
c) industrial d) pharmaceutical

10. We need to encourage .... in industry in order to be able to compete with foreign products.
a) failure b) reduction c) innovation d) solution

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

by accident	بالصدفة	make life easier	يجعل الحياة أسهل
(be) a great success	ينجح كثيرًا	make recommendations	يقدم ترشيحات
keep you fit	يحافظ على لياقتك	stay healthy	يظل بصحة جيدة
aim at	يهدف إلى	plenty of	وفرة/كثرة من
available to	متوفر لـ	sell ... to	يبيع ... لـ
crawl around	يزحف حول	solution to/for	حل لـ
experience with	خبرة بـ	successful in	ناجح في
match with	يتناسب مع	vote for	يصوت لصالح

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrange	يرتب	arrangement	ترتيب	arranged	مرتب
attend	يحضر	attendance/attendee	حضور/حاضر	------------------------	
collect	يجمع	collection collector	مجموعة محصل/مجمع	collective	جماعي/جمعي
describe*	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
expand	يمد/يوسع	expansion	مد/توسيع	expandable	قابل للتوسع
motivate	يحفز	motivation motivator	حافز/دافع محفز	motivated	متحفز/مندفع
promote	يطور/يُرقِّي	promotion	تطور/ترقية	promotional	مطور/مُرقِّي
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycling	إعادة تدوير	recycled recyclable	معاد تدويره قابل للتدوير
reduce	يقلل/يخفض	reduction	خفض/تقليل	reduced	مخفض
remove	يزيل	removal remover	إزالة مزيل	removable	قابل للإزالة
train	يدرب	training trainer trainee	تدريب مدرب متدرب	trained	متدرب

- The man was described as tall and dark, and aged about 20.
- The catalogue gives a full description of each product.
- The writer gives a highly descriptive account of his/her journey through Africa.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
collection	مجموعة	selection	separation	فصل
complex	معقد	complicated	simple	بسيط
display	عرض/يعرض	demonstrate/present	hide/cover	يُخفي
filter	مرشح/يرشح	clean/refine	pollute	يلوث
global	عالمي	worldwide	local	محلّي
outline	يوجز	summarise	expand	يمد
practical	عملي	useful/factual	theoretical	نظري
recycle	يعيد تدوير	reuse	waste	يهدر
unique	متميز	extraordinary/uncommon	common	شائع
variety	تنوع	range/diversity	similarity	تشابه

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Town residents are required to recycle cans and bottles. The verb "recycle" is the opposite of "..................".
   a) reuse b) consume c) waste d) divide
2. I found an important letter .... accident as I was looking through my files.
   a) by b) of c) at d) on
3. I don't think that tourism will provide a long-term solution .... employment problems in the area.
   a) of b) at c) in d) for
4. The service offers young people practical advice on finding a job. The synonym of "practical" is "..................".
   a) theoretical b) useful c) useless d) evident
5. The coffee shop may expand into a full restaurant. The noun of the verb "expand" is ....
   a) expands b) expansion c) expandable d) expendably

6 Not enough data was available .... scientists at the beginning of COVID-19 pandemic.

a) out   b) of   c) in   d) to

7 The writer expanded the main idea of his research in his new book. The verb "expand" is similar in meaning to ".................".

a) reduce   b) grow   c) summarise   d) develop

8 The lawyers will review the case and .... recommendations to the client.

a) make   b) do   c) follow   d) determine

Reading Text (1)

Pedal-powered washing machine

A 14-year girl from India has created her first own invention. When her mother became ill, Remya had to wash the clothes for the family. She thought that washing everything by hand took too much time, so she recycled[1] some bicycle parts and built a pedal-powered[2] washing machine which saves time and keeps you fit! Her invention will help families whose homes don't have electricity.

Her next goal is to make a simple device[3] that can create electricity to use at home.

(1) يعيد تدوير
(2) مدار ببدالات
(3) جهاز

Reading Text (2)

Corn cob water filter

11-year-old Lalita knew that many families in her village in Odisha, India couldn't get clean water and they couldn't afford to buy expensive filters[1]. In Odisha, farmers grow a lot of corn[2], but they only sell part of the plant. The rest of the corn cob isn't used.

When she saw all the dried corn cobs on the side of the road, she wondered if they could help filter water. Her corn-cob filter removes[3] 80% of all pollution in the water. The water can then be boiled[4] to make it safe to drink.

Her goal is to sell the cheap device to farmers so they can stay healthy.

(1) مرشحات
(2) ذرة
(3) يزيل
(4) يغلى

Reading Text (3)

Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

Introduction

The purpose of this report is to describe my experience at the Young Inventor's Competition[1] and recommend any changes that could improve how it worked.

The organisation

I live in Montreal in Canada, and the competition finalists[2] were invited to go to Toronto to present their inventions. The competition organisers were very good at sending me information and helping me to sort out travel arrangements. They also organised for my invention to be sent to the competition venue[3].

The competition

The competition was very well organised and there was plenty of time for the finalists to display[4] and talk about their inventions. Lots of companies were invited to attend[5], so I was lucky to get lots of interest in my invention.

Suggested improvements

Although it was great to meet so many other young inventors from my country, *I think that* the competition should be expanded[6] to include teenagers from other countries too.

Conclusion

Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend entering the competition.

(1) مسابقة
(2) المتأهلون للنهائيات
(3) مكان حدث
(4) يعرض
(5) يحضر
(6) يمد/يوسع

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Solutions to local problems

We all know the importance of new inventions to make life easier. However, not all inventors have been successful in finding good solutions to everyday problems. Some of the craziest ideas include mini umbrellas to attach to your shoes or even a sleepsuit[1] made for babies to clean the floor as they crawl[2] around the house! However, luckily enough there are also young people today who are creating and selling real solutions for problems their local community experiences.

Several teenagers from Aswan have been trained to produce and sell their ideas in order to help those that live in their area. The inventions include a range[3] of useful solutions. One of the tastiest options by Azhar is a fruity dessert for those who are breaking fast and don't want to eat dairy[4] products.

Eman has created a collection of clothes with a complete range of matching accessories[5] so those in her neighbourhood do not have to go to several different shops to get the perfect outfit. The unique[6] selling point of these ideas is that they are offering practical solutions to real problems, and also help to reduce pollution, as their customers do not need to use cars or buses to travel outside their neighbourhoods.

The training project, which is a joint[7] effort between governmental and non-governmental organizations, has been a great success amongst both boys and girls. The hope is that it will produce more entrepreneurs who will create real solutions for those common problems we come across[8] every day.

(1) بدلة نوم
(2) يزحف
(3) تنوع
(4) منتجات ألبان
(5) إكسسوارات
(6) متميز
(7) مشترك
(8) يصادف

Listening Text (Workbook)



Welcome to New World, the programme that brings you detailed information about the latest inventions which aim at improving lives. Today we hear the story of an invention which is set to save millions of people around the world.

At the age of 15, when she heard that losing blood was the second most common cause of deaths[1] in hospitals, Deena Mousa decided to work on finding a solution to this life and death problem.

It all started at the age of 5 when Deena , whose parents are Egyptian, carried out her first experiment on plants. Since that moment she has not stopped her search for solutions to real problems. Her objective has always been to find answers to the everyday issues we all face. At the age of fifteen, and with the help of her father, who works in a lab, Deena gained access to the necessary equipment to start her research. Twelve years later she had invented Hemostat V-Seal liquid[2] drops.

Before she had made the breakthrough[3] the usual time it took for medicines to stop bleeding[4] in patients was up to 12 minutes. This, Deena says, shocked her into finding a better solution. Her chemical invention can stop bleeding in as little as 10 seconds. This major[5] innovation[6] means the difference between a patient losing millilitres or litres of blood.

Knowing that 35% of people who suffer a serious injury die from uncontrolled loss of blood before they get to hospital means that Deena's invention can save a huge number of lives in a wide range of contexts[7]. While this is clearly good news for soldiers[8] in the army, surgeons[9] in hospitals are also looking forward to being able to use the liquid in the case of unexpected problems during operations[10] and save more lives.

Deena is now working on the business plan to ensure[11] her solution reaches as many people as possible at an affordable price, which is why she is in discussions with pharmaceutical[12] companies. She hopes it will only cost a few cents to make sure it is widely accessible[13].

In a recent interview Deena said she was very happy to be able to provide a solution for others which has always been her goal in life and that she hopes her discovery will inspire others to follow their dreams no matter how young or old they are.

(1) وفيات
(2) سائل
(3) إنجاز/اختراق علمي
(4) نزيف
(5) رئيسي
(6) إبداع
(7) سياقات
(8) جنود
(9) جراحون
(10) عمليات جراحية
(11) يضمن
(12) دوائي
(13) سهل المنال

Video Script

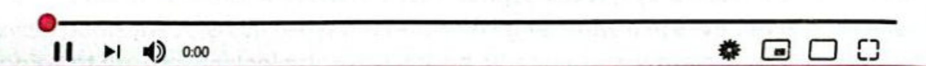
When you read about successful people who have achieved all their goals, it's easy to forget that most of them had many failures[1] before they became successful.

Failure is a word that most people don't want to hear. We all want to be successful, but when something goes wrong, many people just give up and try something different. Yet a lot of successful people failed many times before they achieved success. The main difference between long-term success and failure is the way we react[2] to it. The winners[3] are the people who think of ways to overcome the problems and keep working towards their goal.

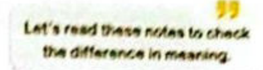
We've all heard of Albert Einstein, who was brilliant at physics[4], but at school he was not a good student. He had problems learning to speak and his teachers didn't think he was very clever. Yet, he continued studying and was accepted to university the second time he applied. He qualified[5], worked hard and later he won the Nobel Prize for Physics.

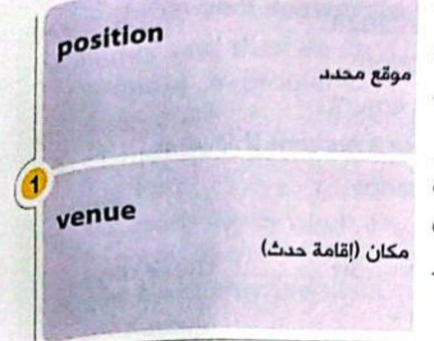
Michael Jordan, who is probably one of the world's most famous basketball players, was once dropped[6] from his high school basketball team. Instead of giving up, Jordan practised and improved until he managed to get back into a basketball team. He says that during his career he lost over 300 games and failed over and over again, but his determination to succeed helped him achieve his goals.

(1) حالات فشل
(2) يقوم برد فعل
(3) فائزون
(4) الفيزياء
(5) يتأهل
(6) يخرج من فريق



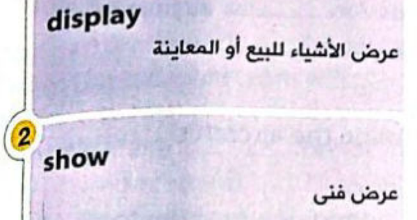






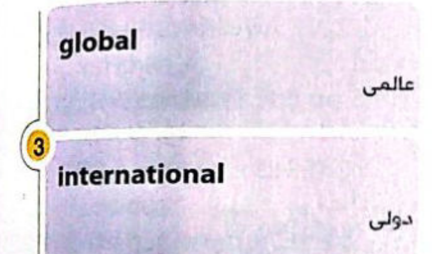
position: the place where someone or something is, especially in relation to other objects and places
- She showed me the position of the village on the map.

venue: a place where something such as a meeting, concert, game, etc. takes place
- The meeting will be held at a venue in the south of the city.



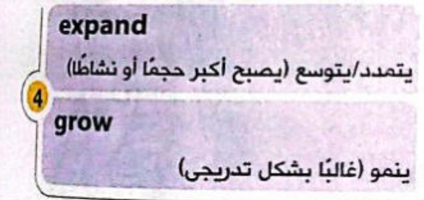
display: an arrangement of things for people to look at or buy
- There was a special display of local photographs.

show: a performance for the public, especially one that includes singing, dancing, or jokes
- Tonight's show is live from Cairo Stadium.



global: affecting or including the whole world
- Only the UN can tackle global problems like pollution of the atmosphere.

international: relating to or involving more than one nation
- This is CNN, bringing you all the latest international news.



expand: The business has expanded at a rate of 15% per year.

grow: The number of people working from home has grown substantially.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Paris is the .... for the next Olympic Games 2024.
   a) venue b) position
   c) road d) placement
2. The economy is expected to .... by roughly 2 percent this year.
   a) triple b) expand
   c) grow d) deny
3. The young actress is presenting a new television quiz .... these days.
   a) display b) show
   c) presentation d) fair
4. The New Administrative Capital will surely have a/an .... airport.
   a) internal b) global
   c) international d) outside
5. Radars are the devices which are used to determine the aircraft's ....
   a) venue b) scenery
   c) placement d) position



Practice



Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Father says that we can't .... to go anywhere this summer because of his financial مالى problems.
   a) produce b) afford c) attend d) apply
2. All members of the team are requested to .... this important meeting.
   a) afford b) reject c) refuse d) attend
3. Prices are lower when there is .... among the big stores.
   a) compilation b) accommodation c) competition d) consolidation
4. The children were silenced by the sudden .... of the serious headmaster, Mr Kamel.
   a) entry b) exit c) display d) show
5. The robber was .... as tall and dark, and aged about 20.
   a) prescribed b) described c) ascribed d) preserved
6. Our national team will play three of last year's beaten .... in the championship.
   a) minors b) losers c) finalists d) locals
7. I'll make .... for you to be met at the airport by my driver.
   a) agreements b) replacements c) managements d) arrangements
8. There are some plans to .... the local airport in Hurghada to make it fit for bigger flights.
   a) describe b) reduce c) expand d) balance
9. The ozone layer .... harmful ultraviolet rays from the sun.
   a) charges b) filters c) shares d) stores
10. The concert's still on Saturday, but its .... has been changed.
    a) venue b) position c) scenery d) avenue
11. The manager briefly .... what we are trying to achieve this year.
    a) lined b) inclined c) outlined d) underlined
12. There is a wheelchair .... to most of the public buildings in the city.
    a) access b) road c) rail d) stop
13. This creative project shows the .... effort exerted by a group of good students.
    a) single b) joint c) pointed d) individual
14. My uncle's shop sells bathroom .... such as mirrors and towel-rails.
    a) accessories b) accesses c) tools d) jewellery
15. The book suggests some .... ways to save money. You should read it.
    a) minor b) unimportant c) practical d) invaluable

16 Experts say mild exercises such as jogging can .... you fit as much as training hard.

a) stay b) keep c) give d) do

17 Each person's fingerprints are unique. The word "unique" is the opposite of the word "..................".

a) common b) fascinating c) dull d) agreed

18 The small company was successful .... winning the contract for the new Mall.

a) by b) to c) for d) in

19 The art gallery has an impressive .... of modern art works.

a) collect b) collection c) collective d) collected

20 The committee لجنة .... recommendations to the board on teachers' pay and conditions.

a) followed b) took c) did d) made

21 The new water tank has a .... filter to clean the water in it.

a) remove b) removal c) removable d) removed

22 The aim of the meeting is to .... trade between the two countries.

a) promote b) promotion c) promotional d) promoted

23 Mother always insists that the curtains and carpets in the room match .... the colours of the furniture.

a) for b) against c) with d) at

24 It is said that Fleming discovered penicillin almost by ....

a) event b) incident c) accident d) option

25 To clean the new office, I've sorted .... the papers that can be thrown away.

a) at b) of c) in d) out

26 Nour proudly displayed her certificate to her parents. The antonym of the word "display" is "..................".

a) show b) hide c) uncover d) invent

27 Have you ever designed a life-.................. invention? (Longman)

a) changing b) charger c) changes d) challenger

28 Do you think planting more trees could .... pollution completely? (Longman)

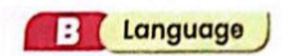
a) add b) mix c) remove d) move

29 The young man couldn't .... to buy that expensive mobile; it was too expensive for him. (Longman)

a) prevent b) afford c) refuse d) hesitate

30 The factory .... old plastic objects to make toys for young children. (Longman)

a) circles b) removes c) does d) recycles



Relative pronouns

١) تستخدم what كرابط بمعنى (ما) وهى تساوى the thing(s) that

فاعل/فعل **What** فعل أو ضمير أو اسم لا تعود هى عليه

- I didn't understand what he had said. (what had been said).
  I can't give him (Ahmed) what he needs.

- يمكن أن تكون what أول الكلام.

- What makes me angry is that Ahmed always comes late.

٢) تستخدم (which) لتشير إلى جملة كاملة قبلها.

- My brother won a valuable prize, which made me happy.

٣) تستخدم whose بدلاً من أشكال الملكية كلها مثل:

- The girl ~~with~~ blue eyes is my sister.
  The girl whose eyes are blue is my sister.
- The man is rich. ~~He has~~ a red car.
  The man whose car is red is rich.
- The car won the race. Its colour is red.
  The car whose colour is red won the race.

٤) لاحظ الفرق بين whose/who's:

who's + v-ing/noun = who is ... who's + P.P. = who has ...

- The boy who's running there is my cousin.
- The boy whose phone was stolen was furious.

٥) هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كاسم وفعل فإذا استخدمت كاسم فإنها تسبق بـ whose (ومن الممكن أن نعرف أن هذه الكلمات اسم إذا جاء بعدها فعل) مثل:

wish, aim, show, mistake, stay, dream, work, play, like, dislike, end, hope, etc.

- The boy whose dream has come true is happy.
- I like ~~the~~ stories whose ends are happy.

٦) نستخدم that بعد صيغة التفضيل وبعد الكلمات الآتية:

all - any (thing) – every (thing) – few – little – many – much – no (thing) – none – some (thing)

- Is this all that you want me to do?
- There isn't anything that we can eat in this house.
- This is the best book that I have ever read.

٧) يمكن استخدام why (for which) كضمير وصل كالآتي:

- I'd like to know the reason why (for which) he decided to come.

حالات حذف ضمير الوصل

١) إذا كان فى محل مفعول به.

- The meat was delicious. We ate it yesterday.
- The meat (which/that) we ate yesterday was delicious.
- The man is my neighbour. I meet him every day.
- The man (who/whom/that) I meet every day is my neighbour.

٢) إذا كان بعده مبنى للمجهول نحذف which + v. to be ونضع P.P.:

- I still remember the encouragement given to me by my parents. (which was)

٣) إذا كان بعده مبنى معلوم نحذف which/who ونضع v-ing:

- The boy sitting beside me is naughty. (who sits/who is sitting)

٤) إذا كان بعده اسم أو اسم موصوف نحذف who/which + v. to be ولا نضع شيئًا:

- Hossam Hassan, a famous footballer, won many prizes. (who was)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The road .... the two villages is very narrow.
   a) joined b) joining
   c) which is joined d) who is joining
2. Why do you blame me for everything .... goes wrong?
   a) which b) who
   c) that d) what
3. The first thing I saw when I entered the art gallery was a notice .... "Do not touch the exhibits!".
   a) which saying b) who saying
   c) saying d) that saying
4. The film .... to see is on TV tonight.
   a) which I've always wanted b) which I've always wanted it
   c) has always wanted d) I've always wanted it
5. My cousin, ... thirty this weekend, has bought a house in Port Said.
   a) that b) who's
   c) whom d) whose

Practice — Practise more — Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tom, ... friend lives in Cairo, has gone on holiday to Egypt.
   a) that b) whom c) whose d) who
2. I saw a friend .... I hadn't seen for ages.
   a) whom b) whose c) which d) for whom
3. Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, ... was a doctor by profession, invented Sherlock Holmes.
   a) whose b) that c) whom d) who
4. Here's the barber's .... I have my hair cut.
   a) that b) where c) whom d) who
5. Khalid, ... father is a mechanic, has just repaired our car.
   a) whose his b) who c) who's d) whose
6. In the summer holidays, ... most people take their holidays, seaside towns are usually very busy.
   a) when b) which c) that d) whose
7. The company, ... is in Helwan, employs 1,000 employees.
   a) where b) what c) which d) that
8. Judy, ... father works for a multi-national company, often travels abroad with her family.
   a) who b) whose c) who's d) that
9. They treated the poor man rudely, ... made me angry.
   a) which b) whom c) who d) in which
10. The furniture .... by this company is tasteful and lasts for a long time.
    a) which made b) made c) is made d) which making
11. Ten people, ... three children, were injured in the plane crash.
    a) included b) which included
    c) including d) who were included
12. Heba lost the book .... her last month.
    a) which I lent it b) which lent c) who lent d) I lent

13 The reason .... I don't like Ramy is because he is selfish.

a) where b) which c) why d) whose

14 I don't like people .... words are so rude.

a) whose b) who c) whom d) who's

15 The flat .... is overlooking the Nile.

a) which he bought it b) he bought

c) he bought it d) he buying

16 No one knew exactly .... happened to cause that terrible accident.

a) which b) who

c) that d) what

17 I didn't buy anything because I didn't see .... I wanted.

a) which b) what

c) that d) when

18 The man .... this luxurious house is very modest.

a) owned b) owns

c) who is owned d) owning

19 My teacher is a person ....

a) who everybody likes him b) everybody likes him

c) everybody likes d) that everybody likes him

20 I work for a company ....

a) what exports clothes b) exporting clothes

c) whose exports clothes d) exports clothes

21 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) Look! That's the boy the teacher punished.

b) Look! That's the boy who the teacher punished.

c) Look! That's the boy punishing by the teacher.

d) Look! That's the boy punished by the teacher.

22 I bought a laptop ....

a) which it has got a Chinese-English dictionary built in

b) whose Chinese-English dictionary built in

c) got a Chinese-English dictionary built in

d) which has got a Chinese-English dictionary built in

23 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) The pyramids, which we visited yesterday, are very old.

b) The pyramids which we visited them yesterday are very old.

c) The pyramids to which are very old were visited yesterday.

d) The pyramids, that we visited yesterday are very old.

24 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) I spoke to the assistant which deals with complaints.

b) I spoke to the assistant who deals with complaints.

c) I spoke to the assistant dealt with complaints.

d) I spoke to the assistant deals with complaints.

25 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) Mr Ahmed in whose car we go to work is very generous.

b) Mr Ahmed whose car we go to work is very generous.

c) Mr Ahmed whose car is new is very generous.

d) Mr Ahmed who has a new car is very generous.

26 *Lion of the Desert,* .... is about a brilliant Bedouin leader, Omar al-Mukhtar, is an epic 1980 historical war film. (Longman)

a) whose b) which c) who d) whom

27 I highly appreciate the sales manager .... yesterday; he is very sensible and flexible. (Longman)

a) who I met him b) that I met him

c) I met him d) I met

28 .... he says is really logical; you should trust him. (Longman)

a) What b) which c) what's d) whose

29 The mobile phones .... in China are sold in a lot of countries all over the world. (Longman)

a) producing b) are produced

c) produced d) which produced

30 The factory, ... I work in, produces high quality cotton clothes. (Longman)

a) which b) that

c) where d) what

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1. The .... was carried out by a team of surgeons at Kasr Al Aini Hospital.
a) operation b) process c) argument d) quarrel
2. The new book puts the events of the 1919 Revolution in their proper historical and social ....
a) chapters b) divisions c) novels d) contexts
3. This water park isn't really a suitable .... for a children's show as it may be dangerous.
a) scenery b) position c) venue d) sign
4. The young couple were very excited when their baby first .... across the floor.
a) dug b) flew c) cried d) crawled
5. You can .... healthy by eating well and exercising regularly.
a) stay b) pass c) save d) rescue
6. Few people understand the complex issues of environmental science.
The adjective "complex" is similar in meaning to "..................".
a) simple b) complicated c) clear d) fragile
7. The exhibition gives local artists an opportunity to .... their works.
a) prove b) improve c) buy d) display
8. Youssef Shaheen .... a new style of films that are repeated by his colleagues.
a) created b) consumed c) affected d) recognised
9. The medical company uses animals in .... tests for some of its drugs.
a) crime b) history c) laboratory d) print
10. The government has made a big .... to tackle the problem of poverty.
a) effort b) attack c) fight d) right
11. My little daughter always prefers yoghurt with a .... flavour especially strawberry.
a) leafy b) fruity c) spicy d) meaty
12. Natural vitamins in the shampoo will help .... damaged hair.
a) repair b) destroy c) defect d) display
13. All new staff will be .... in customer service skills.
a) requested b) applied c) trained d) offered
14. Some employees were given the .... of retiring early.
a) violence b) obligation c) necessity d) option
15. The students in our school are all highly .... to get the first prize in the competition.
a) moved b) motivated c) removed d) described

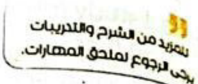
Language

16. I study four languages, ... is a lot for me to learn.
a) that b) who c) which d) what
17. The teacher .... I had a tutorial دورة تعليمية last week explains things really clearly.
a) that b) whom c) to whom d) with whom
18. A stamp is something .... on a letter if you want to send it.
a) you put b) you put it c) which you put it d) putting
19. Show me .... you've got in your hand.
a) which b) what c) who's d) that
20. She's the teacher .... came to our school last week.
a) whom b) whose c) where d) who
21. The meat .... yesterday was delicious.
a) eating b) which ate c) eaten d) which eaten
22. This is the hotel .... rooms have a view of the sea.
a) which b) whose c) who's d) where
23. That house, ... was sold yesterday, is 200 years old.
a) which b) whose c) where d) that
24. A racket is something .... to hit a ball when you play tennis or badminton.
a) which you use b) which you use it c) you use it d) b and c
25. Arthur Conan Doyle, ... wrote the Sherlock Holmes stories, was born in Edinburgh.
a) which b) whom c) who d) that
26. My son, ... over there, has a degree in biology.
a) who standing b) standing c) stands d) is standing
27. I went to buy a new bag, but I couldn't find .... I wanted.
a) which b) whose c) that d) what
28. The house .... my grandparents lived is being demolished.
a) which b) where c) that d) whose
29. I must tell you about the courageous man .... I met on my last holiday.
a) that b) what c) which d) whose
30. Which one of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?
a) This is the dress my mother has made for me.
b) This is the dress which my mother has made for me.
c) This is the dress who my mother has made for me.
d) This is the dress that my mother has made for me.





Writing Skill





A report about an experience تقرير عن تجربة عملية

Imagine that you attended a three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur. The organisers have asked you to write a report on your experience.

Plan your report. Your report should:

- outline what the course involved and how it was organised.
- explain what was good for you.
- make recommendations for how the course could be improved.
- say if you would recommend the course or not.

Report on the Young Inventor's Competition

Introduction: The purpose of this report is to describe my experience with the three-day course about how to become a young entrepreneur at the Centre for Leader Preparation in Helwan.

The organisation: I live in Alexandria. I took part in a competition for young people who have ideas or inventions that could be used as the basis for a business. I was chosen for the course with some other young people. The organisers arranged our accommodation at a youth hostel near the centre and there were good lectures with practical ideas about the course.

Suggested improvements: Although it was great to be part of this course, one thing was missing. In my opinion, the course organisers should have invited some businessmen who can support and help the best young people to start a new business.

Conclusion: Overall, I had a really positive experience and I would really recommend taking part in such courses. In my view, this may lead to good results for the participants and our country.



1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A Yugoslavian nun[1], Mother Theresa, first came to India to teach young girls from wealthy Indian families. However, in her travels around the country, she saw how the poor Indian people lived. There were homeless[2] people living in the streets. Some were too poor to feed[3] themselves and died of starvation[4].

No one in the country who could help them did anything for these poor people. She felt determined[5] to do something to help.

She realised that this was the job that God wanted her to do, so she left her highly paid job to help the poor in India. At first, it was hard for her. She did not have much support[6]. Whatever little food and money she had, she gave them to those who came to her for help. No one was ever turned away from her doorstep[7].

She went around the city looking for the homeless and starving and took them off the streets. When the people in the area saw how hard she was trying to help their own people, they felt ashamed[8]. They wanted to follow her example. They donated food and money to help the poor. With more support from the community[9], she set up many homes all over India. Soon, she was known all over the world as the savior[10] of the poor.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where was Mother Theresa from?
   a) Europe. b) Africa. c) Asia. d) South America.
2. It seemed that the people in India had .... hearts before Theresa's arrival.
   a) kind b) gentle c) caring d) cruel
3. "No one was ever turned away from her doorstep" means ....
   a) no one came to her house for help
   b) she didn't let anyone leave without help
   c) she didn't help all those who came for help
   d) no one came to support her
4. The phrase "have nothing to eat" is the synonym of "..................".
   a) ashamed b) support c) starving d) homeless

(1) راهبة (2) مشردون (3) يطعم (4) مجاعة (5) مصمم (6) يعاون/يساند (7) درجة أمام الباب الخارجى (عتبة) (8) خجلان (9) مجموعة تعيش معا (10) المنقذ

5. Mother Theresa's original job was ....
   a) helping homeless people living in the streets
   b) fighting starvations and poverty
   c) teaching young girls from wealthy Indian families
   d) donating food and money to help the poor
6. Mother Theresa determined to help the poor because ....
   a) she had a lot of money
   b) she realised that this was the job God wanted her to do
   c) they were in India
   d) they loved her
7. The work of helping the poor didn't start off well because ....
   a) there were no more poor people
   b) she travelled and left them
   c) most of them became rich
   d) she didn't have much support
8. Mother Theresa was known ....
   a) only in India b) all over the world c) in Europe d) all over Asia

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1. Scientific research proved that there are different kinds of food which have a great effect on preventing the elderly from having cancer, such as garlic and cabbage.
   a) أثبتت الأبحاث العلمية أن هناك أنواعا متنوعة من الأغذية لها تأثير كبير على منع كبار السن من الإصابة بالسرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب.
   b) أثبت البحث العلمى أن هناك أنواعا عديدة من الغذاء لها تأثير كبير على حماية كبار السن من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب.
   c) لقد تم إثبات أن بالبحث العلمى هنالك أنواع عديدة من الأطعمة لها اثر كبير على حماية كبار السن من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب.
   d) أثبت البحث العلمى أن هناك أنواعا مختلفة من الطعام ليس لها تأثير كبير على تجنب كبار السن من الوقاية من السرطان مثل الثوم والكرنب.
2. The essence of good manners is consideration for other people. You cannot help admiring decent people who naturally think of others and help them with good will.
   a) إن جوهر الأخلاق الحميدة هو الاعتبار بالآخرين فلا يمكننا المساعدة فى الإعجاب بالناس اللائقين الذين يراعون الآخرين ويساعدونهم بإرادة صادقة.
   b) إن أساس الخلق الحميد هو الاهتمام بالآخرين فيمكنك المساعدة فى الإعجاب بالناس اللائقين الذين لا يهتمون بالآخرين ويساعدونهم بعزيمة صادقة.
   c) إن أصل الخلق الحميد هو رعاية الآخرين فيمكننا التوقف عن الإعجاب بالناس المحترمين الذين يهتمون بالآخرين ولا يساعدونهم بعزيمة حميدة.
   d) إن جوهر الأخلاق الحميدة هو الاهتمام بالآخرين فلا يمكنك التوقف عن الإعجاب بالناس المحترمين الذين يهتمون بالآخرين ويساعدونهم بحسن نية.
3. Encouraging young inventors can provide us with suitable technological solutions for our problems. These inventors can be the hope for a better society in Egypt.
   a) يمكننا تشجيع المخترعين الصغار بالحلول التكنولوجية المناسبة مع شكوكنا وقد لا يكون من هؤلاء المخترعين الأمل الأفضل للمجتمع فى مصر.
   b) يمكن أن يزودنا تشجيع المخترعين الصغار بالحلول التكنولوجية المتطابقة لشكوانا وقد يكون من هؤلاء المخترعين الأمل لمجتمع أفضل فى مصر.
   c) تشجيع المخترعين الصغار يستطيع أن يوفر الحلول التكنولوجية الأنسب لمشكلاتنا وقد يكون هؤلاء المخترعون الأمل الأفضل للمجتمع فى مصر.
   d) أن تشجيع المخترعين الصغار يمكن أن يزودنا بالحلول التكنولوجية المناسبة لمشكلاتنا وقد يكون هؤلاء المخترعون الأمل لمجتمع أفضل فى مصر.

4. Egyptian investors and businessmen have a great responsibility to finance new inventions. This can lead to great progress for Egypt and reasonable economic benefits for them.
   a) يمتلك المستثمرون ورجال العمل المصريون مسئوليات كبيرة لتمويل المشروعات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تطور كبير لمصر وفوائد مالية معقولة لهم.
   b) لدى المستثمرين ورجال الأعمال المصريين مسئولية كبيرة لتمويل الاختراعات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تقدم كبير لمصر وفوائد اقتصادية معقولة لهم.
   c) المستثمرون ورجال الأعمال المصريون يمتلكون مسئولية كبيرة تجاه الاستكشافات الجديدة وهذا قد يؤدى إلى نمو كبير لمصر ومنافع مالية معقولة لهم.
   d) المستثمرون ورجال الأعمال المصريون يمتلكون مسئولية كبيرة تجاه تمويل المخترعين الجدد وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تقدم عظيم لمصر منافع واقتصادية معقولة لهم.
5. Some experts believe that the coming decades will witness a shortage of food as a result of overpopulation. Genetic engineering is one of the solutions to this problem.
   a) يعتقد بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد نقصا فى الغذاء نتيجة للزيادة السكانية وتعتبر الهندسة الوراثية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.
   b) يؤمن بعض الخبراء بأن العقود القادمة ستشهد زيادة فى الغذاء نتيجة لعدد السكانى وتعد الهندسة العمرانية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.
   c) قد يعتقد بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد نقصا فى الأغذية نتيجة للسكان والهندسة الوراثية من أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.
   d) يظن بعض الخبراء أن العقود القادمة ستشهد انتقاص فى الغذاء بسبب الزيادة السكانية وتعد الهندسة المعمارية أحد حلول هذه المشكلة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6. تعد كثير من المنظمات برامج خاصة لتدريب الشباب على أن يكونوا رواد أعمال صغارًا وأن يبدءوا مشروعاتهم الصغيرة وخاصة تلك التى ترتبط بالتكنولوجيا الحديثة والتى لا تحتاج إلى استثمارات كبيرة.
   a) Many organisations count special programmes to projects, young people to be young businessmen and start their small projects, especially those which are joined with modern technology and don't need big investments.
   b) Many organisations prepare special programmes to train young people to be young entrepreneurs and start their small projects, especially those which are connected with modern technology and don't need big investments.
   c) Many organisations get ready for special programmes to practise young people to be young businessmen and start their small projects, especially those which are connected with modern technology and don't need great investments.
   d) Many organisations number special programmes to exercise young persons to be young entrepreneurs and start their small projects, especially those which are contacted with modern technology and don't need big investments.
7. يشكل الوالدان شخصية أبنائهم منذ بداية طفولتهم، فهم يعلمونهم القيم والعادات وأيضا يشاركونهم الاهتمامات والألعاب ويطورون الروابط العاطفية معهم.
   a) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They provide them the values and hobbies as well, take part with them interests and plays and develop the sensitive ties with them.
   b) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They teach them the values and habitats as well, participate them importance and games and develop the emotional contacts with them.
   c) Parents form their sons and daughters' character from the beginning of their childhood. They teach them the values and habits as well, share them interests and games and develop the emotional ties with them.
   d) Parents frame their sons and daughters' character from the start of their childhood. They acquire them the values and habits as well, share them interests and plays and develop the sensible connections with them.

8 يؤكد الأطباء أن الحياة الصحية وممارسة التمرينات بانتظام من أهم وسائل الوقاية من الأمراض؛ لأن ذلك يدعم جهاز المناعة الذى يستطيع مقاومة الأمراض.

a) Doctors assert that a health life and doing exercises regularly are one of the most important ways which protects diseases. That's why this helps the immune system which can prevent diseases.
b) Doctors reassure that a healthy life and practising exercises regularly are among the most important ways which avoids diseases. That's because this supports the immune system which can fight illnesses.
c) Doctors assure that a health life and practising exercises regularly are one of the most important ways which prevents diseases. That's why this supports the immune system which can avoid illnesses.
d) Doctors assert that a healthy life and practising exercises regularly are among the most important ways which prevents diseases. That's because this supports the immune system which can resist diseases.

9 نبهت الأزمات المختلفة التى مر بها العالم إلى أهمية الاكتفاء الذاتى وخاصة فى مجال الغذاء؛ لأنها أدت إلى تعطل النقل وزيادة الأسعار بشكل كبير.

a) The various disasters the world has experienced, have alarmed out the importance of self-efficiency, especially in the field of food. That's as it led to transport disruptions and a significant decrease in prices.
b) The various crises the world has experienced, have alerted to the importance of self-sufficiency, especially in the field of food. That's because it led to transport disruptions and greatly increased prices.
c) The various crises the world has passed through, have pointed out the importance of self-sufficiency, particularly in the department food. That's because it led to transport disruptions and a significant rise in prices.
d) The various disasters the world has experimented, have pointed out the importance of self-efficiency, especially in the field of food. That's because it led to transportation disruptions and a decrease in prices.

10 كان لاتخاذ الإجراءات الاحترازية فى مواقع العمل فى المشـــروعات القومية الكبرى أثر فى اســـتمرار العمل فيها مما ساعد قطاعا كبيرا من الشعب المصرى.

a) Making appropriate measures in setting up sites of the great international projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian people.
b) Having precautionary measurements in work sites of the great national projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian nation.
c) Taking precautionary measures in building sites of the great national projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian people.
d) Doing necessary measurements in work sites of the great local projects had an effect on the continuing of work in them. This helped a big sector of the Egyptian nation.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can we encourage young inventors to get better?"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The businessman is a .... supporter of sports and he is the sponsor of some young athletes.
a) secret b) passionate c) specific d) desperate

2 There should be more laws to enhance environmental and wildlife .... in Egypt.
a) imagination b) convention c) conservation d) condensation

3 My friend won the first prize in the art .... at the university.
a) compilation b) accommodation c) consolidation d) competition

4 The young man is wanted by the police as a/an .... to the murder.
a) accessory b) device c) equipment d) outfit

5 Students must be taught to do their best to .... their goals in life.
a) do b) achieve c) set d) arrive

6 Much of the crime in this area is related to drug abuse. The synonym of the word "related" is "..............".
a) separate b) defective c) associated d) delayed

7 They have three sons, ... are living abroad.
a) who b) that c) which d) whose

8 All the students .... to organise a picnic were discouraged when they saw the dark clouds.
a) wish b) wishing c) whished d) are wished

9 This is the restaurant .... I usually go for my meals.
a) to which b) which c) at which d) in which

10 The boys .... lives were rescued by the policemen are fine now.
a) who b) who's c) which d) whose

11 Confusing topics .... are well-expressed can be understood.
a) who b) that c) where d) when

12 The questions .... in the exam were specially chosen.
a) asking b) which asked c) asked d) that ask

13 Shakespeare, most of .... plays were adapted for cinema, is still admired by many.

a) whose b) his c) who's d) who

14 We stayed in a hotel ....

a) where every room had a broadband connection

b) which every room had a broadband connection

c) that every room had a broadband connection

d) every room had a broadband connection

15 The bike .... gears are excellent is expensive.

a) what b) which c) that d) whose

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What is an ideal[1] holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant one for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied.

If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool.

Even if the sportsman and his lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty[2] of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable[3] chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me. Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating[4] and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety[5] of foods.

But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language spoken around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious[6] foreign city that comes to mind.



(1) مثالى
(2) وفرة/كثرة
(3) مريح
(4) يعرق/ينضح
(5) تنوع/اختلاف
(6) غامض/مبهم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 A sportsman is fond of ....

a) playing games b) reading books

c) eating much food d) sleeping early

17 The utmost pleasure of a sea holiday is ....

a) coming to new states b) coming to new harbours

c) meeting people d) going shopping

18 The underlined word one refers to ....

a) the lazy man b) the passenger

c) the sportsman d) anyone

19 The best title to this text is ".....................".

a) Sportsmen b) Lazy people

c) A passenger ship d) An ideal holiday

20 One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage: ....

a) Coming to new ports in strange lands is an enjoyable moment

b) A voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool would suit the sportsman and his lazy friend

c) The writer seems to like the sea

d) A voyage in a modern passenger ship would be noisy

21 The writer seems to be .... concerning trying foods.

a) adventurous b) timid c) selfish d) worried

22 The antonym of the word "unsatisfied" is ".....................".

a) unhappy b) disappointed c) contented d) unconvinced

23 The writer likes to be .... on a ship to enjoy his voyage.

a) in company b) alone c) lonely d) single

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- Opposing terrorism has been tried by many countries around the world. Yet, terrorists are still getting support from various organisations to achieve their illegal goals in many countries.

a) معارضة الإرهاب تمت من قبل العديد من الدول فى العالم. ومع ذلك لا يزال الإرهابيون لا يحصلون على المساندة من مختلف المنظمات لتحقيق أهدافهم غير القانونية فى العديد من البلدان.

b) لم تحاول العديد من الدول حول العالم مناهضة الإرهاب. ولذلك لا يزال الإرهابيون لا يحصلون على الدعم من المنظمات المختلفة لتحقيق أهدافهم المشروعة فى العديد من البلدان.

c) لقد جربت العديد من الدول حول العالم أن تتوقف عن معارضة الإرهاب. ومع ذلك، لا يزال الإرهابيون يحصلون على المساندة من المنظمات المختلفة لتحقيق أهدافهم القانونية فى العديد من البلدان.

d) لقد حاولت العديد من الدول حول العالم مناهضة الإرهاب. ومع ذلك، لا يزال الإرهابيون يحصلون على الدعم من مختلف المنظمات لتحقيق أهدافهم غير القانونية فى العديد من البلدان.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

- تشتهر مصر بكثير من الأماكن الرائعة التى تجذب السائحين من جميع أنحاء العالم. لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أغنى الدول بسبب العملة الصعبة التى يمكن أن نحصل عليها من السائحين القادمين لمصر.

a) Egypt fames for many amazing views that bring tourists from all over the world. If we use them well, we would have become one of the richest countries because of the hard coins that we can take from tourists going to Egypt.

b) Egypt is knowing for many amazing places that make tourists visit from all over the world. If we exploited them well, we would become one of the richest countries because of the hard currency that we can give from tourists visiting to Egypt.

c) Egypt is famous for many amazing places that attract tourists from all over the world. If we exploited them well, we would become one of the richest countries because of the hard currency that we can get from tourists coming to Egypt.

a) Egypt is famous for many amazing areas that attack tourists from all over the world. If we make good use of them well, we would have become one of the richest countries because of the hard coins that we can get from tourists watching Egypt.

26 Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Edgar, would you fight and kill your own brother? Why?
2. Who do you think the most hateful female character in the play is?
3. What do you think of the end of the play?

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can universities play a role in providing us with technological solutions for our problems?"

....

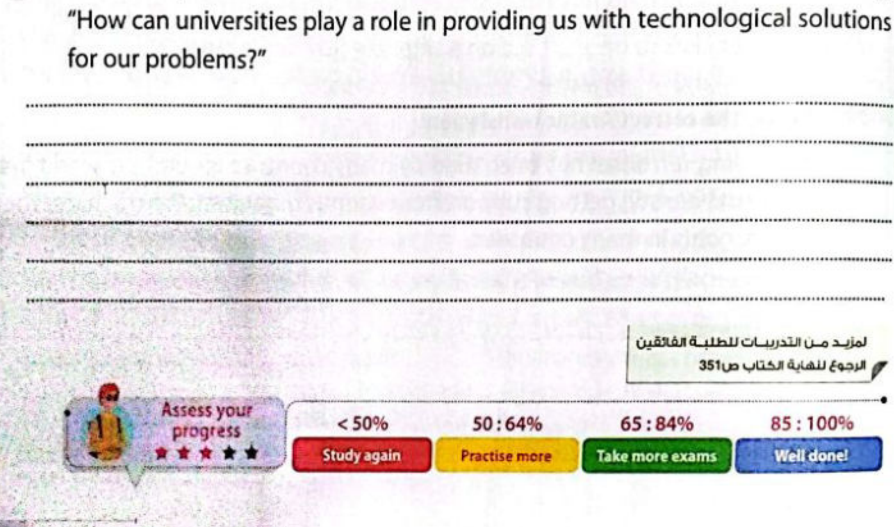
....

....

....

....

....



لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص351

Assess your progress ★★★★★	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

King Lear

The Play

Act III, Scenes v-vii

Vocabulary

arrest	يقبض على	madness	جنون/حماقة
authority	تفويض/سلطة/نفوذ	prove	يثبت
betray	يخون/يفضح/يفشى سراً	punish	يعاقب
carriage	عربة تجرها الخيول	rest	استراحة/راحة
cruel	قاسى القلب	revenge	انتقام/ثأر/يثأر/ينتقم
cure	يعالج/يشفى/يتداوى	spy	جاسوس
deceive	يخدع/يضلل	stupid	أحمق/غبى
enemy	عدو	thief	لص
guilty	مُذنب	traitor	خائن
interrupt	يقاطع	trust	ثقة/يثق
kneel	يركع/يجثو على ركبتيه	truth	حقيقة
loyalty	إخلاص/وفاء	wound	جرح/يجرح

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

stand for	ينوب عن/يدافع عن	take revenge for	ينتقم لـ
get rid of	يتخلص من	pick ... up	يلتقط

Text

[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall enters with Edmund.]

CORNWALL: Listen, Edmund. I'll have my revenge[1] before I leave Gloucester's house.

EDMUND: I'm sorry, Cornwall, because the truth is so sad. This is the letter that my father Gloucester told me about. It proves[2] that he's a spy, and that he's writing to the King of France. Oh, I wish he weren't guilty! It's very difficult for me to discover this terrible truth.

CORNWALL: We'll go and see Regan.

EDMUND: If the letter is true, you have work to do to stop him.

CORNWALL: If it is true or false, it has made you the next Duke of Gloucester. Find your father and then we can arrest him.

EDMUND: *[To himself.]* If I find him helping the King, Cornwall will think he is even more guilty.

[To Cornwall.] I'll continue to show you my loyalty[3], although it hurts me to do this to my father.

CORNWALL: I trust you, Edmund, and you'll find me to be a better father than he is.

[They exit.]

Act III, Scene vi

[Gloucester enters.]

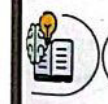
GLOUCESTER: My friend, where's the King?

KENT: He's here, sir; but be quiet, he's sleeping.

GLOUCESTER: Good friend, I've heard that there's a plan to get rid of[4] him. There's a carriage[5] waiting for you; help the King into it and drive to Dover, where you'll find people to help you. Go now. If you wait half an hour, you may both be killed. Follow me.

KENT: *[To Lear.]* You're sleeping now. This rest might help you, although it will be difficult to cure[6] your madness[7].

[To the Fool.] Come, help me to carry the King.



(1) انتقام/ثأر (2) يثبت (3) إخلاص/وفاء (4) يتخلص من (5) عربة تجرها الخيول (6) يعالج (7) جنون/حماقة

GLOUCESTER: Hurry up! We must leave now.

[They all exit except for Edgar.]

EDGAR: The poor King! His children have done to him what my father has done to me!

[He exits.]

Act III, Scene vii

[In Gloucester's Castle. Cornwall, Regan, Goneril, Edmund and Servants enter.]

CORNWALL: Goneril, send a message to your husband Albany and show him this letter. The French army has arrived in England.

[To the Servants.] Find the traitor[1], Gloucester.

REGAN: Arrest him now!

[Some of the Servants exit.]

CORNWALL: Leave him to me. Edmund, stay with Goneril. You shouldn't see what we'll do to your father, the traitor. Goodbye, my dear Goneril. Goodbye, Edmund, the new Duke of Gloucester.

[Oswald enters.] Where's the King?

OSWALD: The Duke of Gloucester has taken him away, sir. About thirty-five of his soldiers have gone with him. They're going to Dover, where they say they have some powerful friends.

CORNWALL: Get horses for Regan. Goodbye Edmund.

[Goneril exits with Edmund, and Oswald.]

Go and find that traitor, Gloucester. Bring him to us like a thief.

[The ot her Servants exit.]

I can't kill Gloucester because I don't have the authority[2], but I can punish him. And although people won't like this, they can't stop us.

[Gloucester enters, brought in by two or three men.]

Who's there? Is that the traitor, Gloucester?

REGAN: It's him.

CORNWALL: Make him kneel[3] in front of me.



(1) خائن (2) سلطة/نفوذ (3) يركع/يجثو على ركبتيه

GLOUCESTER: What are you doing? Good friends, you're in my house. Don't do this.

CORNWALL: Make him kneel, I said!

[The Servants make him kneel.]

REGAN: You cruel man. You've deceived[1] your son Edmund.

GLOUCESTER: You, my lady, are the one who's cruel, not me.

REGAN: You are a traitor!

GLOUCESTER: Cruel lady, what are you saying?

CORNWALL: What letters have you recently received from France?

REGAN: Give us your answer. We know the truth.

CORNWALL: And what have you planned with the traitors who have recently arrived in the kingdom?

REGAN: Who have you sent the mad King to? Tell us everything.

GLOUCESTER: Listen, I got a letter that explained what is happening. It came from someone who is neither a friend nor an enemy[2].

CORNWALL: That's clever.

REGAN: And untrue.

CORNWALL: Where have you sent the King?

GLOUCESTER: To Dover.

REGAN: Why have you sent him to Dover? I told you not to help him ...

CORNWALL: *[He interrupts[3] Regan.]* Why Dover? Let him answer that first.

GLOUCESTER: Because I didn't want to see his daughters continue to be so cruel to him.

CORNWALL: You will never see that! [Picks up a sword.] Come! Fight me!

[Gloucester tries to fight, but Cornwall hits his face with his sword.]

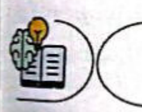
GLOUCESTER: Oh, help me! My eyes!

SERVANT 1: Stop, my lord! Stop now.

CORNWALL: Stop? Never! You can fight me too.

SERVANT 1: Very well, come on.

[They fight and the servant badly wounds Cornwall.]



(1) خدع/ضلل (2) عدو (3) يقاطع

REGAN: *[To a soldier.]* Give me your sword. A servant will not fight my husband like this! I won't stand for it![1]

[She takes a sword and kills the servant.]

SERVANT 1: Oh, I'm going to die! *[He dies.]*

GLOUCESTER: Everything is black now and I can't see! Where's my son Edmund? You must take revenge for[2] this terrible thing.

REGAN: Don't call for your son Edmund. He hates you. Edmund told us that you betrayed[3] us. He will not help you.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, I've been so stupid! Edgar is the one I should trust, not Edmund!

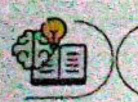
REGAN: Throw him out of the palace, and let him find his way to Dover.

[Two Servants help the now blind Gloucester from the stage.]

[To Cornwall.] What's the matter, my lord?

CORNWALL: I've been hurt. Regan! Look at all this blood! Give me your arm.

[Regan helps Cornwall off the stage. They exit.]



(1) لن أسمح بـ/لا أتحمل (2) ينتقم لـ (3) خان/خدع

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. What did the letter that Edmund showed Cornwall prove? WB
ماذا أثبت الخطاب الذى أظهره إدموند إلى كورنوال؟
It proved that Gloucester, his father, was a spy and was writing to the King of France.

2. What did Cornwall offer Edmund in return?
ماذا عرض كورنوال على إدموند فى المقابل؟
He said that he would become the new Duke of Gloucester instead of his father.

3. What did Gloucester tell Kent about the King?
ماذا قال جلوستر لكينت عن الملك؟
He told him that he had heard a plan to get rid of the King and that he had to take the King, in a prepared carriage, to Dover.

4. What message did Cornwall want Goneril to send to Albany?
ما هى الرسالة التى أراد كورنوال أن ترسلها جونيريل إلى ألبانى؟
He wanted her to tell him that the French army had arrived.

5. What did Oswald tell Cornwall about the King's place?
ماذا قال أوزوالد لكورنوال عن مكان الملك؟
He said that the King was taken to Dover with thirty-five of his men.

6. Why couldn't Cornwall kill Gloucester?
لماذا لم يتمكن كورنوال من قتل جلوستر؟
Because he didn't have the authority to do so.

7. What did Cornwall decide to do to Gloucester? WB
ماذا قرر كورنوال أن يفعل لجلوستر؟
He decided to punish him as he couldn't kill him.

8. What did Cornwall and Regan accuse Gloucester of?
بماذا اتهم كورنوال وريجان جلوستر؟
They accused him of being a traitor and that he was receiving letters from the King of France.

9. What happened in the fight between Cornwall and Gloucester?
ماذا حدث فى القتال بين كورنوال وجلوستر؟
Cornwall hit Gloucester's face with his sword.

10. Which part of Gloucester's body did Cornwall hit with his sword and injure? WB
أى جزء من جسد جلوستر ضربه كورنوال بسيفه وأصابه؟
He hit him on his eyes.

11. Why did the servant fight Cornwall? What was the result?
لماذا حارب الخادم كورنوال؟ ماذا كانت النتيجة؟
Because he defended Gloucester. The servant badly wounded Cornwall.

12. What did Regan do to defend her husband?
ماذا فعلت ريجان للدفاع عن زوجها؟
She took a sword from one of the soldiers and killed the servant.

13. What did Gloucester realise when Regan told him what Edmund had done?

ماذا أدرك جلوستر عندما أخبرته ريجان بما فعله إدموند؟

He realised that he had been tricked by Edmund and that he had to trust his elder son Edgar.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. If you were Edmund, would you try to prove that your father is a spy?

لو كنت مكان إدموند، هل ستحاول إثبات أن والدك جاسوس؟

No, I wouldn't. Any son should protect and care for his father even if he did anything wrong.

2. Is it right that Cornwall and Regan trust Edmund after betraying his father?

هل من الصحيح أن يثق كورنوال وريجان بإدموند بعد خيانة والده؟

No, I don't think so. He could betray them just as he did with his father.

3. What do you think of Cornwall's punishment of Gloucester?

ما رأيك فى عقوبة كورنوال لجلوستر؟

I think it was a violent and hard punishment to make a man blind and throw him in the street with no one to care for him.

4. Why do you think the servant defended Gloucester?

لماذا تعتقد أن الخادم دافع عن جلوستر؟

I think he sympathised with him and thought that he received a violent treatment.

5. Regan took a sword and killed the servant herself. What does this show about her?

أخذت ريجان سيفًا وقتلت الخادمة نفسها. ماذا يظهر هذا عنها؟

I think it shows that she is a cruel woman that can do anything for her interest.

6. Do you think that Gloucester deserved the punishment he received?

هل تعتقد أن جلوستر يستحق العقوبة التى تلقاها؟

No, I don't think so. He only tried to help the legal King whom he loved and served for many years.

7. If you were Gloucester, would you try to escape instead of confronting Cornwall and Regan? Why?

لو كنت مكان جلوستر، هل كنت ستحاول الهرب بدلاً من مواجهة كورنوال وريجان؟ لماذا؟

I would at least try to have some guards or servants to defend me against such an attack.

8. Do you think that Gloucester is really a traitor to help the King?

هل تعتقد أن جلوستر خائن حقًا لمساعدة الملك؟

No, I don't think so. He wanted to help his king and move him to safety.

. In your opinion, how else could Gloucester try to help the King?

فى رأيك، كيف يمكن لجلوستر أن يحاول مساعدة الملك؟

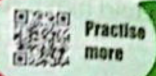
He could cooperate with the soldiers who wanted to help the King.

. Do you think that Cornwall would be a good king if he ruled over the country?

هل تعتقد أن كورنوال سيكون ملكًا جيدًا إذا حكم البلاد؟

No, I don't think so. He is a cruel man who would show no mercy for his people.

Practice



Act III, Scenes v-vii

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The tests .... the new vaccine to be effective against the virus.
   a) improved b) provided c) proved d) conducted
2. I was glad to .... rid of my old car when I finally sold it.
   a) get b) give c) take d) do
3. The King has a special .... with beautiful decoration which he rides in special ceremonies and occasions.
   a) plane b) monument c) carriage d) statue
4. A team of doctors .... the child of a rare blood disease.
   a) planned b) damaged c) healed d) cured
5. The soldier was a .... who betrayed his country by selling military secrets to the enemy.
   a) traitor b) commander c) hero d) champ
6. I complained to the hospital .... about the bad behaviour of the nurse.
   a) care b) treatment c) authority d) laboratory
7. The businessman had been .... by a young man claiming to be the son of a millionaire.
   a) presented b) honoured c) relieved d) deceived
8. It is believed that cats and dogs have always been natural .... to each other.
   a) mates b) enemies c) bosses d) allies
9. The spokesman says that it is better not to .... the minister's speech with any comment.
   a) attract b) consult c) interrupt d) rehearse
10. If someone doesn't like you and wants to hurt you, this person is your .... (SB)
   a) spy b) duke c) enemy d) relative

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. Edmund is a greedy person who would do anything to reach his ambitions. Do you agree? Why?
2. Although they lived in his palace and used his money, Cornwall and Regan punished Gloucester violently. Discuss.
3. If you were the servant who defended Gloucester, would you do the same? Why?
4. Cornwall was punished for what he did to Gloucester. Do you agree? Why?
5. In your opinion, was Gloucester right to arrange to move the King to Dover where the French army was? Why?
6. The hard time that King Lear faced made him realise who really loved and served him well. Do you agree? Why?
7. Both King Lear and Gloucester badly treated the people who really loved them. Do you agree? Why?
8. Do you think that King Lear deserved Gloucester's sacrifice? Why?

Act IV, Scenes i-iii

Vocabulary

beggar	متسول/شحاذ	lead	يقود
bleed	ينزف	lose	يخسر
bring	يُحضر	nearby	قريب
camp	مخيم/يخيم	pretend	يتظاهر
cliff	منحدر صخرى	remind	يذكر
evil	شر/شرير	rule	يحكم
hide	يخفى/يختبئ	storm	عاصفة
hold	يمسك/يثبت	sword	سيف
kingdom	مملكة	thoughts	أفكار

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

fall apart	يتداعى/يصبح محترثا	make ... mad	يجعل ... مجنونًا
call out	يصرخ	good to	جيد مع
hungry for power	راغب فى السلطة	angry with	غاضب من
take revenge of	ينتقم من		

Text

[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

EDGAR: When you have nothing, there's nothing left to lose.

[Gloucester enters led by an Old Man.]

But what's happened? Are my father's eyes bleeding?

GLOUCESTER: Go away, good friend. You can't help me now.

OLD MAN: But I want to help you, sir. You can't see. You can't find your way.

GLOUCESTER: I don't need any eyes. When I had eyes, I couldn't see what I most needed to see. Oh, my dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that I needed eyes again!

OLD MAN: Who's there?

EDGAR: *[To himself.]* Oh, now I feel worse than I ever did before.

OLD MAN: Look, it's poor, mad Tom. Where are you going, Tom?

GLOUCESTER: Is it a beggar in front of us?

OLD MAN: Yes, he's a mad man and a beggar.

GLOUCESTER: I saw a beggar[1] in last night's storm. He reminded me of my son, but I had no good thoughts about my son then. Now, however, I know the truth[2].

EDGAR: *[To himself.]* My father is so sad, he has fallen apart[3]. I wish I didn't have to pretend to be a beggar.

[To Gloucester, his father.] Hello, sir!

GLOUCESTER: Is that the mad beggar?

OLD MAN: Yes, it is, my lord.

GLOUCESTER: If you really want to help me, bring some clothes for this poor beggar. I'll ask him to take me to Dover.

OLD MAN: He can't help you, sir. He's mad!



(1) متسول/شحاذ (2) الحقيقة (3) يتداعى

GLOUCESTER: Please help him.

OLD MAN: OK, I'll bring him the best clothes that I can find, sir.

[He exits.]

GLOUCESTER: Come here, my friend.

EDGAR: Are your eyes OK? They're bleeding[1].

GLOUCESTER: Do you know the way to Dover?

EDGAR: Yes, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Here, take this money. All men should help each other. The rich especially should help the poor. There is a very high cliff[2] in Dover. Take me to the top of it. You don't need to take me anywhere else.

EDGAR: Of course. Poor Tom will take you there.

[They exit.]

Act IV, Scene ii

[In front of the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with Edmund.]

GONERIL: Welcome, Edmund.

[Oswald enters.]

Where's my husband, Oswald? I haven't seen him.

OSWALD: Madam, he's inside, but he's changed. I told him that the French army had arrived. He smiled. Then I told him you were coming. His answer was, "That is not good."

GONERIL: I told him that Gloucester had deceived us and that Edmund had been good to us. Then he told me that I had got everything wrong.

[To Edmund.] You shouldn't come in. My husband is angry with you. Go back to Cornwall. Get his army together and help him.

[Edmund exits.]

GONERIL: *[To herself.]* Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for power[3]. Perhaps I should use him to help me.

OSWALD: Madam, here comes your husband.

[The Duke of Albany enters.]

ALBANY: Oh Goneril, I'm starting to feel frightened of you. You are evil![4]



(1) ينزف
(2) منحدر صخري
(3) راغب في السلطة
(4) شر/شرير

GONERIL: Be quiet! Don't say anything more.

ALBANY: What have you done? You and Regan are tigers, not daughters. You've been cruel to your father, a kind old man. How could Cornwall allow you to do this? He has had so much from your father!

GONERIL: Soldiers are here from France, but all you do is sit here and cry, "Oh, why is he doing this?" Where is your sword?

ALBANY: Look at yourself, Goneril! Evil hides inside you.

[A messenger enters.]

ALBANY: What is the news?

MESSENGER: Oh, my lord, the Duke of Cornwall was killed by his servant after he fought Gloucester, and now Gloucester can't see.

ALBANY: Gloucester can't see! Poor Gloucester!

MESSENGER: Regan wants a quick answer to this letter.

GONERIL: *[To herself.]* In one way, this is good news. Without Cornwall, it's more likely that I can rule[1] over all the kingdom[2]. But now Edmund has gone to my sister's. I don't want him to help her soldiers. I'll read the letter and send her an answer.

[Goneril exits.]

ALBANY: Where was Gloucester's son Edmund when he fought with Cornwall?

MESSENGER: He was travelling here with my lady.

ALBANY: But he's not here.

MESSENGER: No, my lord. I met him travelling back again.

ALBANY: Does he know what has happened?

MESSENGER: Yes, my lord. Edmund told us about his father. Edmund left the house so that the Duke of Cornwall could punish[3] Gloucester.

ALBANY: *[To himself.]* Gloucester, I thank you for the love you have shown the King, and I'll take revenge for what has happened to you.

[To the Messenger.] Come here, friend. Tell me what else you know.

[They exit together.]



(1) يحكم
(2) مملكة
(3) يعاقب

Act IV, Scene iii

[The French camp[1] near Dover. Kent enters with a Gentleman.]

KENT: Tell me sir, why has the King of France returned so suddenly to his country?

GENTLEMAN: He had something important to do there.

KENT: Did the letters make Queen Cordelia very sad?

GENTLEMAN: Yes, sir. She read them while I was there, and I saw that she was crying. But she was not angry.

KENT: Did she say anything?

GENTLEMAN: Yes, once or twice she called out her father's name. She said, "Sisters, sisters! You left your father outside in the storm![2] In the night! What have you done?" And after that, she left the room because she wanted to be alone.

KENT: Have you spoken to her since then?

GENTLEMAN: No.

KENT: Well, sir, the poor unhappy King is here, but he does not want to see his daughter.

GENTLEMAN: Why, sir?

KENT: Because he was so unkind to her before. He sent Cordelia to France and gave everything to her cruel sisters. This has made him mad.

GENTLEMAN: The poor man!

KENT: Do you have any news of Albany and Cornwall's armies[3]?

GENTLEMAN: They are nearby.

KENT: Well, sir, I will take you to King Lear.

[They exit.]



(1) يخيم
(2) عاصفة
(3) جيوش

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. Why was Edgar horrified when he saw his father in the countryside?

لماذا أصيب إدجار بالرعب عندما رأى والده فى الريف؟

Because his eyes were bleeding.

2. Who was Gloucester led by? Why?

من كان يرشد جلوستر؟ ولماذا؟

He was led by an old man because he became blind.

3. What did the old man think about Edgar when he saw him?

ماذا كان رأى الرجل العجوز فى إدجار عندما رآه؟

He thought that he was a mad poor man.

4. What does Edgar wish he didn't have to pretend to be? WB

ما الذى يتمنى إدجار ألا يتظاهر به؟

He wished not to pretend to be a mad poor man calling himself Poor Tom.

5. What did Gloucester ask the old man to bring for Poor Tom?

ماذا طلب جلوستر من الرجل العجوز أن يحضره لتوم الفقير؟

He asked him to bring Poor Tom some clothes.

6. Where does Edgar promise to take Gloucester? WB

الى أين وعد إدجار ان يأخذ جلوستر؟

He promised to take him to Dover.

7. Why was Goneril surprised when she arrived at her palace?

لماذا تفاجأت جونيريل عند وصولها إلى قصرها؟

Because her husband, Albany, didn't meet her or Edmund.

8. What did Oswald tell Goneril about her husband, Albany?

ماذا قال أوزوالد لجونيريل عن زوجها ألبانى؟

Oswald told her that Albany was displeased with Goneril's and Regan's actions, glad to hear that the French army landed, and sorry to hear that Goneril was returning home.

9. Why didn't Goneril ask Edmund to come in?

لماذا لم تطلب جونيريل من إدموند الدخول؟

Because her husband was angry with him.

10. Why did Goneril intend to use Edmund?

لماذا كانت جونيريل تنوى استخدام إدموند؟

Because she thought that he was hungry for power.

11. What did Albany blame Goneril and Regan for?

ماذا لام البانى جونيريل وريجان؟

He blamed them for their bad treatment for their father.

12. What news did the messenger tell Goneril and Albany about?

ما الأخبار التى أخبر بها الرسول جونيريل وألبانى؟

He told them that the Duke of Cornwall was killed by his servant after he fought Gloucester, and Gloucester became blind.

13. What was Goneril's reaction when she heard the news?

ماذا كان رد فعل جونيريل عندما سمعت الخبر؟

She was puzzled. She thought it was good news as she could rule over all the kingdom without Cornwall. However, she feared that Edmund might help her sister.

14. What did Albany ask the messenger about?

عن ماذا سأل ألبانى الرسول؟

He asked him where Edmund had been when his father was punished.

15. Albany was sad and furious about what Cornwall and Edmund did to Gloucester. Discuss.

كان ألبانى حزينًا وغاضبًا مما فعله كورنوال وإدموند بجلوستر. ناقش.

He wanted to thank Gloucester for the love he had shown to the King, and he would take revenge for what had happened to him.

16. Why did the King of France return suddenly to France?

لماذا عاد ملك فرنسا فجأة إلى فرنسا؟

He had something important to do there.

17. How did Cordelia feel when she read the letters about her father's suffering?

كيف كان شعور كورديليا عندما قرأت الرسائل التى تتحدث عن معاناة والدها؟

She felt sad and blamed her sisters for their father's suffering.

18. Where was King Lear taken?

إلى أين تم نقل الملك لير؟

He was taken to the French camp near Dover.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. If you were Edgar, would you feel sorry for seeing Gloucester blind?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل ستشعر بالأسف لرؤية جلوستر أعمى؟

Yes, I would. A good son must be sad if anything happens to his father even if he is angry with him.

2. "Oh, my dear son Edgar. I wish I could hold you, then I would say that I needed eyes again!" What does this show about Gloucester's feelings?

"أوه، ابنى العزيز إدجار. أتمنى أن أضمك، ثم سأقول أننى بحاجة إلى عيون مرة أخرى!" ماذا يظهر هذا عن مشاعر جلوستر؟

I think it clearly shows that he is resentful مستاء. He realised that he should have trusted Edgar not Edmund.

3. Why, do you think, Edgar wished he didn't have to pretend to be a beggar?

لماذا، فى رأيك، تمنى إدجار لو لم يضطر إلى التظاهر بأنه متسول؟

I think he pitied اشفق على his father very much and he wanted to make him get rid of his bad feelings.

4. Why, do you think, Gloucester asked Edgar, disguised as Poor Tom, to take him to Dover?

لماذا، فى رأيك، طلب جلوستر من إدجار، الذى كان متنكرًا بزى توم المسكين، أن يأخذه إلى دوفر؟

Maybe, he wanted to be near his King. Maybe, he wanted to get away from Goneril and Regan's anger and punishment.

5. "Edmund, Duke of Gloucester, is hungry for power. Perhaps I should use him to help me." What does this show about Goneril's character?

"إدموند، دوق جلوستر، متعطش للسلطة. ربما يجب أن أستخدمه لمساعدتى." ماذا يظهر هذا عن شخصية جونيريل؟

This shows that she is a greedy person who uses people, whoever they are, to get what she wants.

6. Why do you think Albany began to feel frightened of his wife, Goneril?

لماذا تعتقد أن ألبانى بدأ يشعر بالخوف من زوجته جونيريل؟

I think he did so because of her cruel treatment of her father who gave her everything.

7. Albany didn't feel sad about Cornwall's death. Do you agree with him? Why?

لم يشعر ألبانى بالحزن لوفاة كورنوال. هل توافقه؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I agree with him. Cornwall was a cruel and ungrateful person.

8. How do you think Albany can take revenge for what has happened to Gloucester?

فى رأيك كيف يستطيع ألبانى الانتقام مما حدث لجلوستر؟

He may try to regain power to the King who can punish his daughters who were bad to him.

9. In your opinion, why did Albany ask the messenger about Edmund?

فى رأيك لماذا سأل ألبانى الرسول عن إدموند؟

I think that he expected Edmund to defend and protect his own father.

10. If you were Cordelia, would you feel sad for what happened to the King? Why?

لو كنت مكان كورديليا، هل ستشعر بالحزن لما حدث للملك؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I would. A daughter who loves her father should feel sad about anything bad that might happen to him.

11. In your opinion, was the King right not to desire to see Cordelia? Why?

فى رأيك، هل كان الملك على حق فى عدم رغبته فى رؤية كورديليا؟ لماذا؟

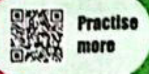
No, he wasn't right. He should at least meet her to ask her to forgive him for his bad treatment.

12. What do you think of Kent's continuous efforts to help the King?

ما رأيك فى جهود كينت المستمرة لمساعدة الملك؟

I think these efforts prove that he is loyal to his King although he ordered that Kent should be sent away.

Practice



Act IV, Scenes i-iii

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Standing at the edge of the ...., we watched the waves crash on the shore far below.
a) road b) avenue c) cliff d) desert

2 A .... is a large wild animal of the cat family that has orange fur with black stripes which mainly lives in Asia.
a) tiger b) lion c) wolf d) crocodile

3 The prince who killed his brother to be king was really hungry .... power.
a) with b) at c) in d) for

4 The hikers will .... by the river for the night, and move on tomorrow.
a) derive b) camp c) leave d) distract

5 Greed الجشع is probably the greatest social .... of all times.
a) demand b) act c) evil d) moral

6 The poor worker had to get some rest or he/she was going to .... apart.
a) feel b) fall c) fill d) fool

7 The little child closed his eyes and .... to be asleep.
a) pretended b) protected c) prevented d) protested

8 It is believed that Alexander the Great .... over a huge empire.
a) destroyed b) ruled
c) owned d) disputed

9 The sky got dark and it looked like a .... was coming.
a) fight b) shadow c) storm d) war

10 My little sister used to .... her toys under the bed.
a) break b) hide c) show d) prove

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Gloucester didn't recognize his son?
2. If you were Gloucester, would you feel sorry for what you had done to Edgar? Why?
3. Do you think that Albany should be frightened of his wife, Goneril? Why?
4. In your opinion, why would Albany intend to take revenge for what happened to Gloucester?
5. If you were Albany, would you feel angry with Edmund? Why?
6. Do you think that Kent should care for the King despite the bad treatment he received from him?
7. Cornwall was punished for his violence with Gloucester. Do you agree? Why?
8. If you were Edgar, would you tell Gloucester your real identity? Why?
9. Why do you think Albany didn't care about the news about the French army?
10. If you were Goneril, would you trust Edmund to help you rule over the country?

Act IV, Scenes iv-vi

Vocabulary

alive	على قيد الحياة	flat	مسطح/منبسط
climb	يتسلق	foolish	أحمق
the countryside	الريف	mice	فئران
cure	علاج/يعالج	purse	حافظة نقود
dead	ميت	reward	مكافأة
dress	يلبس	scared	خائف
duty	واجب	steep	شديد الانحدار
edge	حافة	strange	غريب
fall	يسقط	terrified	مرعوب
field	حقل	valuable jewel	جوهرة ثمينة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

fight for	يحارب من أجل	look up	ينظر لأعلى
get to	يصل إلى	blood runs cold	يخاف
look down	ينظر إلى أسفل	take power	يستولي على السلطة
let go	يترك/يطلق سراح	wake up	يستيقظ

Text

[In the French camp. Cordelia, a Doctor and Soldiers enter.]

CORDELIA: I've heard that my father is now mad. Look for him in every field and bring him to me.

[An Officer exits.]

Can anyone cure[1] him? I wish I could make him feel better again.

DOCTOR: There is a cure, madam. He needs lots of rest.

CORDELIA: Find him quickly! I don't want him to hurt himself first.

[A Messenger[2] enters.]

MESSENGER: I have some news, madam. The British army is coming here.

CORDELIA: Our French army is ready for war[3]. Oh dear father, I haven't returned to England to take power[4] for myself. I only fight for love, and as a duty[5] to my father.

[They exit.]

Act IV, Scene v

[In Gloucester's Castle. Regan enters with Oswald. Oswald has a letter.]

REGAN: Oswald, what do you think is in my sister's letter to Edmund?

OSWALD: I don't know, madam.

REGAN: *[To herself.]* It was foolish to let Gloucester live, although he's blind[6]. Wherever he goes, people feel sorry for him and angry with us.

OSWALD: I must give this letter to Edmund.

REGAN: Our army is going tomorrow. Stay with us.

OSWALD: I can't stay, madam. My lady Goneril has told me to return to her.

REGAN: Why would Goneril write to Edmund? Let me open the letter.

OSWALD: Madam, you can't …



(1) علاج/يعالج
(2) مبعوث/رسول
(3) حرب
(4) يستولى على السلطة
(5) واجب
(6) اعمى

REGAN: Listen! My husband is dead and I'm worried that Goneril wants to rule over all of the kingdom. Without a husband, I need the help of a clever man like Edmund. When you see him, give him this.

[She gives him a letter.]

If you see the blind traitor, remember this: There will be a reward[1] for the man who kills him.

OSWALD: If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow.

[They exit.]

Act IV, Scene vi

[In the countryside near Dover. Gloucester enters with Edgar. Edgar is dressed as a beggar but speaks as himself, not as Poor Tom.]

GLOUCESTER: When will I get to the top of this hill?

EDGAR: You're climbing up the hill now.

GLOUCESTER: But I'm sure the ground is flat[2] here.

EDGAR: No, it's very steep[3]. Listen, can you hear the sea?

GLOUCESTER: No, I can't. But I think your voice has changed. You don't speak like a poor beggar now.

EDGAR: You're wrong. Nothing has changed.

GLOUCESTER: I think that you speak like an important person.

EDGAR: Come on, sir; here's the place. Be careful. It's very high here. The fishermen that walk along the beach look like mice[4] from up here; I can't look down any more, because my blood runs cold[5], I'm scared that I might fall.

GLOUCESTER: Is it very high? Then put me where you are standing now.

EDGAR: Give me your hand. You are now very close to the edge[6] of the cliff.

[They are on flat ground.]

GLOUCESTER: Let go of my hand[7]. Here's a purse[8] for you, my friend. Inside the purse is a valuable jewel[9]. Leave me here; say goodbye to me and let me hear you walk away.

EDGAR: Goodbye, sir. [To himself.] I hope this will help to cure him of his madness.



(1) مكافأة
(2) مسطح/منبسط
(3) شديد الانحدار
(4) فئران
(5) دمى يبرد خوفا
(6) حافة
(7) أفلتنى/اتركنى
(8) حافظة نقود
(9) جوهرة ثمينة

GLOUCESTER: I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is alive[1].

So, goodbye, my friend.

[He falls forward onto the ground.]

EDGAR: Goodbye, sir.

[To himself.] If he had been where he thought he was, he would be dead now.

[To Gloucester in a different voice.] Hello, sir, are you alive or dead? Can you hear me, sir?

[To himself.] He may be dead. No, he's waking up. Who are you, sir?

GLOUCESTER: Go away and let me die.

EDGAR: You aren't bleeding and you can talk. But you've fallen from the top of a high cliff. It's amazing that you are alive. Say something.

GLOUCESTER: But have I fallen or not?

EDGAR: Yes, you fell from the top of this white cliff. Look how high it is. Look up.

GLOUCESTER: Sadly, I can't. I'm blind.

EDGAR: Give me your arm. Stand up. Can you feel your legs?

GLOUCESTER: I can.

EDGAR: This is very strange. Who was that man that left you on the top of the cliff?

GLOUCESTER: He was a poor beggar.



(1) على قيد الحياة

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. What did Cordelia ask the soldiers to do concerning her father?

ماذا طلبت كورديليا من الجنود أن يفعلوا تجاه والدها؟

She asked them to look for him in every field and bring him to her.

2. What did the doctor tell Cordelia about her father's health?

ماذا أخبر الطبيب كورديليا عن صحة والدها؟

He told her that he can be cured, but he needed lots of rest.

3. Why did Cordelia return back to Britain with the French army?

لماذا عادت كورديليا إلى بريطانيا مع الجيش الفرنسي؟

She returned back to Britain for love, and as a duty to her father.

4. What was Regan's request to Oswald about Goneril's letter to Edmund?

ماذا كان طلب ريجان من أوزوالد بشأن رسالة جونيريل إلى إدموند؟

She asked him to let her open the letter.

5. What did Regan give Oswald?

ماذا أعطت ريجان لأوزوالد؟

She gave him another letter to give to Edmund.

6. Why was Oswald determined to kill Gloucester?

لماذا كان أوزوالد مصمماً على قتل جلوستر؟

Because Regan told him that there would be a reward for the man who killed him.

7. Where did Edgar take his father, Gloucester?

أين أخذ إدجار والده جلوستر؟

He took him to a flat land near a cliff in Dover.

8. What did Edgar tell his father about the place where they are standing?

ماذا قال إدجار لوالده عن المكان الذى يقفون فيه؟

He told him that it was very steep,very high and very close to the edge of the cliff.

9. What did Gloucester give Edgar?

ماذا أعطى جلوستر لإدجار؟

He gave him a purse with a valuable jewel inside it.

10. What did Gloucester do after he said goodbye to Edgar?

ماذا فعل جلوستر بعد أن ودع إدجار؟

He fell forward onto the ground, thinking that he was on top of the cliff.

11. Why did Gloucester ask Edgar, disguised as Poor Tom, to take him to a high cliff?

لماذا طلب جلوستر من إدجار، متنكراً بزى توم المسكين، أن يأخذه إلى منحدر مرتفع؟

He wanted to jump over the cliff and kill himself.

12. Why did Edgar change his voice pretending that he found Gloucester at the bottom of a cliff?

لماذا غير إدجار صوته متظاهراً بأنه وجد جلوستر فى أسفل الهاوية؟

He wanted to make his father think that he really jumped off the cliff.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Cordelia proved that she really loved her father. Do you agree? Why?

أثبتت كورديليا أنها تحب والدها حقًا. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I agree. She felt so sad when she heard about the bad treatment of her sister to their father. She came with the French army to help the King.

2. In your opinion, why didn't Oswald agree to let Regan open Cordelia's letter to Edmund?

فى رأيك، لماذا لم يوافق أوزوالد على السماح لريجان بفتح رسالة كورديليا إلى إدموند؟

I think he wanted to show loyalty to his lady, Goneril.

3. Why, do you think, both Regan and Goneril asked for Edmund's support?

لماذا، فى رأيك، طلبت كل من ريجان وجونيريل دعم إدموند؟

After Cornwall's death, he seemed to be the only man who could lead the army and so he would become so powerful if the British army won the war.

4. "If I meet old Gloucester, madam, I'll show you which lady I follow." What did Oswald mean when he said this?

"إذا قابلت جلوستر العجوز، يا سيدتي، فسوف أُظهر لك السيدة التي أتبعها." ماذا كان يقصد أوزوالد عندما قال هذا؟

I think he meant that he was determined to kill Gloucester and get the reward.

5. If you were Oswald, would you really desire to kill Gloucester? Why?

لو كنت مكان أوزوالد، هل ترغب حقًا فى قتل جلوستر؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. This would be a big mistake as he would be an enemy to his two sons if he did so.

6. Why, do you think, Edgar deceived his father into making him believe that he really jumped off the cliff?

لماذا، فى رأيك، خدع إدجار والده ليجعله يعتقد أنه قفز بالفعل من الهاوية؟

I think this would stop his father from trying to kill himself again.

7. Do you agree with Edgar when he deceived his father? Why?

هل تتفق مع إدجار عندما خدع والده؟ لماذا؟

No, I don't agree with him. He could tell his father the truth and try to prevent him from trying to kill himself.

8. "I say goodbye to this world, and I only hope that Edgar is alive." What does this sentence show about Gloucester's feelings?

"أقول وداعًا لهذا العالم، وآمل فقط أن يكون إدجار على قيد الحياة". ماذا تظهر هذه الجملة عن مشاعر جلوستر؟

It shows that he was sorry for what he did for Edgar and he remembered him and wished him well.

9. Do you sympathise with Gloucester? Why?

هل تتعاطف مع جلوستر؟ لماذا؟

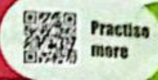
Yes, I do. He suffered much as a result of his own son's trickery and his trial to help the King. He became blind and desperate.

10. Why, do you think, Edgar didn't reveal his real identity to his father?

لماذا تعتقد أن إدجار لم يكشف عن هويته الحقيقية لوالده؟

I think he wanted to remain disguised to try to revenge himself and his father.

Practice



Act IV, Scenes iv-vi

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandfather served as a pilot during the 6th October ....
a) ceremony b) war c) treaty d) conference

2 Look out! The stairs are very .... and you may fall down.
a) easy b) straight c) round d) steep

3 My son made us all nervous by standing so close to the .... of the cliff.
a) middle b) bottom c) edge d) hedge

4 At the end of the fair, the school .... go of hundreds of balloons.
a) make b) let c) do d) get

5 It would be .... to ignore your elders' advice.
a) wise b) foolish c) intelligent d) fabulous

6 Most people are .... of snakes, although some of them are harmless.
a) pleased b) content c) scared d) delighted

7 Winning the match was just a .... for the effort the team had made.
a) conference b) punishment c) trophy d) reward

8 Most bacterial infections can be .... with antibiotics مضادات حيوية
a) cured b) healed c) caused d) released

9 Our neighbour .... the children in their best clothes for the party.
a) pleased b) harmed c) dressed d) hit

10 The children were found .... and well after being missing for several hours in the forest.
a) retired b) straight c) dead d) alive

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Edmund, who would you support to rule over the country, Regan or Goneril? Why?
2. Do you think that Oswald should have let Regan open Goneril's letter to Edmund? Why?
3. Should Edgar have told Gloucester his real identity after the trick he played on him? Why?
4. Why do you think Gloucester only remembered Edgar before he tried to kill himself?
5. If you were Gloucester, would you be easily tricked by Edgar? Why?
6. In your opinion, who is worse, Regan or Goneril? Why?
7. When he heard the news about Cornwall and Gloucester, Albany only cared about Gloucester. Why do you think he did so?
8. Do you think that Gloucester would have tried to kill himself if Edgar had told him about his real identity? Why?

Act IV, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii

Vocabulary

battle	معركة	pocket	جيب
believe	يعتقد/يؤمن	prisoner	سجين
creep	يزحف/يتسلل	prize	جائزة
crime	جريمة	recognise	يتعرف على
drum	طبل	riches	مال/ثروة
judge	قاض	right	سوى/عادى
majesty	فخامة	sense	كلام عاقل
nonsense	كلام فارغ/هراء	stage	خشبة المسرح
patient	صبور/مريض	theatre	مسرح

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

feel one's way	يتحسس طريقه	(be) tempted to	يتم إغواؤه
take out	يسحب/يخرج	let go of	يفلت
creep up on	يرتفع على/يزحف	punished for	يُعاقب من أجل

Text

[In the countryside near Dover. Edgar is with Gloucester and King Lear.]

KING LEAR: Did you say that you know my voice, oh man without eyes! Yes, I am the King! But look at you, what have you done?

GLOUCESTER: Your majesty[1], let me kiss your hand!

KING LEAR: I must clean it first.

GLOUCESTER: Do you not know me, sir?

KING LEAR: I don't know your eyes. Read this letter for me, please.

GLOUCESTER: But I can't see it.

EDGAR: *[To himself.]* If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad.

KING LEAR: Read it!

GLOUCESTER: But look at my eyes!

KING LEAR: Oh, I understand. You want some money first. You have no eyes in your head and no money in your purse. But you understand how things work in this world.

GLOUCESTER: I feel my way.

KING LEAR: But you can see with your ears. We now know that a judge[2] will punish a poor man's crime[3] before a rich man's crime.

GLOUCESTER: Yes, sir.

KING LEAR: Rich men are not punished for the same crimes as a poor man is punished for. Why don't you get some glass eyes and pretend to see things that others do not, like a bad judge!

EDGAR: The King is talking both sense[4] and nonsense[5]!

[Gloucester cries.]

KING LEAR: Wait. I know you: your name is Gloucester. You must be patient.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, what a sad day this is!



(1) فخامة (2) قاض (3) جريمة (4) كلام عاقل (5) كلام فارغ/هراء

KING LEAR: *[He stands on a rock.]* This rock is like a stage[1] in a theatre. I'll pretend to creep up on[2] my daughters' husbands and kill them!

[A Gentleman enters with Attendants.]

GENTLEMAN: Ah, there he is! Quick, get him!

[To King Lear.]

Sorry, sir, your dear daughter …

KING LEAR: What? Am I a prisoner[3] now? Be good to me and I'll reward you. But I need a doctor. My head is not right.

GENTLEMAN: You shall have anything you want, your majesty. You are the King and we'll do what you say.

KING LEAR: I may still live, then. But you'll need to run to get the reward.

[He exits running. The Attendants run after him. The Gentleman exits.]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, someone kill me before I am tempted to[4] kill myself!

EDGAR: Give me your hand, sir. I'll take you to a place where you'll be safe.

GLOUCESTER: Thank you.

[Oswald enters.]

OSWALD: Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!

[He takes out[5] his sword.] Get ready to die, you old traitor!

GLOUCESTER: I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it.

[Edgar stands between them.]

OSWALD: Who are you? Why are you helping a traitor? Let go of his arm.

EDGAR: I will not let go.

OSWALD: Let go of this man or you'll die too!

EDGAR: Don't come near the old man.

OSWALD: Then take out your sword!

[They fight. Oswald falls.]

OSWALD: Oh, I'm dying! Before you take my purse, give the letters that I'm carrying to Edmund, the Duke of Gloucester. You'll find him with the British army. Oh, goodbye world!

[He dies.]

GLOUCESTER: Is he dead?

EDGAR: Yes. Sit down, sir, and rest. Let's look in his pockets; these letters may be useful. Let's read them.

[He finds a letter and reads it.]



(1) خشبة المسرح
(2) يرتفع على
(3) سجين
(4) أنا أميل/مغرٍ إلى
(5) يسحب/يخرج

'Remember, Edmund. Do not let Albany win the battle[1]. If you help me, I will give you more power and riches[2].

Yours

Goneril.'

That evil woman! She wants Edmund to kill her good husband. I will show this letter to the Duke of Albany. It's lucky[3] that I can tell him of their plan to kill him.

[The sound of a drum[4].]

EDGAR: [To Gloucester, his father.] Come, give me your hand. I'll take you to a friend's house.

[They exit together.]

Act IV, Scene vii

[A tent[5] in the French camp. Cordelia enters with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]

CORDELIA: Please put on some better clothes, Kent.

KENT: I'm sorry, madam, but I must stay in this disguise. You must pretend that you don't know me until I tell you.

CORDELIA: I understand, my lord. [To the Doctor.] How's the King?

DOCTOR: Madam, he's still sleeping.

CORDELIA: My father has become like a child. Please, doctor, try to cure my father, whose children have made him mad.

DOCTOR: If you like, we can wake up the King. He's slept for a long time.

CORDELIA: You know what's best for him.

[Cordelia and the doctor are standing together in a tent in the French camp. Two servants carry King Lear in on a chair. He's wearing a clean shirt and trousers. He is sleeping.]

DOCTOR: Please, play some music.

CORDELIA: Oh, my dear father, let my kisses help to make you feel better. My sisters have done you so much damage!

KENT: Kind and dear princess!

CORDELIA: How could they send your kind face out into a storm? I would even keep an animal inside on a night like that, but you, poor father, had to stay with beggars in old straw. I can't believe you are still alive after all that.

[To the Doctor.] He's waking up. How are you, father? Do you recognise[6] me?



(1) معركة
(2) مال ثروة
(3) محظوظ
(4) طبلة
(5) خيمة
(6) يتعرف على

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. Where did Gloucester meet King Lear?

أين التقى جلوستر بالملك لير؟

He met the King in the countryside near Dover.

2. What does King Lear want Gloucester to read for him? SB

ماذا طلب الملك من جلوستر أن يقرأ؟

He asked him to read a letter for him.

3. According to the King, why couldn't Gloucester read?

وفقا للملك، لماذا لا يستطيع جلوستر القراءة؟

Because he wanted money first.

4. Why did Edgar say that the King was talking both 'sense and nonsense'?

لماذا قال إدجار إن الملك كان يتحدث بمزيج من المنطق والهراء؟

Because the King said many sentences which are not related to one other.

5. Who came to take the King? Where was he taking him?

من جاء ليأخذ الملك؟ إلى أين كان يأخذه؟

A gentleman with some attendants came to take the King to the French camp to see Cordelia.

6. Where would Edgar take Gloucester?

إلى أين سيأخذ إدجار جلوستر؟

He would take him to a place where he would be safe.

7. What did Oswald do when he saw Gloucester?

ماذا فعل أوزوالد عندما رأى جلوستر؟

He rushed to kill Gloucester.

8. How did Edgar defend Gloucester?

كيف دافع إدجار عن جلوستر؟

Edgar fought Oswald and could hurt him badly.

9. What did Oswald ask Edgar before he died?

ماذا سأل أوزوالد إدجار قبل وفاته؟

He asked Edgar to take the letters he had to Edmond at the British army.

10. What did Goneril ask Edmund in her letter?

ماذا طلبت جونيريل من إدموند فى رسالتها؟

She asked him to kill her husband in the battle.

11. What did Cordelia ask Kent to do? SB

ماذا تطلب كورديليا من كينت أن يفعل؟

She asked him to wear better clothes.

12. Why did Kent refuse Cordelia's request of wearing better clothes?

لماذا رفض كينت طلب كورديليا بارتداء ملابس أفضل؟

He thought that he had to stay disguised.

13. What did the doctor tell Cordelia about the King?

ماذا قال الطبيب لكورديليا عن الملك؟

He told her that he was sleeping and he would be fine.

14. What did Cordelia think about her sisters' behaviour? SB

ما رأى كورديليا فى سلوك أخواتها؟

She thought that they had been so cruel and this made their father mad.

15. How was the King treated in the French camp?

كيف كان يعامل الملك فى المعسكر الفرنسى؟

He was treated with much respect. Two servants carry King Lear in on a chair. He's wearing a clean shirt and trousers.

16. What did Cordelia do when she saw her father sleeping? ماذا فعلت كورديليا عندما رأت والدها نائما؟

She kissed him and looked very sad for what her sisters had done to him.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. "If I read about this in a story, I wouldn't believe it was true. It is so sad." What does Edgar mean by these words?

"إذا قرأت عن هذا فى إحدى القصص، فلن أصدق أنه صحيح. انه أمر محزن." ماذا يعنى إدجار بهذه الكلمات؟

I think that he expresses his shock at the King's mental health.

2. Why do you think the King said that Gloucester needed money to read the letter?

لماذا تعتقد أن الملك قال إن جلوستر بحاجة إلى المال لقراءة الرسالة؟

I think that he meant that nobody did anything good unless he was given a reward just as his two daughters.

3. Why do you think Edgar says that King Lear is talking both 'sense and nonsense'? SB

لماذا تعتقد أن إدغار يقول إن الملك لير يتحدث بمزيج من "المنطق والهراء"؟

The King talked about many things. Some of them were logical whereas others were not.

4. In your opinion, what made Gloucester wish that someone would kill him before he kills himself? فى رأيك، ما الذى جعل جلوستر يتمنى أن يقتله أحد قبل أن يقتل نفسه؟

I think that he was shocked at seeing the King in such a bad condition.

5. Do you think that the King went completely mad? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الملك أصيب بالجنون التام؟ لماذا؟

No, I don't think so. I think he was shocked because of his sisters' bad treatment.

6. Edgar proved that he is such a good son that he is ready to sacrifice his life for his father. Do you agree? Why?

أثبت إدجار أنه ابن صالح لدرجة أنه مستعد للتضحية بحياته من أجل والده. هل توافق؟ لماذا؟

He was ready to fight Edgar to protect his father.

7. Why do you think Oswald asked Edgar to give the letters to Edmund?

لماذا تعتقد أن أوزوالد طلب من إدجار أن يعطي الرسائل إلى إدموند؟

In my opinion, he thought that these letters are very important for Edmund and the army.

8. How do you feel about the death of Oswald? Why do you feel like this? SB

ما هو شعورك بشأن وفاة أوزوالد؟ لماذا تشعر بهذا؟

I feel pleased. He was an evil man who wanted to kill a helpless man only for a reward.

9. Why do you think Kent wanted to remain in disguise?

لماذا تعتقد أن كينت أراد أن يبقى متنكراً؟

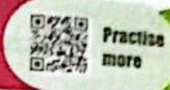
I think he thought it was better to help the King if he was in disguise.

10. "My father has become like a child." Do you agree with Cordelia when she said this? Why?

"لقد أصبح والدي مثل طفل." هل تتفق مع كورديليا عندما قالت هذا؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I agree with her. He became weak and wanted to be treated so kindly.

Practice



Act iv-, Scene vi, continued & Scene vii

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The .... sentenced the thief to five years in prison.
a) officer b) judge c) assistant d) inspector

2 I can't make .... of these modern art paintings.
a) test b) chance c) sense d) space

3 In this nice weather, I'm .... to have a walk along the beach.
a) frightened b) tempted c) refrained d) forced

4 We all must work hard in a unity to win the .... against terrorism.
a) battle b) talk c) duty d) force

5 About 1,000 people marched, beating .... and carrying flags in the parade.
a) kids b) cellos c) drums d) phones

6 Most of what has been written about the accident is complete .... and had no facts.
a) sense b) nonsense c) wisdom d) research

7 Fame and .... are two of the most important things that young men dream of.
a) riches b) poverty c) morals d) sorrow

8 There are a number of ways in which the public can help the police to fight ....
a) manner b) crime c) courage d) duty

9 The chase ended in a gun .... between police and drug smugglers مهربي المخدرات.
a) quarrel b) agreement c) initiative d) battle

10 The young man took out the wallet from his .... to pay for the meal he invited the homeless to.
a) detective b) judge c) pocket d) prisoner

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think that the King didn't really know Gloucester? Why?
2. Gloucester seemed to love the King very much. Do you agree? Why?
3. "I'll pretend to creep up on my daughters' husbands and kill them!" Do you think that the King really wanted to do what he said? Why?
4. "I want to die. I hope you're strong enough to do it." What does these words show about Gloucester's feelings?
5. "Look, here's the prize! This man without eyes will make me rich!" What does these words show about Oswald's character?
6. Edgar's bravery saved his father and his country as well. Do you agree? Why?
7. If you were Kent, would you refuse Cordelia's request to put on better clothes? Why?

Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii

Vocabulary

apart	بعيدًا	honestly	بشرف/بأمانة
birth	ميلاد	invade	يغزو
blow	ينفخ	join	يتحد/يضم
brave	شجاع	officers	ضباط
cage	قفص	poison	سم
death	موت	ruler	حاكم
disguise	يتخفى	starve	يتضور/يموت جوعًا
dry	يجفف	suffer	يعاني
equal	مثيل/ند	support	يدعم
forget	ينسى	trumpet	بوق
forgive	يسامح/يغفر	trust	ثقة/يثق
guard	يحرس	wheel	عجلة

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

bitter pill to swallow	حقيقة صادمة	get home	يعود إلى وطنه
take control	يستولى على السلطة	put chains	يقيد بالسلاسل

Text

[A tent in the French camp. Cordelia talks with Kent, a Doctor and a Gentleman.]

KING LEAR: What are you doing? You shouldn't help me to live. You may be happy, but I feel like I'm on a wheel of fire[1].

CORDELIA: Sir, do you know who I am?

KING LEAR: Where am I? Is it day or night?

CORDELIA: Look at me, please. No, you don't have to kneel before me.

KING LEAR: Lady. I'm a very foolish[2] old man, more than eighty years old, and I think I'm a little bit mad. I think I should know you, and also this man ... *[He points to Kent.]* ... but I'm not sure. I can't remember putting on these clothes and I don't know where I stayed last night. Don't laugh at[3] me, but is it possible that you're my daughter, Cordelia?

CORDELIA: It's true! Yes, I am! I am!

KING LEAR: Are you crying? Yes, you are. Please don't cry. If you have some poison[4] for me, I'll drink it. Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not.

CORDELIA: I'll never be cruel to you, father.

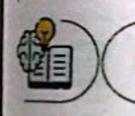
KING LEAR: Am I in France?

KENT: No, your majesty. You're in your own kingdom.

KING LEAR: This can't be true.

DOCTOR: I think it's better to leave now. He needs to sleep.

KING LEAR: *[To Cordelia.]* Please, can you forgive[5] me? I'm old and foolish. It's better to forget me now.



(1) أنا على عجلة من النار
(2) أحمق
(3) يسخر من
(4) سم
(5) يغفر/يسامح

Act V, Scene i

[In the British camp near Dover. Edmund enters with Regan.]

REGAN: Now, Edmund. Tell me honestly, are you working for my sister, Goneril?

EDMUND: I am not, madam.

REGAN: So, you're not helping her to take my lands from me?

EDMUND: No, you mustn't think these things.

REGAN: I don't trust[1] my sister. Edmund, please don't work with her.

EDMUND: Don't worry. She and her husband the Duke of Albany …

[The Duke of Albany enters with Goneril and some soldiers.]

GONERIL: *[To herself.]* I must not let Edmund work for my sister.

ALBANY: Regan, have you heard the news? The King is with his daughter, Cordelia, and others who are helping him. We must be ready to fight now because the French army has invaded[2]. But the French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King.

REGAN: Why are you telling me this now?

GONERIL: We must join together against the enemy.

ALBANY: Let's plan what to do with the officers[3]. Then we can go into battle[4].

EDMUND: I can help you. I'll join you in your tent soon.

REGAN: Are you coming with us, Goneril?

GONERIL: No.

REGAN: Please, come with us.

GONERIL: *[To herself.]* Oh, I know why you want me to go. You don't want me to stay here with Edmund.

[To Regan.] I'll come soon.

[As they exit, Edgar enters. He is still disguised[5] as Poor Tom.]

EDGAR: [To Albany.] I'm a poor man, but please listen to me. Before you fight the battle with the French, read this letter. If you win the battle, blow your trumpet[6] so I know what has happened. I can prove what is written there. Good luck!

[Edgar exits. Albany reads the letter and then exits. Then Edmund enters.]



(1) يثق بـ (2) غزا (3) ضباط (4) معركة (5) متنكر (6) بوق

EDMUND: I've told both the sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other. So, who should I help the most? Regan? Goneril? Both of them? Or perhaps neither of them. I can't take power if both sisters are living. Let me think … Goneril still has a husband. I'll use his help to win the battle. But I know that her husband feels sorry for King Lear and Cordelia, so when the battle is over, he must die. Then King Lear and Cordelia will be my prisoners! Now it is time for me to start to take control of[1] the kingdom!

[He exits.]

Act V, Scene ii

[In a field between the British and the French. There are sounds of a battle. Edgar and Gloucester enter.]

EDGAR: King Lear has lost the battle, and he's now a prisoner with his daughter Cordelia. This is a bitter pill to swallow[2]. Quick, we must leave.

GLOUCESTER: I can't go on. Leave me. I can die here.

EDGAR: No. Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth.

GLOUCESTER: You're right.

EDGAR: Let's go.

[They exit.]

Act V, Scene iii

[In the British camp, near Dover. Edmund enters with King Lear and Cordelia, some soldiers and a Captain. Lear and Cordelia are prisoners.]

EDMUND: Guard them carefully until we know what Goneril and Regan want to do with them.

CORDELIA: I'm not worried about myself. I only feel sad for the King because he has suffered[3] so much. Father, do you want to see my sisters?

KING LEAR: No, I do not! I'd prefer to go to prison. There we can be together. We'll sing like birds in a cage[4]!



(1) يتحكم فى/يسيطر على (2) هذه حبة مريرة تبتلعها (3) عانى (4) قفص

EDMUND: Take them away from me.

KING LEAR: I'm so happy that you're with me, Cordelia. We won't be apart again. Dry your eyes, daughter. Our enemies will starve[1] before they make us cry! Let us go.

[King Lear and Cordelia exit with the guards.]

EDMUND: Come here, Captain. Follow the prisoners to the prison. Read this message and do as it says. If you do this, I'll reward you.

[Edmund gives the Captain a note.]

CAPTAIN: I'll do what the message says, my lord.

[The Captain and the soldiers exit. Albany enters with Goneril, Regan and some soldiers.]

ALBANY: Edmund, you were very brave in battle today and we did well to win. Do you have the prisoners? Bring them to me so I can decide what is best for the future of our kingdom.

EDMUND: Albany, I have sent the old King to a prison with a guard. We can't let people see him. He's old, and his age will make the soldiers who see him feel sorry for him. They might want to support[2] him. I've sent Queen Cordelia to prison with him. You can see them tomorrow.

ALBANY: Listen, Edmund. You're a good soldier, but you aren't my equal[3]. You shouldn't make these decisions.

REGAN: I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you.

GONERIL: Wait, sister. I understand what you're planning. You want Edmund to help you to take power from me and my husband. But this won't happen, because first, Edmund will help me to take power from you!

REGAN: *[To Edmund.]* Edmund, help me to take power from my evil sister. If you say yes, you won't be the equal of Albany and Goneril, but you'll be their lord[4] and ruler[5]!



(1) يجوع (2) يدعم (3) متساو (4) السيد (5) حاكم

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. What did the King ask Cordelia not to do?
ما الذى طلب الملك من كورديليا ألا تفعله؟
He asked her not to help him to live.

2. How does King Lear feel when he meets Cordelia?
كيف يشعر الملك لير عندما يلتقى كورديليا؟
He feels foolish, but he is happy to be with her. He asked her to help him.

3. What did King Lear say about himself?
ماذا قال الملك لير عن نفسه؟
He said that he was a very foolish old man, more than eighty years old, and a little bit mad.

4. The King seemed to be puzzled about many things. Explain.
يبدو أن الملك فى حيرة من أمره بشأن أشياء كثيرة. اشرح.
He didn't know where he was. He didn't remember putting on his clothes or where he had stayed the night before. He wasn't sure of the identity of the people around him.

5. In the British camp, what did Regan ask Edmund about?
فى المعسكر البريطانى، عن ماذا سألت ريجان إدموند؟
She asked him if he worked with her sister, Goneril.

6. How did Edmund try to make Regan calm?
كيف حاول إدموند تهدئة ريجان؟
He told her that he wouldn't help Goneril against her.

7. According to Albany, why should they fight?
وفقا لألبانى، لماذا يجب أن يقاتلوا؟
They had to fight because the French army had invaded Britain and the French weren't there to help Lear.

8. Who promised to help Albany in the fight?
ن وعد بمساعدة ألبانى فى القتال؟
Edmund promised to help him in the fight.

9. Why was Goneril unhappy about Edmund working for Regan?
اذا كانت جونيريل غير سعيدة بعمل إدموند لدى ريجان؟
Because she didn't trust her. She wanted Edmund's help to rule over the kingdor

10. What did Edgar, disguised as Poor Tom, give Albany before the battle?
قدم إدجار، متنكراً بزى توم المسكين، لألبانى قبل المعركة؟
He gave him the letter he took from Oswald after killing him.

11. When he was alone, what did Edmund decide to do to take control of the kingdc
كان بمفرده، ماذا قرر إدموند أن يفعل للسيطرة على المملكة؟
He decided to get rid of Regan, Goneril and Albany after winning the battle.

12. What news did Edgar tell Gloucester about the battle?

ما الأخبار التى أخبرها إدجار لجلوستر عن المعركة؟

He told him that King Lear had lost the battle, and he was a prisoner with his daughter Cordelia.

13. What does 'This' refer to when Edgar says "This is a bitter pill to swallow"? WB

إلى ماذا تشير "هذا" عندما يقول إدجار "هذه حبة مريرة يجب ابتلاعها"؟

It refers to the King's being a prisoner after losing the battle.

14. Where would King Lear prefer to be? Why?

أين فضل الملك لير أن يكون؟ لماذا؟

He'd prefer to go to prison. There he could be with Cordelia.

15. Why did King Lear say that he was happy?

لماذا قال الملك لير أنه سعيد؟

He said so, because he was with Cordelia and they would never be apart.

16. What did Edmund order the soldiers and their captain concerning King Lear and Cordelia?

ماذا أمر إدموند الجنود وقائدهم فيما يتعلق بالملك لير وكورديليا؟

He sent the King and Cordelia to a prison. He gave the captain a note asking him to read it and do as it said offering him a reward for that.

17. Why did Albany blame Edmund?

لماذا ألقى ألبانى اللوم على إدموند؟

He blamed him for making important decisions, such as sending the King to prison. He said that Edmund was a good soldier, but he wasn't his equal.

18. How did Edmund defend his decision about King Lear and Cordelia?

كيف دافع إدموند عن قراره بشأن الملك لير وكورديليا؟

He said they couldn't let people see him. His age would make the soldiers who saw him feel sorry for him. They might want to support him.

19. According to Goneril, why did Regan defend Edmund?

وفقا لجونيريل لماذا دافعت ريجان عن إدموند؟

She said that Regan wanted Edmund to help her to take power from her and her husband.

20. What promise did Regan give Edmund if he helped her?

ما الوعد الذى أعطته ريجان لإدموند إذا ساعدها؟

She promised if Edmund helped her to take power from her evil sister, he wouldn't be the equal of Albany and Goneril, but he would be their lord and ruler.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. Why do you think that Lear knelt before Cordelia? WB

لماذا تعتقد أن لير ركع أمام كورديليا؟

He wanted her to forgive him because he knew he was wrong to send her away.

2. "Your sisters have been cruel to me. You have a good reason to be cruel to me, but they do not." Why does Lear say this to Cordelia? WB

"لقد كان أخواتك قاسيين معى، وكان لديك سبب وجيه لتكون قاسية معى، لكنهم لم يكن لديهم." لماذا يقول لير هذا لكورديليا؟

He sent Cordelia away, so he knew she could be angry with him. He couldn't understand why his other daughters had been cruel to him.

3. "The French are not here to help Lear. I think we have been too cruel to the King." What does this tell us about Albany? WB

"الفرنسيون ليسوا هنا لمساعدة لير. أعتقد أننا كنا قاسيين جداً مع الملك." ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن ألبانى؟

We learn that he is a good man and wants to help Lear. He is starting to see that his wife is not a good person.

4. "I've told both sisters that I'll help them to win more power. Now they do not trust each other." What does this tell us about Edmund? WB

"لقد أخبرت الأختين أننى سأساعدهما على الفوز بمزيد من القوة. والآن لا يثقون ببعضهم البعض." ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن إدموند؟

It tells us that he will do anything to try to take control. He is not a man to be trusted.

5. Why do you think Gloucester asked Edgar to let him die where he was?

لماذا تعتقد أن جلوستر طلب من إدجار أن يتركه يموت حيث كان؟

I think he was desperate and very sad after hearing what had happened to the King.

6. "Remember that we can't choose the time of our death, just as we can't choose the time of our birth." What do these sentences show about Edgar?

"تذكر أننا لا نستطيع اختيار وقت وفاتنا، كما لا يمكننا اختيار وقت ميلادنا." ماذا تظهر هذه الجمل عن إدجار؟

I think they show that he is a wise and persuasive person.

7. In your opinion, what did Edmund write in the message he gave the captain?

فى رأيك ماذا كتب إدموند فى الرسالة التى سلمها للكابتن؟

I think he asked the captain to kill Lear and Cordelia so as to have a chance to rule over the country after getting rid of the others.

8. Why do you think Albany asked Edmund to bring the prisoners?

لماذا تعتقد أن ألبانى طلب من إدموند إحضار السجناء؟

In my opinion, he wanted to release King Lear and Cordelia because he was sure they are good and innocent.

9. Do you think Albany trusts Edmund? Why? SB

هل تعتقد أن ألبانى يثق بإدموند؟ لماذا؟

No, I don't think so. He knew that he betrayed his father, so he is only using him in the fight.

10. "I see kind Edmund as an equal. He led our soldiers well today in battle. I think he can call himself equal to you." What does this tell us about Regan? WB

"أرى إدموند اللطيف على قدم المساواة. لقد قاد جنودنا بشكل جيد اليوم فى المعركة. أعتقد أنه يمكن أن يقول عن نفسه انه مساوى لك." ماذا يخبرنا هذا عن ريجان؟

It tells us that she is ready to use Edmund to try to take power from Goneril and Albany.

Practice  Practise more — Act IV, Scene vii, continued & Act V, Scenes i-iii

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Romans .... Britain 2,000 years ago.
a) viewed b) discovered c) invaded d) accepted

2 The player .... an injury, but he completed the match.
a) rejoiced b) suffered c) treated d) cured

3 Thousands of people will .... if food doesn't reach the city.
a) stay b) feed c) starve d) plead

4 I don't like seeing animals in .... It's really cruel.
a) deserts b) clouds c) space d) cages

5 My brother will never .... me for losing his camera.
a) assist b) forgive c) plead d) fight

6 The officer told the soldier to .... the entrance of the police station.
a) guard b) attend c) repent d) rebuild

7 .... is a substance that causes death or harm if it gets into the body.
a) Medicine b) Sugar c) Vaccine d) Poison

8 I'm very grateful for my wife who .... me through life.
a) supported b) reported c) fought d) ignored

9 The election defeat خسارة الانتخابات was a bitter .... for the politician to swallow.
a) bell b) bill c) ball d) pill

10 Thousands of years ago, Egypt was united under one .... called a Pharaoh.
a) officer b) ruler c) author d) enemy

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. In your opinion, why does King Lear say that if Cordelia had poison, he would drink it?
2. If you were Cordelia, would you forgive your father so easily? Why?
3. If you were Edmund, would you agree to help Regan against her sister? Why?
4. Do you think that Goneril doesn't really want Regan to stay with Edmund? Why?
5. Why do you think Edgar asked Albany to read the letter he gave him before the battle?
6. "I only feel sad for the King because he has suffered so much." What does this show about Cordelia?
7. If you were the captain, would you do what Edmund wrote in the message? Why?
8. Do you think that Edmund gave a good reason for sending King Lear and Cordelia away to prison? Why?
9. Do you agree with Albany when he says that Edmund isn't his equal? Why?
10. How do you think Albany and Regan reacted to what Regan said about making Edmund ruler?

Act V, Scene iii

Vocabulary

crown	تاج	rat	فأر
equally	بصورة متعادلة/بالتساوى	resign	يستقيل
guide	مرشد	soldier	جندى
laws	قوانين	stretcher	نقالة
liar	كاذب	title	لقب
murderer	قاتل	treason	خيانة
offstage	خارج المسرح	trick	يخدع

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

come full circle	يعود لنقطة البداية	tear up	يدمر/يمزق
heavy heart	حزين	work for	يعمل لصالح

Text

[In the British camp, near Dover.]

GONERIL: My sister Regan, do you really want Edmund to help you to take my lands?

ALBANY: You can't do this, Edmund.

EDMUND: You can't tell me what to do, Albany.

ALBANY: Yes I can!

REGAN: *[To Edmund.]* Prove that you want to help me, Edmund, by fighting Albany!

ALBANY: Listen to me. Edmund, I arrest[1] you for treason[2].

[He points to Goneril.] And you, my wife. Were you planning to take Regan's land from her? With Edmund's help? It's not your land to take. It was given equally to you and Regan by your father!

GONERIL: But we could have more power, husband!

REGAN: I feel ill. My stomach[3] hurts!

GONERIL: *[To herself.]* Good. If you aren't ill, I will never trust poison again.

ALBANY: You have a sword, Edmund. I'm ready to fight you, unless anyone else wants to fight you first!

EDMUND: I'm happy to fight anyone who calls me a traitor or a liar[4]. Come then, who wants to fight me?

REGAN: Help me. I feel worse.

ALBANY: Regan isn't well. Take her to my tent.

[Regan is helped offstage.]

Now, if any man here will fight Edmund the traitor, come now, or I'll fight him myself.

[Edgar enters.]

Who are you?

EDGAR: I have lost my name and title to a traitor; but I'm a brave soldier. Where's Edmund, who calls himself the Duke of Gloucester?

EDMUND: I'm here.



(1) يقبض على
(2) خيانة
(3) معدة
(4) كاذب

EDGAR: Then take out your sword. You're a traitor to your brother and your father. I'm ready to fight you to prove you are a liar to everyone you work for.

[They fight. Edmund falls.]

ALBANY: Edmund is hurt, can you save[1] him? I want to find out what he knows!

GONERIL: They tricked[2] you into fighting, Edmund.

ALBANY: Be quiet, madam, or I will make you be quiet by reading this letter that you wrote to Edmund.

[He gives Goneril the letter she wrote to Edmund.]

[To Goneril.] No, don't try to tear up[3] the letter! You know what you wrote.

GONERIL: Husband, it's true that I wanted Edmund to help me take Regan's land. The laws[4] of the kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?

ALBANY: You're an evil woman!

[Goneril exits.]

EDMUND: Albany, I'm guilty of wanting to help both Goneril and Regan, and more, much more. This is the end for me now. [To Edgar.] But who are you? If you're a good man, I forgive you.

EDGAR: Let us forgive each other. My name's Edgar and I am your brother. Our father has lost his eyes because of you!

EDMUND: I was wrong. I thought that I could be the best man in the kingdom, but now I'm the worst. The wheel has come full circle[5].

ALBANY: *[To Edgar.]* I thought that you were an important man. I promise[6] you, I never hated you, or your father!

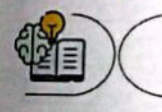
EDGAR: I know that, Albany.

ALBANY: Where have you been hiding? How did you know what happened to your father?

EDGAR: I've been helping him, my lord. I disguised myself as a beggar, then I met my father, who's now blind. I became his guide, and stopped him from killing himself. I never told him who I was. That was a big mistake. Just an hour ago, I told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.

[An officer enters with a knife covered in blood[7].]

OFFICER: Help! Oh, help me!



(1) ينقذ
(2) خدع
(3) يمزق
(4) قوانين
(5) أصبحت العجلة دائرة كاملة
(6) يعد
(7) دم

EDGAR: What is it? Why is there blood on that knife?

OFFICER: It came from the heart of ... Oh, she's dead!

ALBANY: Who's dead? Tell us.

OFFICER: Goneril, your wife, sir! And her sister Regan. Goneril has killed herself, and she poisoned Regan before she died.

[Kent enters.]

EDGAR: Here is Kent.

KENT: I have come to see the King. Is he here?

ALBANY: Tell us, Edmund, where is the King? And where is Cordelia?

[The bodies of Goneril and Regan are carried in on stretchers[1] by soldiers.]

KENT: Oh, no! What's happened?

ALBANY: Cover their faces.

EDMUND: I must do one good thing before I die.

Quickly, go to the castle; I wrote a message asking for the deaths of King Lear and Cordelia.

EDGAR: Who did you write this message to? We must stop it!

EDMUND: *[To the Officer.]* Take my sword. Give it the Captain and he'll know that I have changed the order.

ALBANY: Run! Quickly!

[The Officer exits.]

EDMUND: The message tells the Captain to kill Cordelia in the prison[2]. We wanted people to think that she killed herself.

ALBANY: Please let her be safe! Take him away.

[Edmund is carried off. King Lear enters with Cordelia dead in his arms. Edgar and the Captain follow.]

KING LEAR: Oh, this is terrible. She is gone forever!

KENT: Oh, your majesty!

KING LEAR: You're all murderers[3] and traitors! We should have saved her; now she's gone forever[4]! Her voice was always soft and gentle.

[He sees Kent.] Aren't you Kent?

KENT: Yes, I am. And I've followed you since your madness began.



(1) نقالات
(2) سجن
(3) قتلة
(4) للأبد

KING LEAR: You're welcome here.

KENT: My heart is heavy[1]. Your eldest daughters have died too.

[The Captain enters.]

CAPTAIN: Edmund is dead, my lord.

ALBANY: He isn't important now. My friends, these are my plans. We'll do everything to help King Lear feel better. I will resign[2] and give my power back to the old King. Edgar and Kent, return to your homes and I'll make sure that my friends are rewarded and my enemies punished.

KING LEAR: *[To Cordelia.]* Why should a rat have life, and you have no life at all? I'll never see you again.

[King Lear dies.]

KENT: Oh, my heart will break!

EDGAR: He's gone.

KENT: He was very ill. I'm surprised that he lived for so long.

ALBANY: Carry him out carefully.

[To Kent and Edgar.] My friends, without the King, you two will rule this kingdom.

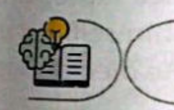
EDGAR: We must remember this sad day.

[He puts on the crown.]

The oldest man has suffered the most; we young people will never see as much as Lear, nor live as long as this good King.

[They exit.]

THE END



ـى حزين
(2) يستقيل/يتخلى عن منصب

Questions & Answers

(A) Factual questions:

1. What did Regan ask Edmund to do to prove that he wanted to help her?

ماذا طلبت ريجان من إدموند أن يفعل ليثبت أنه يريد مساعدتها؟

She asked him to fight Albany.

2. What did Albany say he would do to Edmund? SB

ماذا قال ألبانى أنه سيفعل بإدموند؟

He said that he would arrest him for treason.

3. Why did Albany blame his wife, Goneril?

لماذا ألقى ألبانى اللوم على زوجته جونيريل؟

Because she was planning to take Regan's land from her with Edmund's help saying that it was given equally to Goneril and Regan by their father.

4. Why does Regan feel ill? SB

لماذا تشعر ريجان بالمرض؟

Because Goneril gives her poison.

5. Who appeared to fight Edmund? Why?

من ظهر لمحاربة إدموند؟ لماذا؟

Edgar appeared to fight him. He was ready to fight him to prove that he was a liar to everyone including his father and his brother.

6. What did Albany do when Goneril asked to save Edmund?

ماذا فعل ألبانى عندما طلبت جونيريل إنقاذ إدموند؟

He showed her the letter she had written to Edmund before the battle.

7. How did Goneril try to defend herself?

كيف حاولت جونيريل الدفاع عن نفسها؟

She tried to tear up the letter and said that the laws of the kingdom were hers not Albany's.

8. What did Edmund do after he was badly hurt?

ماذا فعل إدموند بعد أن أصيب بجروح بالغة؟

He admitted his guilt and asked to know the identity of the man who fought him.

9. What did Edgar tell Albany about his story and his father?

ماذا قال إدجار لألبانى عن قصته ووالده؟

He told him that he disguised himself as a beggar, then he met their father, who became blind. He became his guide, and stopped him from killing himself. Just an hour before, he told him everything, but his heart was too weak. He died smiling.

10. Whose blood is on the knife that the officer is carrying? SB

دم من على السكين الذى يحمله الضابط؟

Goneril's blood is on the knife.

11. What good thing did Edmund try to do before he died?

ما هو الخير الذى حاول إدموند القيام به قبل وفاته؟

He asked them to go to the castle to stop killing King Lear and Cordelia as he had ordered.

12. How will the Captain know that Edmund has changed his mind? SB

كيف سيعرف الكابتن أن إدموند قد غير رأيه؟

When the captain receives Edmund's sword, he'll know that Edmund has changed his mind.

13. Why does Lear say everyone is a traitor and a murderer? SB

لماذا يقول لير أن الجميع خائنون وقاتلون؟

Because Cordelia is dead and he thinks people should have saved her.

14. What was Albany's plan after the death of Cordelia, Regan and Goneril?

ما هى خطة ألبانى بعد وفاة كورديليا وريجان وجونيريل؟

He planned that he would resign and give his power back to the old King.

15. What does Albany promise to do for his friends? SB

ماذا وعد ألبانى أن يفعل لأصدقائه؟

He promises to reward them.

16. Who rules the kingdom when Lear dies? SB

من يحكم المملكة عندما يموت لير؟

Kent and Edgar rule the kingdom.

(B) Critical Thinking Questions:

1. "You can't tell me what to do, Albany." What does this sentence show about Edmund?

"لا يمكنك أن تخبرنى ماذا أفعل يا ألبانى." ماذا تظهر هذه الجملة عن إدموند؟

I think it shows that he became very proud, thinking that he was too powerful to be given orders by Albany.

2. "The laws of the kingdom are mine, not yours. Who can punish me for it?" Do you agree with Goneril when she said this? Why?

"قوانين المملكة لى، وليست لك. من يستطيع أن يعاقبنى على ذلك؟" هل تتفق مع جونيريل عندما قالت هذا؟ لماذا؟

No, I don't agree with her. Everyone should be punished for their evil actions even if they belonged to a royal family.

3. If you were Edgar, would you forgive Edmund for his evil actions? Why?

لو كنت مكان إدجار، هل ستغفر لإدموند أفعاله الشريرة؟ لماذا؟

No, I wouldn't. He hurt Edgar badly and destroyed the family. He even betrayed his own father and thus he became blind.

4. Why do you think Edmund wanted to save Cordelia and King Lear's lives before he died?

لماذا تعتقد أن إدموند أراد إنقاذ حياة كورديليا والملك لير قبل وفاته؟

Maybe, he began to regret his ill deeds and he wanted to be remembered for one good thing.

5. What's your opinion of Albany's decision to resign and give power back to King Lear?

ما رأيك بقرار ألباني الاستقالة وإعادة السلطة للملك لير؟

I think it is an honourable decision to give power away to honour the King.

6. Do you think that Edgar deserves to rule the kingdom? Why?

هل تعتقد أن إدجار يستحق أن يحكم المملكة؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I think so. He is a noble and clever man. He also became wise and experienced through his sufferings in life.

7. Did you expect Regan and Goneril to die? Why?

هل توقعت موت ريجان وجونيريل؟ لماذا؟

Yes, I did. They should have been punished for all their evil actions.

8. How did you feel at the end of the play? Why?

كيف كان شعورك فى نهاية المسرحية؟ لماذا؟

I feel sad for the death of King Lear and Cordelia after their suffering in prison.

9. Who was your favourite character in the play? Give reasons.

من هى شخصيتك المفضلة فى المسرحية؟ أعط أسبابًا.

My favourite character was Cordelia. She was an innocent character who loved her father and sacrificed her life for him although he didn't treat her well.

10. What is the moral lesson in *King Lear*, in your opinion?

ما هو الدرس الأخلاقى فى رواية الملك لير من وجهة نظرك؟

The moral of *King Lear* is the idea that a person's actions speak louder than words alone. It is very easy to say one thing and do another.

Practice



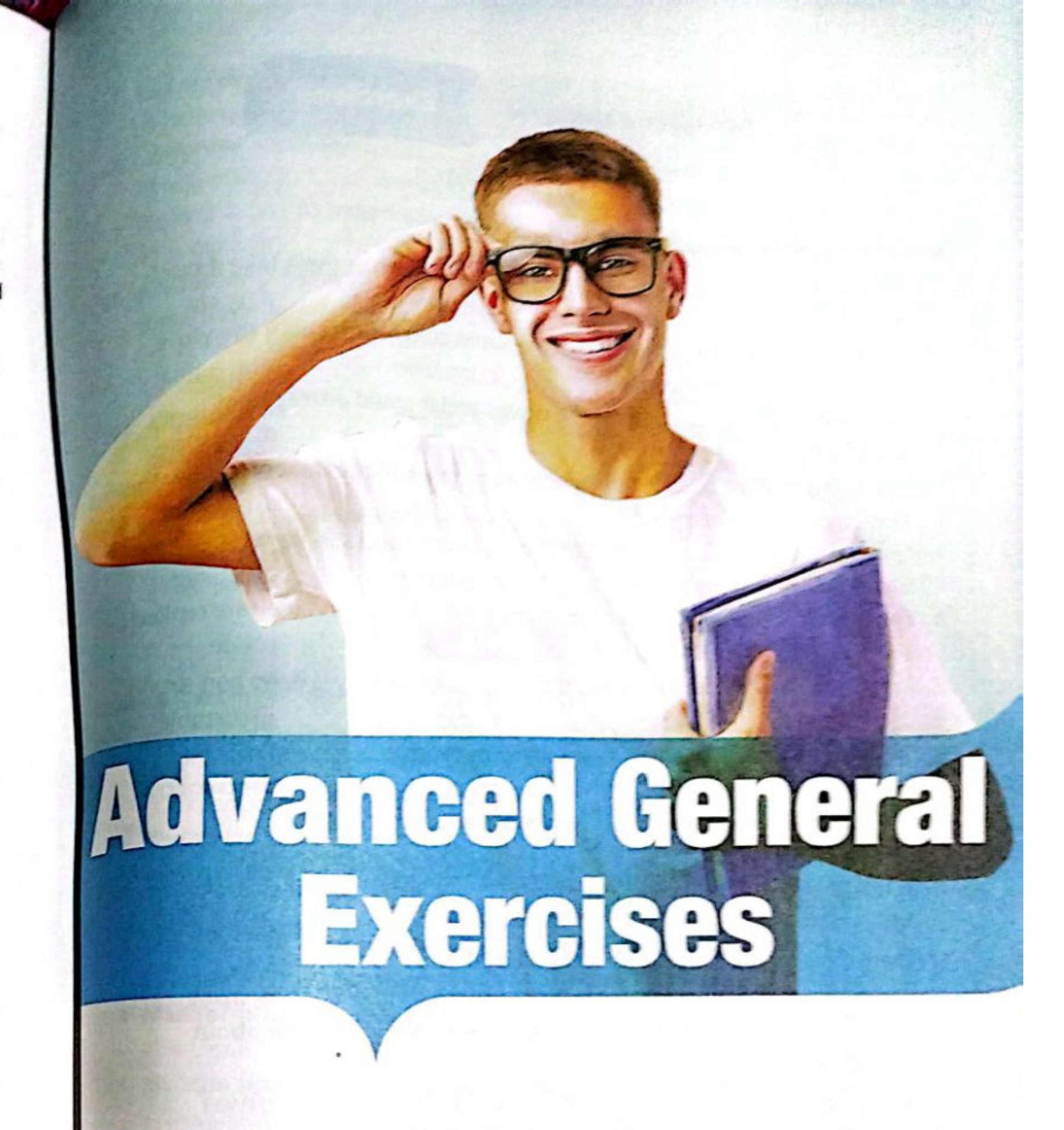
Act IV, Scenes i-iii

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. *"Minister"* and *"Ambassador"* are two of several diplomatic known ....
   a) topics b) ranks
   c) addresses d) titles
2. Hemingway, the American writer, wrote about his life as a .... in the First World War.
   a) soldier b) manager c) learner d) victim
3. The manager was puzzled as the two candidates were .... qualified for the job.
   a) vaguely b) helplessly
   c) equally d) believably
4. The tourist group was accompanied by a museum .... during their visit.
   a) planner b) guide c) servant d) driver
5. With a heavy ...., she turned to wave goodbye and went to visit her friend in hospital.
   a) brain b) arm c) head d) heart
6. My new classmate is the biggest .... I've ever known. He never tells the truth.
   a) liar b) beggar
   c) trigger d) truthful
7. My friend was .... into buying that bad car.
   a) traced b) tricked
   c) honoured d) duplicated
8. Mona tore .... her fiancé's letter and threw it away.
   a) on b) in c) up d) for
9. The identity of the .... who killed the old lady has not yet been revealed.
   a) judge b) murderer
   c) lawyer d) coach
10. The young man was charged أُتهم with .... and sentenced to death.
    a) treasury b) treason
    c) loyalty d) pleasure

(B) Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think King Lear deserves the suffering he had in life?
2. Greed for power can lead people to betray even their relatives. Illustrate this, giving examples from the play?
3. Although taking Regan's land would make him more powerful, Albany refused it. What does this show about him?
4. In your opinion, would Albany have ordered Goneril to be killed if she hadn't killed herself? Why?
5. Do you think that Edmund deserved the punishment he received? Why?
6. If you were Albany, would you resign and give back power to the King? Why?
7. Do you think that Regan deserved to meet her end? Why?
8. Do you think that Edgar will make a good king? Why?
9. Who was the character in the play that you hated the most? Give reasons.
10. What did you learn from the play?



Advanced General Exercises

- Advanced General Exercises
- Advanced General Exercises Answers

Advanced General





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Dentists use .... anaesthetic to drill into a tooth or even take it out.
a) local b) national c) international d) body

2 Three .... studies all arrived at the same conclusion about the virus.
a) dependent b) independent c) intuitive d) imaginary

3 The small boat .... against the waves and it could arrive safely.
a) worked b) respired c) struggled d) expanded

4 The young man was .... up by police and taken to the station for questioning.
a) assigned b) released c) arrested d) picked

5 Cooking oils are .... from plants such as corn and sunflower.
a) consumed b) intended c) extracted d) expired

6 The team is desperate to end a ten-game goal .... and they are ranked last.
a) draught b) drought c) current d) tide

7 In the field of drug development, the .... of secrecy is deep and strong.
a) culture b) habit c) study d) costume

8 Government plans for hospital closures provoked a .... of protest.
a) tide b) shore c) storm d) downpour

9 The firefighter fell down a .... of stairs and hurt her back.
a) trip b) flight c) glider d) block

10 In the world of work, an employee must .... himself to arrive at work on time.
a) exercise b) practise c) aspire d) organise

11 The woman who .... this house died 30 years ago.
a) is owning b) was owning c) owned d) owns

12 Yasser .... very naughty these days. I need to ask a doctor about this behaviour.
a) is being b) is c) will be d) was

13 My husband .... the food while I'm cooking! It's very annoying.
a) always taste b) used to taste
c) was always tasting d) is always tasting

14 A: What's that terrible noise? B: The neighbours .... a party.
a) have b) are having c) having d) had

15 We are discussing the new project and .... a good time as well.
a) having b) had c) have d) being having

16 I can hear someone .... outside. What is happening?
a) is shouting b) shouts c) was shouting d) shouting

17 He is .... to help his father with his work on the garden.
a) supposing b) supposed c) suppose d) supposition

18 My father is always .... in English literature and reading about the famous English writers.
a) interesting b) interest
c) interested d) being interesting

19 Although he .... me for 5 years, he didn't invite me to his wedding party last week.
a) 's known b) 's knowing c) 's been knowing d) knows

20 I .... about my first visit to London. I .... of going to live there.
a) always think/'m thinking b) am always thinking/'m thinking
c) always think/think d) am always thinking/think

Unit (8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The writer's new novel is a/an .... of a short story he wrote about ten years ago.
a) expansion b) repetition c) publication d) publicity

2 The squash player finished the tournament in .... by winning his last match very quickly and easily.
a) fashion b) style c) affection d) skill

3 Drawing, like writing, can be a .... for expressing your feelings.
a) system b) form c) vehicle d) shape

4 Maha's husband was always nice to her in ...., but treated her badly at home.
a) general b) private c) special d) public

5 My little sister has a .... for languages. She learns them quite easily.
a) reward b) present c) facility d) disability

6 You should take another medicine as colds do not .... to antibiotics.
a) reply b) respond c) answer d) respect

7 The film we watched at the cinema could .... us to 18th century England.
a) transport b) transmit c) transplant d) transfuse

8 My uncle is the chairman of a .... of TV sports stations.
a) team b) lab c) network d) specialty

9 The cost of the new bridge would be in the .... of 5 million pounds.
a) district b) speck c) area d) region

10 Some economic changes are taking place at national .... in Egypt.
a) standard b) level c) stop d) airway

11 This time next week, everyone .... the final match.
a) will have watched b) will watch
c) will be watching d) shall watch

12 By the time he saves money, he .... a new car.
a) will buy b) will have bought
c) will be bought d) will be buying

13 After he reads *"Great Expectations"*, he .... all Charles Dickens' novels.
a) will read b) will have read
c) read d) will have been read

14 By 2050, all people .... organic food.
a) will have been eaten b) will be eaten
c) will have eaten d) will eat

15 I expect the price of petrol .... by next week.
a) will have been risen b) will be risen
c) will have risen d) to have been risen

16 I have promised my father .... high marks and join the Faculty of Medicine.
a) to get b) will get
c) would get d) to have got

17 Line 4 .... the east and west of Cairo and make it easier for people to travel around the city.
a) will be connected b) is connected
c) will connect d) will have been connected

18 I .... 3 languages by the time I have finished this course.
a) will learn b) 'm going to have learnt
c) am learning d) will be learning

19 Do your best and you .... your English by the time you come back from the U.S.
a) are perfecting b) will have been perfected
c) will have perfected d) perfect

20 Don't worry! I'll watch you while you .... in the lake.
a) swam b) were swimming
c) swimming d) swim



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The area is protected as a wildlife .... to protect the rare animals in it.
a) park b) preserve c) accessory d) garden

2 The sports centre is organising a fishing .... to the lake for next week.
a) prize b) award c) expedition d) resort

3 The new chemistry book is a work of serious .... of some Egyptian scientists.
a) scholarship b) championship
c) qualification d) implication

4 The school encourages a sense of .... in its students through some volunteering activities.
a) society b) right c) democracy d) community

5 My sister cleans her contact lens with an ordinary saline ....
a) solution b) syrup c) tube d) research

6 She is a young woman who .... trust in everyone she meets.
a) involves b) inspires c) aspires d) respires

7 I have typed out some lecture notes for the .... of those people who were absent last week.
a) consummation b) sale c) benefit d) cure

8 In many countries, eighteen is considered the age of ....
a) majority b) minority c) acceptance d) qualification

9 Most of the television sets on the market are all high .... for a better image.
a) quantity b) purpose c) definition d) design

10 The police think that someone set the factory fire on ....
a) reason b) cause c) account d) purpose

11 When we were children, our parents .... us to the children's theatres and buy us sweets.
a) are used to take b) use to often take
c) will often take d) often took

12 Trains .... at our town's station. We find travelling easy.
a) usually stop b) are used to stop
c) used to stop d) were used to stopping

13 My father always .... me with my homework and encouraged me alot.
a) used to help b) helped
c) would help d) all are possible

14 She .... an amazing suntanned by the time summer ended.
a) is used to having b) has had
c) had d) would have

15 In the past, all our food .... in organic forms, but now we have both organic and non-organic forms.
a) didn't use to come b) used to come
c) didn't come d) would never come

16 She .... the most popular girl when she sang.
a) would be b) used to be
c) was d) all are possible

17 That coat is .... for you to wear.
a) too small b) slightly smaller
c) too much small d) much small

18 Jane's dress is .... yours.
a) almost as b) slightly the same as
c) similar to d) the same to

19 He's recovered from his illness and is playing .... ever.
a) as well as b) as good as
c) almost as good as d) much good than

20 English is as easy as German. They are ....
a) almost as easier as each other
b) the same ease
c) slightly easier than each other
d) exactly the same easiest

Unit (10)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Although they live in the ocean, the salmon fish return to the river as .... in order to breed.
a) teenagers b) meals c) adults d) young

2 The local newspapers .... a fierce attack on the Ministry of Health after the accident in the hospital.
a) involved b) launched c) shot d) fired

3 Some dogs have a/an .... sense of smell, so they are used by the police to detect things such as drugs.
a) interested b) eager c) weak d) keen

4 You can earn .... money working as a professional footballer nowadays.
a) serious b) dangerous c) scarce d) tiny

5 It is believed that hard work is the .... to success in life.
a) syllabus b) street c) method d) route

6 Don't .... the fact that your brother lost his job, as he is very sensitive about his job.
a) publish b) broadcast c) send d) spread

7 The evolution of smartphones and fast internet connections led to a great increase in the .... marketing industry.
a) download b) software c) digital d) colourful

8 House prices have .... up this year because the prices of building materials have increased.
a) zoomed b) spoiled c) decreased d) soared

9 Psychologists say that music is a great .... for releasing your emotions.
a) studio b) station c) canal d) channel

10 A lot of talks to solve the military dispute have been going on behind the ....
a) sites b) scenes c) sights d) scenery

11 After ...., the food was served on the table.
a) cooking b) had cooked c) been cooked d) being cooked

12 Having .... the bad news, she fainted and was carried to hospital.
a) told b) telling
c) been told d) to tell

13 After she .... to school, she realised that she .... the wrong homework.
a) got/had done b) had got/did
c) had got/had done d) got/ did

14 I'd rather Ahmed .... me yesterday.
a) visited b) had visited
c) didn't visit d) was visiting

15 I wish you .... that bad car last week.
a) didn't buy b) had bought
c) bought d) hadn't bought

16 He is upset because he .... his job.
a) had lost b) lost
c) has lost d) had been lost

17 The pharaohs believed in life after ....
a) death b) had died c) they had died d) they die

18 The pharaohs .... the Pyramids and other monuments.
a) have built b) built c) build d) has built

19 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) After the car he had had been repaired, it was polished.
b) After the car he had hadn't repaired, it was polished.
c) After the car he had been repaired, it was polished.
d) After the car he had had repaired, it was polished.

20 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.
a) As soon as the girl disappeared, we told the police.
b) As soon as the girl had been disappeared, we told the police.
c) As soon as the girl was disappeared, we told the police.
d) As soon as the girl has disappeared, we told the police.

Unit (11)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We couldn't help laughing out loud at the .... of the situation in the muddy playground. The players kept slipping down.
a) romance b) comedy c) tragedy d) shortage
2 An essential piece of mountain climbing equipment is a climbing .... to help you up and down.
a) windmill b) slide c) swing d) harness
3 Mary talked about her new job with great .... She seemed very excited.
a) collocation b) collection c) animation d) respiration
4 A talented young artist designed the .... for the new play.
a) scenery b) site c) sight d) delight
5 Hundreds of students .... against the war outside the American Congress.
a) showed b) demonstrated c) denounced d) advocated
6 The actress agreed to give her .... of the accident to journalists.
a) vision b) sight c) version d) serial
7 The young priest is appointed to work at a Catholic .... in Africa.
a) duty b) task c) fiction d) mission
8 There was widespread .... support for the new governmental policy.
a) fascinated b) private c) popular d) hilarious
9 My son has a lot of big .... dreams of becoming an astronaut.
a) silly b) romantic c) historical d) hopeless
10 Our team lost the game, but not for .... of trying. It was bad luck.
a) lack b) leak c) aspiration d) hope
11 A: The car isn't moving, is it?
B: .... It's coming towards us.
a) No, it isn't b) No, it is c) Yes, it is d) Yes, it isn't
12 I don't suppose there is much damage, ...?
a) isn't it b) do I c) isn't there d) is there
13 Boring, ...?
a) doesn't he b) isn't it c) hasn't he d) was it
14 A .... soldier is most likely to get shot in war.
a) cowardly b) coward c) cowardliness d) cowardlier

15 Although he is my neighbour, I .... know him.
a) nearly b) hard c) hardly d) harder
16 How .... your determination and will is!
a) strength b) strong c) strongly d) stronger
17 He was wrong when he took it .... and returned to work before recuperation.
a) easier b) easily c) easiest d) easy
18 I think he wants to travel as .... as ....
a) quickly/possible b) quickly / possibly
c) quick/possible d) quick/possibly
19 Fast-food restaurants are popular because many people want ....
a) to eat quickly and cheaply
b) eating quickly and cheaply
c) the eat quickly and cheaply
d) quick and cheaply eating
20 Everybody congratulated him for the .... party.
a) well-organised extremely b) extremely well-organised
c) well-extremely organised d) extreme well-organised

Unit (12)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Learning from experience is a good .... for continuous improvement.
a) analysis b) prescription
c) recipe d) guidebook
2 The .... of the match will be shown later this evening.
a) excerpts b) highlights c) wings d) losses
3 Local newspapers took .... at the famous actor for his indecent remarks.
a) aim b) goal c) target d) objective
4 We need someone outside the company to give us a/an .... analysis.
a) target b) goal c) aim d) objective
5 The team .... their first win of the season at the Premier League.
a) recorded b) reported c) gave d) took
6 If you are fed up with spams and unwanted ads, you can install a spam ....
a) cleaner b) caller c) filter d) advisor
7 Two men were arrested as the police officer proved that they were .... to the terrorist action.
a) outfits b) accessories
c) accesses d) appliances

8 The number of people claiming unemployment .... rose as a result of the coronavirus crisis.
a) crisis b) loss c) profit d) benefit

9 The students were left to their own .... when the teacher was late for the class.
a) tools b) equipment c) devices d) defects

10 We are taking a .... view of our business to make the right decision.
a) global b) local c) national d) simple

11 I couldn't give my son .... he needed.
a) that b) whose c) what d) who

12 Ali wanted to know the reason .... I was late for the meeting.
a) what b) why c) that d) when

13 Look! That's the man ....
a) we gave the money
b) we gave the money to
c) who we gave the money
d) all are possible

14 Which one of the following sentences is correctly structured?
a) The dog, she bought last week, barks a lot.
b) The dog which she bought last week barks a lot.
c) The dog, which she bought it last week, barks a lot.
d) The dog, she bought it last week, barks a lot.

15 His father, ..., said he didn't like to work.
a) he gave a series of interviews
b) that had retired a few weeks ago
c) who was already over sixty-five
d) is an electrical engineer

16 Hassan ordered an enormous steak, ...
a) was very delicious
b) which cost him a lot
c) he ate all by himself
d) it wasn't well-done

17 People .... stealing are imprisoned.
a) caught
b) who caught
c) who catch
d) who are catching

18 The students .... wishes have come true are very happy.
a) who
b) whose
c) that
d) whom

19 He bought a car, ... I can't remember the brand.
a) where
b) of what
c) by whom
d) of which

20 There were fifty questions on the test, ...
a) either was easy
b) all of whom were very interested
c) all of they were very hard
d) all of which were difficult

Unit 7

1. a) local
تستخدم العبارة local anaesthetic بمعنى (مخدر/بنج موضعي).
2. b) independent
تستخدم independent هنا بمعنى (مستقل في أداء العمل).
3. c) struggled
تستخدم struggle هنا بمعنى (يعمل في ظروف صعبة).
4. d) picked
يستخدم pick up هنا بمعنى (يقبض على).
5. c) extracted
يستخدم extract هنا بمعنى (يستخلص مادة من شيء كنبات).
6. b) drought
يستخدم drought هنا بمعنى (انقطاع عن عمل شيء كتسجيل أهداف).
7. a) culture
تستخدم culture هنا بمعنى (انطباع/فكر سائد).
8. c) storm
تستخدم storm of protest بمعنى (عاصفة/قدر كبير من الاحتجاج).
9. b) flight
تستخدم flight هنا بمعنى (مجموعة متواصلة من درجات سلم).
10. d) organise
تستخدم organise himself بمعنى (يرتب أفكاره وتصرفاته).
11. c) owned
12. a) is being
13. d) is always tasting
14. b) are having
15. a) having
16. d) shouting
17. b) supposed
18. c) interested
19. a) 's known
20. a) always think/'m thinking

Unit 8

1. a) expansion

تستخدم expansion هنا بمعنى (تطوير/توسيع فكرة).

2. b) style

يستخدم التعبير in style بمعنى (بطريقة مبهرة/مثيرة للإعجاب).

3. c) vehicle

تستخدم vehicle هنا بمعنى (وسيلة/طريقة للتعبير).

4. d) public

يستخدم التعبير in public بمعنى (علنا/أمام الجمهور)

5. c) facility

يستخدم facility هنا بمعنى (موهبة في تعلم اللغة).

6. b) respond

يستخدم respond هنا بمعنى (يستجيب للعلاج).

7. a) transport

تستخدم transport هنا بمعنى (ينقل/يعيد لفترة زمنية).

8. c) network

تستخدم network هنا بمعنى (شبكة/مجموعة متصلة من قنوات التليفزيون أو محطات الإذاعة).

9. d) region

يستخدم التعبير in the region of بمعنى (فيما يقدر بـ).

10. b) level

يستخدم التعبير the national level بمعنى (على المستوى المحلي من مسابقة أو لعبة).

11. c) will be watching
12. a) will buy
13. b) will have read
14. d) will eat
15. c) will have risen
16. a) to get
17. c) will connect
18. b) 'm going to have learnt
19. c) will have perfected
20. d) swim

Unit 9

1. b) preserve

تستخدم العبارة wildlife preserve بمعنى (محمية طبيعية)

2. c) expedition

تستخدم العبارة fishing expedition بمعنى (رحلة صيد)

3. a) scholarship

تستخدم scholarship هنا بمعنى (عمل/طريقة علمية)

4. d) community

يستخدم التعبير a sense of community بمعنى (الإحساس بالانتماء للمجتمع)

5. a) solution

يستخدم solution هنا بمعنى (محلول)

6. b) inspires

يستخدم التعبير inspire trust بمعنى (يبعث الثقة في شخص)

7. c) benefit

يستخدم التعبير for the benefit بمعنى (لمصلحة).

8. a) majority

يستخدم التعبير the age of majority بمعنى (سن البلوغ).

9. c) definition

تستخدم العبارة high definition بمعنى (عالي الدقة).

10. d) purpose

يستخدم التعبير on purpose بمعنى (عمدا/عن قصد).

11. d) often took
12. a) usually stop
13. b) helped
14. d) would have
15. b) used to come
16. d) all are possible
17. a) too small
18. c) similar to
19. a) as well as
20. b) the same ease

Unit 10

1. c) adults

تستخدم adults هنا بمعنى (كبار الحيوانات).

2. b) launched

يستخدم التعبير launch an attack بمعنى (يشن هجوما).

3. d) keen

تستخدم keen هنا بمعنى (حاد/شديد).

4. a) serious

تستخدم العبارة serious money بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال).

5. d) route

يستخدم التعبير the route to success بمعنى (طريق النجاح).

6. b) broadcast

يستخدم broadcast هنا بمعنى (يفشى/يذيع معلومة أو سر).

7. c) digital

تستخدم العبارة digital marketing بمعنى (التسويق الرقمى عبر الإنترنت للمنتجات).

8. a) zoomed

تستخدم zoom up بمعنى (يزداد بشكل كبير و سريع).

9. d) channel

تستخدم channel هنا بمعنى (وسيلة/طريقة للتعبير).

10. b) scenes

يستخدم التعبير behind the scenes بمعنى (خلف الكواليس/فى خفاء).

11. d) being cooked
12. c) been told
13. a) got/had done
14. b) had visited
15. d) hadn't bought
16. c) has lost
17. a) death
18. b) built
19. a) After the car he had been repaired, it was polished.
20. a) As soon as the girl disappeared, we told the police.

Unit 11

1. b) comedy

يستخدم التعبير comedy of the situation بمعنى (موقف ساخر).

2. d) harness

تستخدم العبارة climbing harness بمعنى (حزام/أداة تستخدم فى رياضة التسلق).

3. c) animation

تستخدم animation هنا بمعنى (حيوية).

4. a) scenery

تستخدم scenery هنا بمعنى (ديكور فى مسرحية).

5. b) demonstrated

يستخدم demonstrate هنا بمعنى (يتظاهر).

6. c) version

يستخدم version هنا بمعنى (رواية لحدث من وجهة نظر).

7. d) mission

تستخدم mission هنا بمعنى (إرسالية/مدرسة تبشيرية).

8. c) popular

تستخدم العبارة popular support بمعنى (تأييد عام).

9. b) romantic

تستخدم romantic هنا بمعنى (خيالى/بعيد عن الواقع).

10. a) lack

يستخدم التعبير not for lack/want of بمعنى (ليس بسبب قلة المحاولة).

11. c) Yes, it is
12. d) is there
13. b) isn't it
14. a) cowardly
15. c) hardly
16. b) strong
17. d) easy
18. a) quickly / possible
19. a) to eat quickly and cheaply
20. b) extremely well-organised

Unit 12

1. c) recipe

تستخدم recipe هنا بمعنى (طريقة إجراء/طريقة عمل).

2. b) highlights

تستخدم highlights هنا بمعنى (اللقطات البارزة من مباراة).

3. a) aim

يستخدم التعبير take aim at هنا بمعنى (يضع فى مرمى النقد).

4. d) objective

تستخدم objective هنا بمعنى (موضوعى).

5. a) recorded

يستخدم التعبير record its first win بمعنى (يحرز الفوز الأول).

6. c) filter

تستخدم العبارة spam filter بمعنى (فلتر البريد المزعج على الإنترنت).

7. b) accessories

تستخدم accessory هنا بمعنى (مشترك فى جريمة).

8. d) benefit

تستخدم العبارة unemployment benefit بمعنى (إعانة بطالة).

9. c) devices

يستخدم التعبير be left to their own devices بمعنى (يترك بمفرده ليفعل ما يحلو له).

10. a) global

تستخدم العبارة global view بمعنى (نظرة شاملة).

11. c) what
12. b) Why
13. d) all are possible
14. b) The dog which she bought last week barks a lot.
15. c) who was already over sixty-five
16. b) which cost him a lot
17. a) caught
18. b) whose
19. d) of which
20. d) all of which were difficult



رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٤٨٠/٢٠٢٢
ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم:
٣٦٢/٢/١٢/١٠٤
طبعة: 2024
خدمة العملاء: 16766

Test on Unit 7

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1 It's important for a teacher to balance punishment with positive ....

a) allowance b) encouragement
c) reflection d) detest

2 The young actress was full of .... to achieve her goals.

a) consumption b) conservation
c) appliance d) determination

3 The new coach of the team speaks English with a French .... as he is from Switzerland.

a) accent b) language c) note d) sign

4 The last .... she made in her diary was on October 10th.

a) enter b) entry c) place d) trip

5 His .... confirms that he always goes to gym. He looks really fit.

a) appearance b) determination c) avoidance d) facilitation

6 Algeria became fully .... from France in 1962.

a) dependent b) nosy c) independent d) facilitated

7 There were so many people talking that I couldn't .... on the music.

a) duplicate b) replicate c) investigate d) concentrate

8 The secretary put the conference date in the manager's ....

a) diary b) book c) article d) title

9 The businessman has two big flats in Sharm El Sheikh, not to .... his villa in 6th October City.

a) remember b) remind c) mention d) study

10 You must read the dictionary .... carefully to know the distinction between these two words.

a) enters b) entries c) exits d) indexes

11 I .... in London for three weeks in July.

a) stay b) staying c) have stayed d) 'm staying

12 Aya .... classical music to jazz and pop.

a) preferring b) prefer c) prefers d) is preferring

13 I'm so happy Emad! My parents and I .... on holiday next week.

a) have gone b) are going c) go d) went

14 Galal .... to go home right now.

a) wants b) want
c) is wanting d) has wanted

15 Mr. Hossam .... accurate. He gives the correct and true details.

a) is always being b) always is c) is always d) has always

16 I .... that the situation is out of control.

a) 'm seeing b) will see c) sees d) see

17 Samy and Waleed .... hard these days.

a) study b) are studying c) have studied d) will study

18 I .... something outside. Are the doors locked?

a) am hearing b) hearing c) hears d) can hear

19 I .... taking early retirement. This is something I'm thinking about now.

a) 'm considering b) considering c) considered d) consider

20 Which one of the following sentences is grammatically correct?

a) They are having a nice house.
b) She usually isn't having a good time shopping.
c) People like Ahmed because he is being polite.
d) We don't have a lot of fun going to the dentist.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



The bell rang. Miss Fareeda had just finished explaining the last sum to the class. Before she could say another word, some of the students stood up. They were ready to head to the canteen. Miss Fareeda told them sternly, "There isn't any need to rush. There's plenty of food and time for you to have your recess." She insisted that the class went for their recess in an orderly manner.

However, once she was out of sight, the boys started jostling each other down the stairs. There was a lot of pushing, shoving and laughing. Suddenly, there was a loud thud followed by a scream. Everyone on the stairs stopped in their tracks.

It turned out that one of the boys in front had missed a step and fallen. He landed hard on his elbow. The bone jutted out. The boy was whimpering in pain. His friend quickly helped him up and brought him to the office. The principal took one look at the injury and immediately called for an ambulance. While waiting, the other boys in the group were questioned. When told what they were doing on the stairs, the principal shook his head. The injured boy and his friends hung their head in shame. They apologised for their behaviour. The principal said, "Let this be a lesson to you."

The injured boy was then brought to the hospital. The following week, he returned to school with a cast around his arm.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. What was the lesson the class had just before the bell rang?
   a) Physics. b) English. c) Maths. d) Chemistry.
22. What caused the loud thud?
   a) A boy had fallen down the stairs.
   b) Some stairs fell over.
   c) There was a fight on the stairs.
   d) Some boys were running down the stairs.
23. The boys didn't follow ....
   a) the school rules b) Mrs. Fareeda's advice
   c) the traffic rules d) the right stairs
24. The antonym of the word "sternly" is ....
   a) firmly b) severely c) strictly d) softly
25. The principal called for the .... to help the injury.
   a) ambulance b) police c) other teachers d) the other boys
26. Finally, the boys realised that they were ....
   a) right b) mistaken c) strong d) clever
27. The boy was screaming, so his arm might be ....
   a) burnt b) healed c) infected d) broken
28. The writer wanted the boys to ....
   a) follow Mrs. Fareeda's advice
   b) follow the headmaster's advice
   c) follow the elderly's advice
   d) follow their friends' advice

29 Translate into English:

3

- لا يستطيع أحد أن ينكر أن إصلاح التعليم هو السبيل الأمثل لإصلاح الفرد والمجتمع؛ فالتعليم هو الطريقة المثلى لبناء المواطن الصالح القادر على مواجهة تحديات العصر.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- We must forget our disagreements and disputes and unite for the sake of Egypt. It's our beloved country which has faced all hardships and remained strong against enemies.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"The way advertisements can affect people"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 8

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 20

1. The clothes company is planning a great .... of its outlets in Alexandria to sell more.
   a) deterioration b) decline c) expansion d) reduction
2. The leisure .... in this hotel include a sauna and a gym.
   a) probabilities b) facilities c) accessibilities d) availabilities
3. We do not .... this film suitable for young children as it has many violent scenes.
   a) consider b) accept c) agree d) expect
4. My secretary will call you to arrange a/an .... time to meet.
   a) intensive b) convenient c) extensive d) scanned
5. These books are also available in an .... form which you can read on an e-reader or mobile phone.
   a) electricity b) electric c) electrical d) electronic
6. The Suez Canal .... is responsible for running and developing it.
   a) Responsibility b) Authority c) Validity d) Expiry
7. Egypt has a lot of sports .... which make it able to host international competitions.
   a) probabilities b) facilities c) accessibilities d) availabilities
8. The .... number of people who took part in the experiments of the corona vaccine in Egypt was nearly three thousand.
   a) vague b) avoidable c) available d) total
9. Can we look for a quieter place for our conversation? This café looks very ....
   a) general b) private c) special d) public
10. The new clerk doesn't think that the salary for his new job is .... So, he is considering leaving it.
    a) awful b) horrible c) satisfactory d) unsuitable
11. I don't think you .... any problems when you land in Cairo.
    a) have b) won't have c) will have d) aren't having
12. By the time he graduates, Tamer .... all the necessary classes.
    a) will take b) is going to take
    c) takes d) will have taken



13. They will have lived in Maadi .... 10 years by next March.
   a) for b) to c) since d) at
14. In one year, I .... my English enough to have a longer conversation with someone.
   a) improve b) will have improved
   c) will be improved d) am improving
15. By this time next month, I hope they .... the community centre.
   a) will be building b) have built
   c) will build d) will have built
16. We are already building a new shopping centre and we will .... it by 2024.
   a) have completed b) be completed
   c) complete d) be completing
17. You should come earlier if you want to speak to her. By three o'clock, she ....
   a) won't leave b) will leave c) will have left d) is leaving
18. Do you think you .... writing that report by the time I get back?
   a) will finish b) will have finished
   c) will be finishing d) are finishing
19. By next month, I will .... him for five years and I think he is reliable enough.
   a) know b) be knowing
   c) have been knowing d) have known
20. The project is going to .... before the deadline.
   a) have been completed b) be completing
   c) complete d) have completed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8



People of long ago used to live in groups in caves or in jungles. They wandered from place to place hunting animals and looking for food like nuts, roots, wild fruits and berries.

Then later people began to settle along or near rivers because they were sources of water, food, trade and transport. They used the river water for drinking, cooking and washing. Their animals also drank from these rivers.

The rivers were full of fish. Rivers also made good farmland for these early river settlers. During the yearly flood, rivers carried along with them river mud which was very fertile. This fertile soil was left behind after each flood. Thus, river banks or valleys were suitable places for farming. The people started to cultivate their own crops.

Besides the fertile soil, rivers were also used as a form of highway. Men began to use rafts and boats as a form of water transport to carry their extra food. They sailed to another part of the river to trade with the other settlers. So they became farmers as well as traders. When they began to travel up and down the rivers, they learned about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers.

As trade and transportation grew, the population also grew. These river settlements grew into cities, and these cities became centres of great civilisations like those found in early Egypt, India and China. These civilisations had powerful governments with many laws and government workers.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 All the statements are true EXCEPT "..................".

a) As trade and transportation grew, the population of river settlements also grew.
b) As the river settlements grew, they became cities and centres of civilisation.
c) Egypt, India and China were at one time centres of great civilisation.
d) Egypt, India and China were the only important and powerful countries in the world to have rivers.

22 The word cultivate can best be replaced with ....

a) grow b) obtain c) look for d) buy

23 The BEST title for this passage would be "..................".

a) The river water
b) The river cities
c) Rivers and the beginning of civilisation
d) Rivers and the customs and beliefs of the settlers

24 Rafts and boats helped the people living near the rivers to be ....

a) farmers and traders b) farmers
c) travellers d) sailors

25 The people of long ago used the river water for ....

a) drinking b) cooking c) washing d) all of these

26 The early settlers use the river banks for farming because the soil was ....

a) fertile b) soft c) sandy d) muddy

27 Rafts and boats helped people to ....

a) learn about exporting goods to other countries
b) learn about the customs and beliefs of the other settlers
c) learn about transportation
d) learn about seas and rivers around the world



28 The land isn't as fertile as in the past because ....

a) it isn't used by farmers

b) modern technology has replaced traditional farming

c) there is no more flood

d) there is no water in seas and rivers

29 **Translate into English:** 3

- قدمت التكنولوجيا الحديثة لنا الكثير من المعجزات الطبية، ومنها أشياء كان يظن البعض أنها خيال علمي يصعب الوصول إليه. بمرور الوقت، تحولت توقعات وآمال العلماء إلى حقيقة.

....

....

....

....

....

30 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

- If humans contributed to controlling global warming, this world would be cooler and the high temperatures we currently suffer from would decrease.

....

....

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:** 6

"How we can protect our children from the disadvantages of modern technology"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 9

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. This .... of desert plant is becoming increasingly rare.
   a) device b) species c) spice d) gender
2. Scientists and geographers went on .... to explore the River Nile especially in the 19th century.
   a) duties b) tasks c) expeditions d) picnics
3. Mohamed Salah has .... a great success as a professional footballer.
   a) achieved b) applied c) failed d) aspired
4. A serious problem can .... if you don't take things more seriously in your study.
   a) raise b) arise c) aside d) arouse
5. More than half the people means the .... of people.
   a) majority b) minority c) crew d) trend
6. There should be more laws to help .... our natural resources.
   a) damage b) reserve c) destroy d) preserve
7. Motor racing is really a .... game that attracts only adventure seekers.
   a) challenging b) simple c) fragile d) clear
8. To get some real .... from the exercise, you should continue for at least half an hour.
   a) harm b) injury c) benefit d) cure
9. Doctors believe that children abuse can lead to serious .... and emotional problems.
   a) physical b) psychological
   c) economic d) criminal
10. Up till now, there is no .... proof that life exists on other planets.
    a) negative b) doubtful c) positive d) valueless
11. Kamal is exactly .... as Nader.
    a) the same age b) old c) so old d) older
12. When we were children, our parents .... often take us to the children's theatres.
    a) are used to b) used to c) would d) should
13. After the trip, my brother was .... tired as my father.
    a) so b) almost as c) almost so d) slightly as
14. I liked the museum. It was .... more interesting than I expected.
    a) lot b) almost c) many d) far

15 This bag is .... than the other one.
a) slightly heavier
b) slightly heavy
c) almost heavy
d) as heavy

16 Tourists .... to dive in this area, but now they do.
a) used to come
b) didn't use to come
c) would come
d) came

17 You're driving too fast. Can you drive ....?
a) far slower
b) much slower
c) too slowly
d) a bit slowly

18 It's .... to learn a language in a country where it is spoken.
a) more easier
b) as easy
c) a lot easier
d) almost easiest

19 The dress is a lot .... than the shoes.
a) more expensive
b) much expensive
c) expensive
d) most expensive

20 Jeans .... in different colours, but now they do.
a) are used to coming
b) didn't use to come
c) used to come
d) used not coming

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

A robot is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions. The instructions come from a computer. It does not make mistakes. And it does not get tired. And it never complains. Unless you tell it to!

Robots are all around us. Some robots can help make cars. Some robots can help explore volcanoes. Some robots can help vacuum your house. Some robots can even recognise words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. Over 2,000 years ago, a famous poet imagined robots. The poet's name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They cleaned things and they made things. But they were not real. They were imaginary. Nobody was able to make a real robot. The first real robot was made in 1961. It was called Unimate. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a giant arm.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do. Or they will do things that we don't want to do. Or they will do things that are too dangerous for us. Robots will help us fight fires. They will help us fight wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us discover things. They will help make life better.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Why doesn't the robot make mistakes, get tired or complain?

a) Because it's made of plastic.

b) Because it can't speak.

c) Because it looks like a human.

d) Because it's a machine.

22 As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that something special is NOT ....

a) normal b) expensive c) perfect d) tired

23 What is the main purpose of paragraph 2?

a) To show how easy it is to make a robot.

b) To tell what a robot is.

c) To describe the things a robot can do.

d) To explain the difference between a robot and a machine.

24 Using the information in the passage as a guide, which of these gives the best use of a robot?

a) To help make a sandwich. b) To help explore Mars.

c) To help read a book. d) To help tie shoes.

25 The author of this passage feels that ....

a) robots are helpful

b) robots are not necessary in our life

c) robots cause a lot of problems

d) a world without robots is a safe one

26 According to the passage, the first real robot was made ....

a) in 2000 b) in 1969 c) 61 years ago d) 22 years ago

27 The robot doesn't object to anything, so it ....

a) can be destroyed easily b) is different from man

c) resembles man d) gets tired easily

28 As the robot does what man orders it, it ....

a) doesn't get tired

b) is rewarded by man

c) has the same features as man

d) can commit crimes

29 Translate into English:

3

- القراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا؛ لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء: إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا للأعصاب. يمكنها أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء والخلود إلى النوم بهدوء.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilised society.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"Why is the preservation of biodiversity on earth important?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 10

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. The CNN news station .... programmes around the world in many languages.
   a) consumes b) downloads c) broadcasts d) reports
2. My father got a position as an assistant .... at a new magazine.
   a) editor b) seller c) newsreader d) worker
3. Historians have not always .... about the exact date of Ramses II's coronation.
   a) accepted b) agreed c) expected d) explored
4. Yehia El-Fakhrany gave a/an .... performance as King Lear. All the audience like him.
   a) brilliant b) awful c) awkward d) terrible
5. Dr. Zewail went to America to complete his .... before settling there.
   a) affection b) education c) practice d) fiction
6. The .... with the new prime minister will be shown on tonight's news.
   a) interview b) criticism c) attack d) truce
7. There are many search .... in competition, but Google is the most popular.
   a) powers b) routes c) engines d) motors
8. During the war, the American writer Hemingway was employed as a newspaper .... in Paris.
   a) fighter b) advertiser c) announcer d) correspondent
9. My father believes that .... shopping is both cheap and convenient, so he buys most of his things from shopping websites.
   a) inline b) offline c) online d) outline
10. When my daughter apologised for her mistake, I felt a .... of regret in her voice.
    a) sound b) tone c) look d) song
11. We went to London last year, but we .... there two years earlier.
    a) had also been b) were being
    c) have also been d) would be
12. Although Kareem .... the test many times before, he was very nervous.
    a) has done b) had been doing
    c) was doing d) had done



13. Before I went to bed, I .... my friend.
    a) was phoning b) was phoned c) had phoned d) have phoned
14. She didn't sleep until she .... her homework.
    a) had done b) has done c) does d) will do
15. After she had passed her driving test, she .... a new car.
    a) had bought b) bought c) will buy d) is buying
16. As soon as it stopped raining, the match ....
    a) will start b) started c) had started d) has started
17. I .... you an email earlier this morning.
    a) sent b) 've sent c) had sent d) was sending
18. The boy .... photos after the police had left the scene.
    a) was taking b) had taken c) took d) was taken
19. I went to Belgium last month. I .... there. It's a beautiful country.
    a) had never been b) have never been
    c) never was d) never been
20. He knew that she had been crying as her eyes .... red.
    a) have been b) had been c) are d) were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Karl Benz invented the modern car in 1888 in Germany. Emile Roger worked for Benz in France. He made cars in France. By 1900, many people were building cars in France and in the U.S. The first company to build only cars was Panhard et Levassor in France. Panhard started in 1889. The Peugeot car company started in 1891 in France. In the US, Frank and Charles Duryea started the Duryea Motor Wagon Company in 1893. It was the first US car company. By 1902, Ransom E. Olds started the Olds Motor Vehicle Company. A year later, Henry Ford started the Ford Motor Company. It produced the Cadillac. All these early modern cars burned gasoline or diesel fuel. Ford opened factories in France and Britain in 1911. Then, they opened a factory in Denmark in 1923. Later, they opened a factory in Germany in 1925. Ford was one of the first manufacturers to use an assembly line. With an assembly line, factory workers could produce cars faster and safer than other production systems.

Most modern cars still burn gasoline or diesel fuel. These cars cause air pollution. They get the air dirty. Now many people are looking for cleaner cars. And many car companies are looking for cleaner fuels.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Which company first built only cars?

a) Benz. b) Ford.

c) Panhard. d) Duryea.

22 Fuel is ....

a) what makes cars move

b) a car production system

c) the price of a car

d) None of the above

23 What is an assembly line?

a) A way of making products.

b) A safe way of making products.

c) A quick way of making products.

d) All of the above.

24 The Ford Motor Company opened a ....

a) factory in Denmark in 1911

b) factory in Germany in 1925

c) factory in Britain in 1929

d) factory in France in 1931

25 The Peugeot car company started ....

a) in 1991 b) about 131 years ago

c) about 133 years ago d) in the 18th century

26 Whose idea was the assembly line?

a) Henry Ford's. b) Panhard's.

c) Frank and Charles'. d) Ransom's.

27 The cars causing pollution are those which ....

a) use nuclear energy

b) use electricity

c) use gasoline or diesel fuel

d) are used by children as toys

28 The word manufacturer is the same in meaning as a/an ....

a) machine b) consumer

c) explorer d) industrialist

29 Translate into English:

3

- تؤدى النزاعات والحروب إلى آثار نفسية كثيرة على الأطفال، من أهمها: فقدان الشعور بالأمان والخوف الدائم من المستقبل؛ لذلك علينا أن نتجنب الحروب بشتى السبل.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Young people should appreciate their elders' advice and consult. They went through a lot of situations in life so this advice is the outcome of their experience in life..

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

- To your friend Salim telling him about your new school in the United Arab Emirates and about making new friends when you moved there with your family. Your name is Adel.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on Unit 11

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Although they are old, Ismail Yassen's .... are still liked by many people.

a) fictions b) romances c) horrors d) comedies

2 My father doesn't like .... films saying that they can make people nervous.

a) horror b) historical c) comic d) romantic

3 Scientists designed systems to .... the energy of waves to produce electricity.

a) conclude b) include c) consume d) harness

4 The restaurant is extremely ...., owing to its high standard of food.

a) hateful b) detesting c) popular d) affecting

5 The small company did not .... the danger that was involved in the new project.

a) realise b) achieve c) recognise d) respire

6 The Nile passes through a rich variety of .... in some African countries.

a) site b) treasury c) audience d) scenery

7 The children read the novel in its simplified ....

a) type b) version c) episode d) animation

8 You must present .... proof of your admittance to the university.

a) correspondence b) copy

c) documentary d) competition

9 My cousin joined the .... of a large fishing boat as had always dreamed of working in the sea.

a) staff b) crew c) cast d) group

10 Saudi Arabia is Egypt's principal trading .... in the Arab world.

a) partner b) companion c) colleague d) consumer

11 Don't eat the whole chicken, ...?

a) will I b) won't you c) will you d) won't I

12 She likes classical music, ...?

a) isn't she b) did she c) does she d) doesn't she

13 They had a party last night, ...?

a) didn't they
b) weren't they
c) do they
d) hadn't they

14 I'm shorter than her, ...?

a) am I b) aren't I c) have I d) don't I

15 Which one is grammatically incorrect?

a) I'm really helpful, aren't I?
b) Stay here, won't you?
c) He rarely visits you, doesn't he?
d) Everybody is coming to the party, aren't they?

16 It's a pretty village, but there's .... anything to do here.

a) hardly b) bare c) hard d) nearly

17 We all love our teacher of English because he treats us ....

a) in a kind way b) kind c) kindly d) kindness

18 Kamal isn't a rash driver. He always drives ....

a) careful
b) carefully
c) in a careful way
d) care

19 My daughter is .... in English and wants to work as an interpreter.

a) the best fluent
b) more fluent
c) fluently
d) fluent

20 How .... can a sportsman run?

a) quick b) quicker c) quickly d) quickest

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8



Generally, rainforests are forests with high rainfall and a large number of different kinds of plants and animals. Human beings depend on rainforests in numerous ways but it would be wrong to suggest that they should be saved just because they are useful to humans.

Rainforests have been called the womb of life because they are home to 50 – 90% of the species on earth although tropical forests cover 12% of the land area of the Earth. It has been estimated that as a result of cutting down rainforest, at least 40 species are disappearing every day. No one knows just how the rest of the global ecosystems depend on rainforests, but we may find out in the next 30 to 50 years.

Rainforests are a vital source of medicine and at least 25% of all modern drugs came originally from rainforests. Rainforests offer a veritable bounty of foods. The Earth's climate is affected by rainforests. When trees are cut down and burnt or left to decompose, they release carbon dioxide into the air which is the main gas that causes global warming. Cutting down rainforests also changes the amount of rain that falls in an area. When rain falls on forests, the water is slowed down and absorbed by trees and plants. When they are taken away, the water flows quickly over the ground and this causes floods and erosion.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Many animals are disappearing from Earth because of ....

a) global warming b) cutting down rainforests
c) high rainfall and flood d) global ecosystems

22 The species mentioned in the passage are ....

a) plants and animals b) medicine and food
c) plants d) animals

23 The underlined word "they"' refers to ....

a) rain and water b) floods and erosion
c) absorbed water d) trees and plants

24 How does cutting down rainforests affect the earth's climate?

a) It leads to the increase of carbon dioxide.
b) It causes more earthquakes.
c) It increases the hurricanes.
d) It decreases air.

25 The underlined word "numerous" is similar in meaning to the word ....

a) similar b) different
c) many d) few

26 The best suitable title to the passage is "................".

a) The disappearing of animals and plants
b) Rainforests and man
c) The end of rainforests
d) The importance of rainforests



27 Cutting trees can be the cause of ....

a) many diseases
b) food shortage
c) floods and erosion
d) man's poverty

28 Besides being called the womb of life, rainforests provide humans with ....

a) food
b) medicine
c) water
d) air

29 **Translate into English:** 3

- لو استطاع كل فرد القيام بدوره على أكمل وجه لتقدمت مصر فى كل المجالات، ولأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم. من المؤكد أن تنمية البلاد لا تتحقق دون الجهد والصبر.

....
....
....
....
....

30 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

- Mass media - represented in television, the radio and the press - have a vital effect on everyone. They form the public opinion of any nation.

....
....
....
....
....

31 **Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:** 6

- To your friend Wafaa telling her about a reading competition on famous writers you are going to take part in and asking her for suggestions. Your name is Sara.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Test on Unit 12

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In order to succeed in your life, you must set .... and specific goals.
a) awful b) achievable c) hilarious d) imaginary

2 A/An .... is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.
a) entertainer b) designer c) entrepreneur d) consultant

3 Father says that we can't .... to go anywhere this summer because of his financial مالى problems.
a) produce b) afford c) attend d) apply

4 All members of the team are requested to .... this important meeting.
a) afford b) reject c) refuse d) attend

5 The businessman is a .... supporter of sports and he is the sponsor of some young athletes.
a) secret b) passionate c) specific d) heavy

6 There should be more laws to enhance environmental and wildlife .... in Egypt.
a) imagination b) convention c) conservation d) condensation

7 The chef of this famous restaurant keeps all his .... a secret.
a) prescriptions b) recipes c) directions d) observations

8 The .... of the famous artist's painting at the gallery asserted his talent.
a) show b) display c) present d) shape

9 My friend won the first prize in the art .... at the university.
a) compilation b) accommodation
c) consolidation d) competition

10 The young man is wanted by the police as a/an .... to murder.
a) accessory b) device c) equipment d) outfit

11 A student .... doesn't study hard enough cannot be successful.
a) which b) whom c) whose d) who

12 One should quit smoking, ... is very harmful to health.
a) which b) what c) who d) that

13 They have three sons, all of .... are living abroad.
a) who b) that c) whom d) whose

14 All the students .... to organise a picnic were discouraged when they saw the dark clouds.

a) wish b) wishing c) wished d) are wished

15 This is the restaurant .... I usually go for my meals.

a) to which b) which c) at which d) in which

16 The boys .... lives were rescued by the policemen are fine now.

a) who b) who's c) which d) whose

17 Confusing topics .... are well-expressed can be understood.

a) who b) that c) where d) when

18 The questions .... in the exam were specially chosen.

a) asking b) which asked c) asked d) that ask

19 Shakespeare, most of .... plays were adapted to the cinema, is still read by many.

a) whose b) his c) whom d) who

20 We stayed in a hotel ....

a) where every room had a broadband connection

b) which every room had a broadband connection

c) that every room had a broadband connection

d) every room had a broadband connection

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8



What is an ideal holiday for one person may be a very unpleasant one for another. The sportsman likes a kind of holiday which his lazy friend would find worse than his daily work; while the lazy man's ideal holiday would leave the sportsman quite unsatisfied. If I were allowed to choose my own holiday, I would go on a voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool.

Even if the sportsman and his lazy friend came with me, they would both be happy; one would have plenty of games and swimming; the other could sit in a comfortable chair all day, looking at the sea and drinking lemonade. On a ship, one can do as one likes, when one likes. If one day I find an interesting book in the ship's library, I can spend the whole day reading it, and nobody will stop me. Perhaps the next day I shall want some exercise. Well, then I can play games with passengers until I am hot and sweating and ready for a bath. I can go and sleep in my cabin at any time of the day or night, I can get cheap drinks during most of the day, and I can eat as I like, choosing among a variety of foods.

But perhaps the greatest pleasure of a sea holiday is coming to new ports in strange lands, and going ashore for a few hours to see strange places, eat strange foods and hear a strange language talked around us. Whenever I think of my ideal holiday, it is the picture of a mysterious foreign city that comes to my mind.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The utmost pleasure of a sea holiday is ....

a) coming to new harbours b) coming to new states
c) going shopping d) meeting people

22 The underlined word "one" refers to ....

a) the lazy man b) the passenger
d) anyone c) the sportsman

23 The best title to this text is "................".

a) Lazy people b) Sportsmen
c) A passenger ship d) An ideal holiday

24 One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage:

a) Coming to new ports in strange lands is an enjoyable moment.
b) A voyage in a modern passenger ship with a swimming pool would suit the sportsman and his lazy friend.
c) The writer seems to like the sea.
d) A voyage in a modern passenger ship would be noisy.

25 Activities on the ship are ....

a) the same b) similar
c) different d) boring

26 The writer seems to be .... concerning trying foods.

a) adventurous b) timid
c) selfish d) worried

27 The antonym of the word "unsatisfied" is ....

a) unhappy b) disappointed
c) contented d) unconvinced

28 The writer likes to be .... on a ship to enjoy his voyage.

a) in company b) alone
c) lonely d) single

29 Translate into English:

3

- تشتهر مصر بكثير من أماكن الجذب السياحى التى لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أغنى الدول. باستخدام العملة الصعبة من السياح القادمين لمصر يمكن أن نطور كافة المجالات الأخرى.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Opposing terrorism has been tried by many countries however, terrorists are still getting support from various organisations to achieve their goals. Facing it is a global duty.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"How can universities play a role in providing us with technological solutions for our problems?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Tests

Final Test 1

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. You can overcome all your difficulties with courage and ....
   a) appearance b) determination
   c) avoidance d) facilitation
2. The children needed their parents in the race to offer words of ....
   a) discouragement b) persistence
   c) collision d) encouragement
3. Over 120 .... of birds have been recorded in the city's National Park.
   a) devices b) species c) spices d) genders
4. The army leaders met for the .... purpose of preserving the ceasefire.
   a) relevant b) hilarious c) timing d) specific
5. He won the first prize in the writing .... because he has a real talent.
   a) comparison b) competition
   c) culture d) conversation
6. The big rate of .... of online shopping hasn't been expected by even the most ambitious producers.
   a) reduction b) exploration c) expansion d) condensation
7. Planning a wedding party for over 1000 guests will be a very .... job.
   a) challenging b) changing c) affecting d) valueless
8. The sports channel will be .... the match live from Rome.
   a) rehearsing b) planning c) producing d) broadcasting
9. TOY STORY 1 is the first cartoon film to be made using computer ....
   a) horror b) romantic c) animation d) musical
10. Helping homeless African people is one of Bill Gates's .... in life.
    a) missiles b) missions c) businesses d) firms
11. He often helps other people. I .... he is a good man.
    a) think b) am thinking
    c) have been thinking d) had been thinking
12. Next April, Hany and Ola .... for 20 years.
    a) are going to marry b) will have been being married
    c) will marry d) will have been married

13. The kilo of cotton is exactly the same weight .... the kilo of meat.
    a) from b) than c) as d) to
14. Hadeer .... very sick until she stopped eating junk food.
    a) has been b) had been c) was being d) is
15. Which one of the following is grammatically correct?
    a) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, isn't he?
    b) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, mustn't he?
    c) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, needn't he?
    d) He must be mistaken if he believes in magic, can't he?
16. The bed .... has no mattress.
    a) I sleep on b) I sleep on it
    c) which I sleep on it d) on which I sleep on
17. The children .... in the classroom. They are sitting quietly.
    a) are teaching b) have been taught
    c) are being taught d) were taught
18. Well done, Hamdy! .... a clever boy!
    a) Who b) Which c) How d) What
19. He did .... me if I had met my classmates at the party.
    a) to ask b) ask c) asked d) asking
20. We .... better begin work now if we want to finish it in due time.
    a) would b) should c) had d) have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Alternative medicine is not new. It is accepted that it pre-dates conventional medicine and it is still used by many people all over the world. I am unconvinced that it is dangerous, and feel that both alternative and conventional medicine can be useful.

There are several reasons why the conventional medical community is often dismissive of alternatives. Firstly, there has been little scientific research into such medicine, so there is a scarcity of evidence to support the claims of their supporters. Furthermore, people often try such treatment because of recommendations from friends, and therefore come to the therapist with a very positive attitude, which may be part of the reason for the cure. Moreover, these therapies are usually only useful for long-term, chronic conditions. Acute medical problems, such as accidental injury, often require more conventional methods.

On the other hand, there remain strong arguments for the use of alternatives. Despite the lack of scientific proof, there is a lot of anecdotal evidence to suggest that these therapies work. In addition, far from being dangerous, they often have few or no side effects, so the worst outcome

would be no change. One of the strongest arguments for the effectiveness of alternative therapies in the West is that, whilst conventional medicine is available without charge, many people are prepared to pay considerable sums for alternatives. If they were totally unhelpful, it would be surprising if this continued.

I strongly believe that conventional medicine and alternative therapies can and should coexist. They have different strengths, and can both be used effectively to target particular medical problems. The best situation would be for alternative therapies to be used to support and complement conventional medicine.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 People who approve of alternative medicine don't ....
- **a)** have enough evidence that it's better than conventional medicine
- **b)** know what conventional medicine is
- **c)** like people who approve of conventional medicine
- **d)** use it unless doctors recommend it

22 Which one of the following is TRUE?
- **a)** Conventional medicine preceded alternative medicine.
- **b)** Scientific research concentrated much on alternative medicine.
- **c)** Alternative medicine is useful for long-term illnesses.
- **d)** Conventional medicine has no side effects.

23 Which one of the following gives the synonym of the word "positive"?
a) Optimistic. **b)** Negative. **c)** Uncertain. **d)** Useless.

24 The writer of the article thinks that ....
- **a)** conventional medicine is better than alternative medicine
- **b)** alternative medicine is better than conventional medicine
- **c)** alternative medicine and conventional medicine can both be used effectively
- **d)** It is dangerous to use alternative medicine

25 The best title for the passage is "................".
- **a)** Alternative medicine and conventional medicine
- **b)** People who are in favour of alternative medicine
- **c)** People who are in favour of conventional medicine
- **d)** The dangers of conventional medicine

26 Doctors don't recommend alternative medicine because ....
- **a)** it has many disadvantages and affects health badly
- **b)** it is very expensive
- **c)** they don't have enough evidence of its benefit
- **d)** it has a lot of side effects and is very dangerous



27 Alternative medicine isn't useful for acute medical problems because ....
a) such problems need urgent treatment
b) alternative medicine doesn't have effective elements
c) alternative medicine costs much money
d) alternative medicine can't be found at hospitals

28 Which one of the following gives the antonym of the word "coexist"?
a) To live together. b) To live and let live.
c) To depart and leave each other. d) To collaborate.

29 **Translate into English:** 3

- تجاوزت آثار كوفيد-١٩ المجال الصحى إلى مجالات أخرى عديدة أهمها المجال الاقتصادى. يعتقد الكثيرون أنه ربما أحدث نظامًا عالميًا جديدًا قد يمتد لسنوات عديدة قادمة.

....

....

....

30 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

- With the news of vaccines for COVID-19, there are now hopes for humanity to get over this pandemic. But, will they be effective against the new species of the virus?

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:** 6

"Many people depend on social media for their trusted source of news" Do you agree? State your opinion.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 2

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. A lot of people with disabilities are trained to be .... and self-caring.
   a) dependent b) nosy c) independent d) facilitated
2. One of the .... tasks of teachers is making sure that all students understand.
   a) challenging b) changing c) negative d) affecting
3. The native .... of America, the Red Indians, are only 1.5% of Americans.
   a) pioneers b) discoverers c) inhabitants d) players
4. Do you have any experience that is .... to this baby-sitting job?
   a) unaccepted b) achievable c) relevant d) unreliable
5. It is believed that being a/an .... is a way of fulfilling your creative potential and earning money.
   a) entrepreneur b) employee c) trainee d) servant
6. The school offered students prizes of money and other .... for their good work.
   a) enrichment b) encouragements
   c) contracts d) efforts
7. Does the company offer any .... for employees with young children such as a nursery?
   a) abilities b) talents c) facilities d) probabilities
8. In 1910, a/an .... was sent to Antarctica led by Captain Scott.
   a) picnic b) flock c) expansion d) expedition
9. The WHO experts have been unable to trace the .... of COVID-19 up till now.
   a) reality b) source c) consequence d) purpose
10. Giving your kids too much freedom can be a .... for disaster.
    a) prescription b) receipt c) recipe d) treaty
11. Is that Bassem over there? He .... old and tired. Is he sick?
    a) looks b) has looked
    c) looked d) has been looking
12. **A:** Can I come over in an hour? **B:** No, I .... the house.
    a) will clean b) will have cleaned
    c) clean d) will be cleaning
13. The game "Matrix II" was .... as interesting as "Matrix I".
    a) exactly b) slightly c) almost d) more



14 They .... a lot of trouble before they finally succeeded.
a) were having b) had had c) have d) have had

15 I find this novel very .... It was well written.
a) interest b) interested c) interesting d) interestingly

16 The car that we were in had had GPS, but the man .... was driving didn't know.
a) whom b) who c) whose d) what

17 During my illness, I .... the medicine every morning and evening.
a) was given b) had been given
c) was giving d) gave

18 Science fiction novels are .... most children enjoy reading.
a) where b) who c) which d) what

19 The coach was .... with the team's performance.
a) being disappointed b) disappoint
c) disappointed d) disappointing

20 The students .... their exam results next week.
a) will be given b) are given
c) will have been given d) may give

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Litterbugs are people who love to litter around. Litterbugs are also who do not take the responsibility or to play their role in the society to take care of the environment. Why are they litterbugs? Litterbugs are the persons who had lack of awareness, not bothered about the environment and too lazy just to walk a few steps to the trash can. What are the effects of litterbugs? One of the major effect is it will destroy the image of our beautiful country which eventually affects the tourism of our country.



Are you a litterbug? Do you chew gum in the streets? Do you eat on the metro? Have you ever painted graffiti on walls? Are you a jaywalker? If you answered 'yes' to any of these questions, then be careful when you visit Singapore. There's a chance to be stopped and heavily fined! But if you like clean and safe streets, then Singapore could be the perfect destination for your next holiday. Singapore is one of the world's richest cities. It is almost crime-free and spotless, steel skyscrapers, shopping malls, top fashion houses, colourful local markets, discount shops for bargain-hunters, even air-conditioned walkways are all part of the magic of Singapore.

The majority of Singaporeans are of Chinese origin, but there are ethnic groups from India, Malaysia, Indonesia and Thailand living there. It is not surprising that the island has many interesting districts. Calligraphers and fortunetellers can be found in Chinatown. Little India has spices, silverware, brassware and jasmine garlands. Malay villages display the traditional lifestyle of Malays and their arts and crafts such as batik painting and kite-making.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Most Singaporeans are of .... origin.

a) Indian b) Thai
c) Chinese d) European

22 Singapore is almost ....

a) crime-free b) tax-free
c) free d) shop-free

23 The law in Singapore fines those who ....

a) like clean and safe streets b) throw garbage in the streets
c) visit the country d) speak loudly to each other

24 The underlined words "the island" refer to ....

a) India b) Malaysia
c) Chinese d) Singapore

25 Those who don't take care of the environment are ....

a) responsible b) litterbugs
c) crime-free d) fortunetellers

26 The writer of this article wants people to ....

a) take care of the environment
b) have trashcans in their homes
c) leave their rubbish in the street
d) be litterbugs

27 The synonym of the word "origin" is ....

a) ending point b) people
c) source d) population

28 Chewing gums in the streets is .... in Singapore.

a) allowed b) permitted
c) prohibited d) preferable

29 Translate into English:

3

- يتطلب الحفاظ على البيئة جهودا دولية كبيرة يتم تنظيمها عن طريق الأمم المتحدة، وذلك لأهمية تعاون الدول المتقدمة صناعيًا فى خفض انبعاثات الكربون للحفاظ على الكوكب.

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Hosting the World Handball Men's Championship during the corona pandemic showed the greatness of Egypt. It also paved the way for other sports international competitions.

....

....

....

....

31 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

- You write to your Saudi Arabian friend telling him about an important transport project taking place in Egypt nowadays. Your name is Mostafa and your email address is: mostafa005@yahoo.com. Your friend is Fahd and his email address is: fahd300@gmail.com

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 3

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1 The company sent a driver to pick me .... from the airport at my arrival.
a) up b) on c) away d) for

2 Mr. Essam has managed to .... his young good looks through a healthy lifestyle.
a) damage b) pollute c) comply d) preserve

3 The new computer company set reasonable and .... goals for their first year.
a) awful b) achievable c) hilarious d) imaginary

4 A/An .... is a person who makes money by starting or running businesses, especially when this involves taking financial risks.
a) entertainer b) designer c) entrepreneur d) consultant

5 The film "*Jurassic Park*" is .... from a Michael Crichton novel of the same name.
a) attributed b) adapted c) applied d) inhibited

6 As a result of the hard economic situation, there was a decrease in car sales .... this year.
a) modules b) losses c) profits d) branches

7 You would be the first to .... that she is very difficult to work with.
a) prohibit b) admit c) exhibit d) inhabit

8 The methods the Ministry of Education use to test secondary school students are very ....
a) high-tech b) outdated c) recent d) old-fashioned

9 The Ministry of Monuments works to .... our most precious historic buildings.
a) damage b) preserve c) waste d) harness

10 The new machine must have its own .... power supply.
a) dependent b) intended c) independent d) prohibited

11 Samah and Farah .... funny right now. They keep telling me funny jokes.
a) were b) are c) are being d) had been

12 By the end of the week, we .... 30 new English words.
a) will have learned b) will be learning
c) will be learned d) are learning



13 My brother has a .... softer voice than anyone in the class.

a) slight
b) more
c) farther
d) slightly

14 Magdy .... that car for 5 years before he sold it.

a) had been owning
b) had owned
c) was owning
d) owns

15 She was in grade 3 last year, ... she?

a) weren't
b) won't
c) didn't
d) wasn't

16 This is the story of a man .... wife suddenly loses her memory.

a) who
b) that
c) whose
d) whom

17 Industrial goods are often produced .... in developing countries.

a) cheapest
b) cheaply
c) cheap
d) more cheap

18 What a state my shoes are in! ....

a) They need repairing
b) They need to repair
c) It needs repair
d) It needs to be repaired

19 .... was it that you realised you had lost your keys?

a) Who
b) What
c) Which
d) When

20 I don't think that Hany has .... travelled on a plane.

a) before
b) still
c) ever
d) never

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Dreams have interested, puzzled, and even frightened people. They thought that dreams always came true, and that they came from something outside the person dreaming.



Since the end of the 19th century, physicians, psychologists and other scientists have been studying dreams. Although they still have much to learn, they think that dreams are created by the dreamer granted, or in which they become somebody they would like to be. These are wish-fulfilling dreams; they occasionally dream they are being chased by robbers, or are in danger from fire or flood. These frightening dreams are called nightmares. People usually have nightmares when they are upset about something.

Studies about the causes of dreams show many reasons. For example, changes in the brain occur during sleep, and these are probably related to dreaming. But no one knows enough yet about the brain changes in dreaming to say exactly what they are. A dreamer's health affects his dreams. A person who is ill will have different kinds of dreams from those of one who is well. If a person is hungry, or cold, or tired, his dreams may include these feelings. In addition, a large part of any dream comes from the events of the day before. Often the person or situations in a night dream are those the dreamer met during the day. The feelings of happiness or disappointment which came out in dreams were probably in the dreamer before. All that dream does is to give them an outlet.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Changes in the brain take place ....

a) by day b) at night c) during sleep d) during meals

22 .... is a terrible dream.

a) A day-dream b) A nightmare

c) A dreamer d) Dreamland

23 The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a) dreams b) dreamers c) nightmares d) feelings

24 We have been studying dreams for ....

a) more than a century b) 300 years

c) centuries d) 50 years

25 Which one of the following doesn't give the meaning of "upset"?

a) Worried. b) Sad. c) Unhappy. d) Optimistic.

26 The person's dreams are affected by ....

a) culture b) wealth c) health d) education

27 Which of the following aren't concerned to study dreams?

a) Physicians. b) Politicians.

c) Scientists. d) Psychologists.

28 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) Dreams and their effect

b) Nightmares

c) People who study dreams

d) The consequences of dreams

29 Translate into English:

3

- تولى الحكومة اهتماما كبيرًا للشباب عن طريق إعطائهم قروضا بفوائد ميسرة لتنفيذ مشروعاتهم الصغيرة والمتوسطة. بتلك الطريقة تساعدهم على أن يصبحوا رواد أعمال يساهمون فى التطور الاقتصادى لبلدهم.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Egypt's big transport projects will be a tremendous progress in the Arab world. They will move us to the future generation of environmentally-friendly means of transport.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"A review of a film you watched and liked much"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 4

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. One of the challenges of travelling abroad is that you must .... used to a different culture.
   a) grow b) get c) fall d) turn
2. There was much .... of online shopping sites during COVID-19 pandemic.
   a) damage b) application c) expansion d) pressure
3. The young athlete was awarded a .... to study at Boston University and play for its team.
   a) race b) fair c) scholarship d) tournament
4. Investors have made a 14% .... in just 3 months which was a great success.
   a) profit b) loss c) charity d) list
5. The BBC News hires a big team of .... in most countries of the world to cover the incidents.
   a) producers b) fans c) reporters d) consumers
6. The hard-working secretary was liked both by her .... and her bosses at the company.
   a) classmates b) colleagues c) partners d) interviewees
7. I didn't read the .... carefully, so that my children didn't like the pizza I cooked.
   a) prescription b) receipt c) article d) recipe
8. With the rising prices, many families have been .... to pay their bills.
   a) struggling b) delighting c) surprising d) copying
9. The National Bank has an information .... linked to more than 50 branches.
   a) route b) network c) skyline d) access
10. Because of the bad weather, the controllers were unable to make an accurate .... of the ship's position.
    a) prohibition b) consumption
    c)determination d) courage
11. They don't get on well. They ....
    a) argue b) 're always arguing
    c) arguing d) never argue

12. This time next week, I .... the final match in Spain.
    a) will watch b) will have watched
    c) will be watching d) watch
13. Your house is .... more beautiful than mine.
    a) bit b) far c) little d) almost
14. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody .... to bed.
    a) was going b) have gone c) had gone d) went
15. This is a .... report.
    a) monthly way b) per month c) month d) monthly
16. Salma came to the party in patched jeans, which surprised the guests, most of .... were wearing evening dress.
    a) that b) them c) whom d) who
17. Ola drives .... than her sister.
    a) careless b) carelessly c) more careless d) more carelessly
18. It's time you .... a visit to your grandparents.
    a) will pay b) paid c) should pay d) pay
19. My sister .... the doctor later today about her stomachache.
    a) sees b) has seen c) was seeing d) is seeing
20. Tim is my closest friend - we .... each other for a long time.
    a) were knowing b) knew
    c) have known d) have been knowing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The earliest lighthouses were simply bonfires built on hillsides to guide ships. The first lighthouse, located on the ancient island of Pharos, served the old-world city of Alexandria in 285 BC.

Of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World, the Lighthouse of Alexandria was the only one that had a practical function in addition to its architectural elegance. For sailors, it ensured a safe return to the Great Harbour. For architects, it was the tallest building on earth at its time.

And for scientists, it was the mysterious mirror that fascinated them most. The reflection of the sun's rays could be seen more than 50 kilometres offshore. Legend has it that the mirror was also used to detect and burn enemy ships before they could reach the shore.

Shortly after the death of Alexander the Great, his commander Ptolemy Soter assumed power and established his capital in Alexandria. Off the city's coast lay the small island of Pharos. Due to the dangerous sailing conditions, the construction of a lighthouse was seen as being necessary.

For centuries, the Lighthouse of Alexandria was used to mark the harbour, using fire at night and reflecting the sun's rays during the day. It was even shown on Roman coins, just as famous monuments are depicted on currency today.

Although the Lighthouse of Alexandria did not survive to this present day, it left behind its influence. From an architectural standpoint, the monument has been used as a model for many prototypes along the Mediterranean.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The lighthouse has a great importance for ....
a) sailors, architects and scientists. b) astronomers
c) psychologists d) Romans and ancient Egyptians

22 The antonym of the word "construction" is ....
a) erection b) manufacture
c) structure d) destruction

23 The old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events is ....
a) wonder b) lighthouse c) legend d) mystery

24 The first lighthouse was built in ....
a) England b) Egypt c) Asia d) India

25 What is the best title for the passage?
a) The lighthouse, as one of the wonders.
b) Alexander the Great and the lighthouse.
c) The effect of the lighthouse at present.
d) The world's interest in the lighthouse.

26 What was the Lighthouse of Alexandria used for?
a) Marking the harbour.
b) Using fire at night.
c) Reflecting the sun's rays during the day.
d) All of these.

27 Which of the following didn't have an interest in the old lighthouse?
a) Sailors. b) Architects.
c) Shopkeepers. d) Scientists.

28 The synonym of the word "established" is ....
a) close down b) founded
c) demolished d) set off

29 Translate into English:

3

- تحاول الحكومة تطوير القرى المصرية بتوفير التسهيلات الضرورية للوصول بالريف المصرى إلى مستوى معيشى لائق. لهذا أطلقت مبادرة القرن الحادى والعشرين «حياة كريمة» للشعب.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- The Ministry of Education has an ambitious plan to establish a large number of new technical schools to cope with the latest technological advance in the world.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"Spreading the culture of volunteering and donation can help solve our social problems."

....

....

....

....

....

....

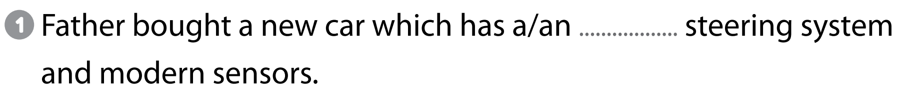
....

....

....

....

....

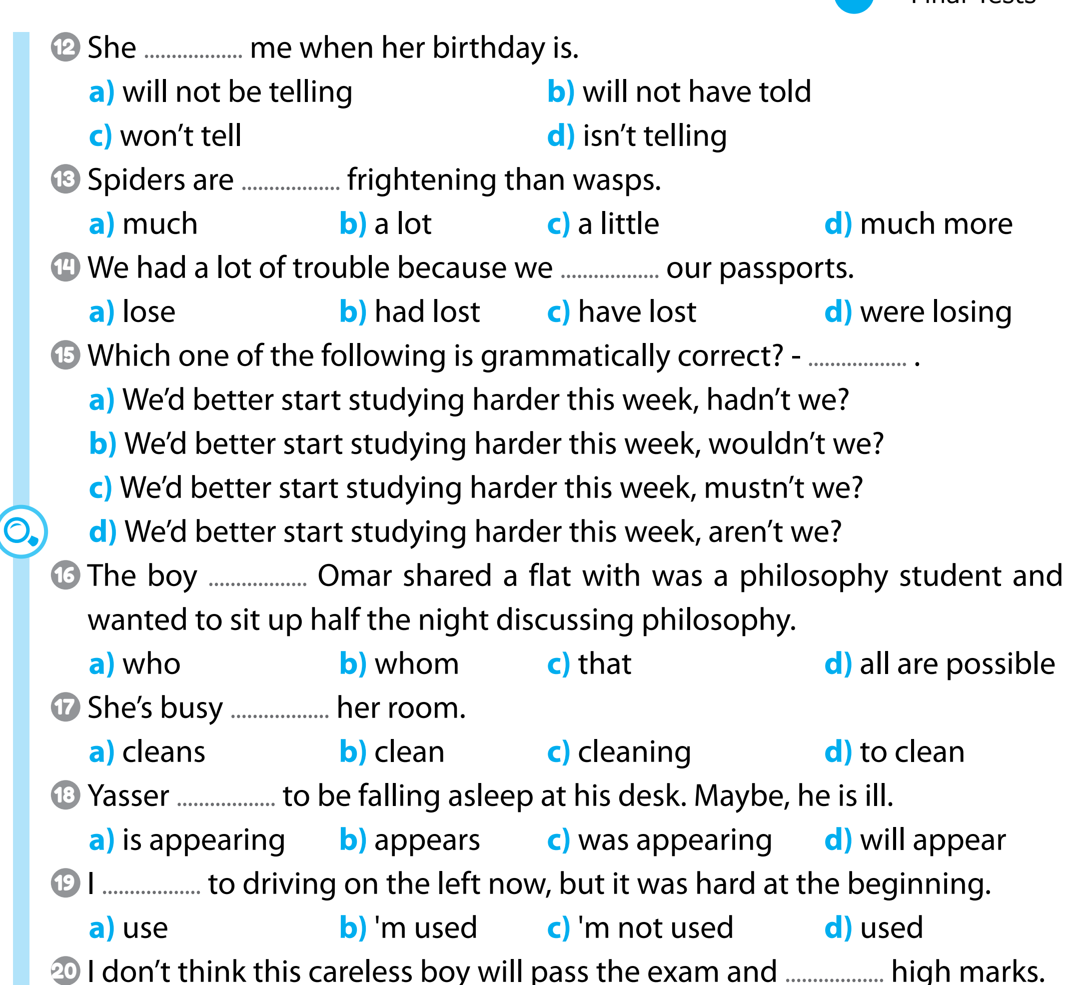


40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. Father bought a new car which has a/an .... steering system and modern sensors.
   a) outdated b) degraded c) old-fashioned d) high-tech
2. The steep road was .... for even the most experienced drivers.
   a) changing b) reflecting c) challenging d) associating
3. The islands near the Caribbean are characterised by high .... and so, they attract tourists.
   a) activity b) climate c) biodiversity d) similarity
4. The Egyptian Ful Medams is based on an ancient Egyptian .... thousands of years old.
   a) prescription b) study c) research d) recipe
5. The young scholar obtained a .... to get her PhD at Oxford University.
   a) scholarship b) championship
   c) hardship d) friendship
6. The young man's salary enabled him to become economically .... of his family.
   a) available b) dependable c) reusable d) independent
7. The brave soldier was shot down during a .... behind enemy lines.
   a) picnic b) fiction c) mission d) ride
8. It is a good idea to .... some of your free time to charity work.
   a) request b) perplex c) retrieve d) donate
9. There are several reasons for the .... political situation in Yemen.
   a) wave b) drought c) current d) imaginary
10. It is better to deal with some problems at .... or they will get more difficult.
    a) purpose b) source c) site d) location
11. The girl is watering the plants ....
    a) right now b) every day c) since 2 o'clock d) next year



12. She .... me when her birthday is.
    a) will not be telling b) will not have told
    c) won't tell d) isn't telling
13. Spiders are .... frightening than wasps.
    a) much b) a lot c) a little d) much more
14. We had a lot of trouble because we .... our passports.
    a) lose b) had lost c) have lost d) were losing
15. Which one of the following is grammatically correct? - ....
    a) We'd better start studying harder this week, hadn't we?
    b) We'd better start studying harder this week, wouldn't we?
    c) We'd better start studying harder this week, mustn't we?
    d) We'd better start studying harder this week, aren't we?
16. The boy .... Omar shared a flat with was a philosophy student and wanted to sit up half the night discussing philosophy.
    a) who b) whom c) that d) all are possible
17. She's busy .... her room.
    a) cleans b) clean c) cleaning d) to clean
18. Yasser .... to be falling asleep at his desk. Maybe, he is ill.
    a) is appearing b) appears c) was appearing d) will appear
19. I .... to driving on the left now, but it was hard at the beginning.
    a) use b) 'm used c) 'm not used d) used
20. I don't think this careless boy will pass the exam and .... high marks.
    a) gets b) got c) get d) getting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The honeybee is a very unusual kind of insect. Unlike other insects, which live alone, the honeybee lives as a member of a community. These bees live together in what is known as a bee colony.

The head of the colony is called the queen bee. She is larger than the rest of the bees. Her main task in the colony is to lay eggs. Most of the other bees are the worker bees. These bees collect nectar and pollen from flowers. The nectar that is carried by the worker bees is deposited on the hive and then converted into honey. The worker bees also help look after the young bees. As soon as the eggs are hatched, the worker bees feed the young bees with pollen and nectar. The third type of bee found in the colony is the drone or male bee. The main task of such a bee is to mate with a new queen.

The queen bee has a lifespan of about three years. During this period, she would have laid more than half a million eggs. When the queen bee is dying, a new queen would be groomed. This new queen would eventually take over the 'duties' of the old queen when the latter dies.

Bees are small but they play a big role in the ecosystem. They play an important role as a pollinator for crops. It is vital for food security of human beings. Hence we must control our activities and help protect honeybees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The thing that distinguishes the honeybee from other insects is that ....

a) its sting is stronger and deadly
b) it can't live apart from its community
c) it can live alone
d) it can't live among trees and flowers

22 The main mission of the queen bee in the colony is to ....

a) look after the young bees
b) collect nectar and pollen
c) kill the worker bees
d) lay eggs

23 The life of honeybees can teach us ....

a) co-operation
b) how to live among trees
c) selfishness
d) laziness

24 The word "latter" is the antonym of the word "................".

a) last
b) second
c) former
d) next

25 The synonym of the word "look after" is ....

a) care about
b) turn off
c) take over
d) give off

26 What is the best title for the passage?

a) How honey is formed
b) Honeybees' life
c) Bees and other insects
d) Bees and our ecosystem

27 Bees help the crops to ....

a) disappear
b) grow
c) decrease
d) reproduce

28 When the queen bee dies, ...

a) the rest stay without a queen
b) the other bees will be sad and cry
c) another one takes over
d) there aren't any more nectar

29 Translate into English:

3

- إن الجدل والخلاف بين أفراد المجتمع يؤديان إلى تدهور جميع مجالات الحياة. أما التفاهم والتعاون فيؤديان حتمًا إلى التنمية والتقدم؛ لذلك لابد من توعية أفراد المجتمع بأهميتهما لمستقبل أفضل.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Everyone of us should have a hobby within his or her means. Otherwise, life loses its charm, and becomes one long labour from beginning to end.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"Hosting international sports competitions and conferences is a good way to encourage tourists to visit Egypt."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 6

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. There are four mobile phone .... competing in Egypt at the present time.
   a) lines b) networks c) disciplines d) authorities
2. The company director will have .... candidates for the job by tomorrow.
   a) offered b) tested c) searched d) interviewed
3. The central bank is responsible for .... interest rates in all national banks.
   a) cutting b) setting c) preventing d) destroying
4. Ahmed Helmy's last .... didn't make a great success although many people thought it was funny.
   a) fiction b) romance c) horror d) comedy
5. The economic reform plan has a lot of public .... in the country.
   a) report b) support c) export d) rapport
6. The UN biodiversity plan provided measures to protect endangered .... of plants and animals and protect the ozone layer.
   a) recipients b) recipes c) spices d) species
7. It's very important that parents .... the right school for a child with learning difficulties.
   a) select b) deny c) deploy d) purchase
8. There are animated .... of many of the famous novels so that children can learn about literature.
   a) views b) visions c) versions d) factions
9. You don't need any previous .... to work as a kitchen steward.
   a) experience b) experiment c) expert d) export
10. I always tell my sister that she doesn't have to .... my news to the whole world!
    a) cast b) broadcast c) film d) shoot
11. My boss .... so rude today. He has shouted at all of us.
    a) is being b) was c) is d) will be
12. My sister is on a world tour. By the end of the year, she .... more than 40 countries.
    a) will be visiting b) will have visited
    c) will have been visiting d) is visiting

13 Students .... rubbish in the school grounds, but now they keep the school grounds clean.
a) were leaving b) leave
c) used to leave d) didn't use to leave

14 They .... English before they moved to the USA.
a) had studied b) have studied
c) study d) were studying

15 Mostafa doesn't take risks when he's driving. He drives ....
a) care b) careful c) too careful d) carefully

16 She climbed to the top of the monument to see the wonderful view .... she had been told about.
a) when b) that c) what d) where

17 I've never seen such a .... film in my whole life.
a) terrify b) terrified c) terrifying d) more terrified

18 When I got home, I .... that somebody had broken into my flat.
a) discover b) have discovered
c) had discovered d) discovered

19 I thought there was some coffee in the cupboard, but there's .... there.
a) none b) some c) any d) many

20 I used to play badminton .... I was younger.
a) since b) when c) while d) during



Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8



It is evident that, at present, people are spending a considerable amount of time on the Internet, and thus spending less time with real people. I strongly agree that although this use of the Internet has greatly increased the level of available communication, it has also had detrimental effects on the amount and type of social interaction that takes place.

The benefits of the Internet in terms of increased communication are clear, with people connected across the globe. In the past, communication was only possible by phone or mail, which entailed time and expense. It also usually meant just keeping in contact with those people already known to you. With the internet, this has changed dramatically. Email and social networking sites such as Facebook and MSN have created online communities that are global in scale, and they have fostered communication between people and countries that we would not have thought possible in the not-too-distant past.

People, especially the younger generation, spend hours of their time online, chatting and on forums. Although this can be beneficial, it is certainly not the same as real interaction with human beings and does not involve the same skills. It is important that children have and maintain real friendships in order to develop their own interpersonal skills. Not only this, it can also have negative effects on local communities if people are spending most of their time communicating online and not mixing in their neighbourhoods, and possibly lead to feelings of isolation for those individuals who do not have a 'real' person to turn to in times of need.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 The internet is a means of communication ....
a) globally b) nationally c) locally d) personally

22 Which one of the following is TRUE?
a) The internet friends are more useful than real friends.
b) Young people avoid spending much time on the internet.
d) The internet is cheaper than the older means of communication.
e) The internet helps us to develop our own interpersonal skills.

23 One word of the following gives the antonym of the word "beneficial": ....
a) harmful b) useful c) helpful d) constructive

24 Spending most of the time online and not mixing with real people may lead to ....
a) success in life b) feeling of isolation
c) avoiding bad people d) saving much money

25 Communication in the past used ....
a) MSN b) the internet
c) the phone and letters d) online means

26 People should use the internet ....
a) excessively b) day and night
c) at work only d) sensibly

27 Our friends on the internet are ....
a) real b) virtual c) effective d) hackers

28 The more we use the internet, ...
a) the less we visit our relatives and friends
b) the more we visit our relatives and friends
c) the more we have true and real friends
d) the less we know about the world

29 Translate into English:

3

- ما زالت الحكومة تحاول توفير المناخ المشجع لرجال الأعمال المصريين والعرب لاستثمار أموالهم فى المشروعات التنموية الكبيرة لخلق فرص عمل وحل بعض المشكلات الاقتصادية.

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Reading romantic stories makes us forget about our worries and troubles. They take us to the world of imagination, dreams and thinking. That's why I always prefer to buy novels.

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"What do you think the most important scientific discovery or invention of the last 50 years is?"

Final Test 7

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. Unfortunately, ... libraries don't attract a lot of readers nowadays. Most people read electronic books.
   a) public b) special c) accepted d) awful
2. The government has a plan to stop the .... of live animals to prevent diseases.
   a) security b) computer c) transport d) education
3. The press room was a valuable .... of information for journalists during the championship.
   a) source b) result c) effect d) doubt
4. Many young people are keen on .... movies such as vampire and Zombie stories.
   a) horror b) historical c) comic d) romantic
5. The bank clerk was accused of selling business .... to competitors and he was dismissed.
   a) secrets b) achievements c) talents d) products
6. Because the salary for this job wasn't ...., I didn't accept the offer.
   a) awful b) horrible c) satisfactory d) unsuitable
7. I often wonder what technological devices future .... will have in addition to the present ones.
   a) inventions b) developments
   c) generations d) discoverers
8. Father says that our old car is becoming very .... as it breaks down more often.
   a) reliable b) trusty c) acceptable d) unreliable
9. Mona and I were chosen for the new jobs .... the same time.
   a) in b) for c) at d) by
10. The new engineers will work at the company's manufacturing .... in 6th October City.
    a) ability b) facility c) asset d) outfit
11. Don't talk to me now. I .... to the radio.
    a) listen b) am listening c) have listened d) listened
12. I'm sure that your English .... by the end of the school year.
    a) will have improved b) will be improving
    c) improves d) has improved

13 He .... walk along the beach every evening before bed.
a) uses to b) didn't used to
c) would d) all are possible

14 Salah knew many people at the club because he .... there many times.
a) has been b) would go c) was being d) had been

15 Which one of the following is grammatically correct?
a) There's a fly in your soup, is there?
b) There's a fly in your soup, isn't it?
c) There's a fly in your soup, isn't there?
d) There's a fly in your soup, hasn't it?

16 I did .... I could, which wasn't much.
a) when b) who c) which d) what

17 Which artist was this portrait painted ....?
a) for b) with c) by d) from

18 She doesn't mind walking to work. She .... to it.
a) isn't used b) is used c) used d) uses

19 She's been ill for some time, but she's beginning to feel .... again.
a) strongly b) strongest c) strong d) more strong

20 Recent events prove the saying that twenty-four hours .... a long time in politics.
a) is b) has c) are d) have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

Today, English is used widely. It has become the most popular language of communication between countries and in many fields of human endeavour. So, it is important that we learn to use English. Otherwise, we will be at a disadvantage.

The only effective way of improving my English is to use it, as often as possible.

In school, the only time when English is used is during English lessons. That certainly is not enough. So wherever possible I speak English with some friends and teachers who will or can speak English with me.

Reading books, magazines and newspapers are good ways of improving my English. On the whole they are grammatically correct. We may speak incorrect English and get away with it. Not so with printed words, they have to be correct. Through reading, I learned how to use correct English in writing and speaking, though at times I still speak the broken English that many of us speak here.

Watching television and listening to the radio are two more ways of improving my English. English as it is spoken by the English, Americans and others is distinctly different.

So I continue to use English, that is, hear, read, speak and write it. Some of my friends only hear and read it. They can hardly speak or write it, but I will not be like them. I will try my best to master it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 According to the passage, neglecting the English language is ....

a) positive
b) advantage
c) strength
d) drawback

22 As it is a world-wide language, learning English is a/an ....

a) necessary
b) option
c) must
d) disadvantage

23 .... English is the most effective way to improve it.

a) Writing
b) Using
c) Reading
d) Listening

24 The writer's only way to speak English is ....

a) practising it at school with teachers and friends
b) practising it at home with parents and brothers
c) practising it at the club with other members
d) practising it at the shops with foreign customers

25 Books, magazines and newspapers give ....

a) fluent English
b) correct pronunciation
c) correct English
d) bad English

26 According to the writer's opinion, many students speak ....

a) fluent English
b) broken English
c) British English
d) good English

27 We can improve our English through ....

a) reading books and magazines
b) watching TV and listening to the radio
c) speaking with others
d) all of these

28 The expression "get away with" means ....

a) doing something bad and escape punishment
b) passing something after doing it well
c) running out after being punished
d) doing something bad, but others consider it good

29 Translate into English:

3

- في نظم التعليم الجديدة أصبح لزاما على المدرسين الإلمام بطرق استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة التي أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من حياة الطلاب حتى في المرحلة الابتدائية.

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Online education is becoming more and more important. However, many experts believe that it shouldn't be an alternative to schools as the main source of education.

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"How can education help improve our country?"

Final Test 8

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. The charity is looking for .... families for children who have to travel abroad for heart operations.
   a) guest b) host c) strange d) foreign
2. The secretary leaked the terms of the contract to a news .... and it was a scandal.
   a) consumer b) reporter c) officer d) inspector
3. This documentary was originally .... live last Friday.
   a) investigated b) shot c) broadcast d) taken
4. Time travel exists only in the genre of science .... modern movies.
   a) faction b) fission c) fiction d) fact
5. The young doctor is sometimes criticised for her .... opposition to using animals in experiments.
   a) patriotic b) passionate c) national d) cruel
6. This flat was supposed to be ...., but we used it for many months.
   a) contemporary b) temporary c) permanent d) gradual
7. The waterfall turbines in the High Dam supply Egypt with most of the .... power we use.
   a) electronic b) elective c) selective d) electric
8. Government inspectors will monitor the .... of the new transport project.
   a) progress b) reduction c) abortion d) reproaching
9. I just read the ....; I didn't have time to read the articles.
   a) addresses b) locations c) headlines d) details
10. The book can be read with .... by anyone who wants to understand how computer systems work.
    a) placement b) loss c) prohibit d) profit
11. She .... the soup in the kitchen when the telephone rang.
    a) was tasting b) has been tasting
    c) has tasted d) tastes
12. You need to drive more quickly, or all the food .... by the time we reach the party.
    a) will have eaten b) will be eating
    c) will have been eaten d) is eaten
13. The Nile in Sohag is exactly the .... width as in Luxor.
    a) different b) alike c) similar d) same

14 Sara passed the exam ....
a) easy b) easily c) easier d) at ease

15 She .... a lot of meals, because she had been so hungry.
a) cooked b) had cooked c) were cooking d) have cooked

16 As we passed the post office, Ali remembered the place .... he had lost his bag.
a) which b) that c) when d) where

17 When I came back home yesterday, my children were .... watching TV at midnight.
a) yet b) since c) still d) ever

18 He can .... see anything without his glasses.
a) rarely b) hardly c) wrongly d) hard

19 Unluckily, the patient had died before the ambulance .... the hospital.
a) had reached b) reaches c) reached d) has reached

20 **A:** Would you like to join us? **B:** No, thank you. I'd rather .... here.
a) stay b) to stay c) staying d) stayed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

It is a disturbing fact that many different wild animals throughout the world are in danger. An endangered species is a type of animals that will probably become extinct. There are 3,079 animals and 2,655 plants that are endangered worldwide. Lots of countries have laws to protect endangered animals.

The reasons for this are many and varied, but we must blame pollution, pesticides, the disturbance of the animal's natural environment and man's greed.

Industry has grown enormously, and it has become common practice for factories to dispose of waste matter in streams, canals and rivers, causing great loss of river life. Modem agricultural methods include using pesticides, which effectively control insects classified as pests, but which also destroy many that are not.

Some animals are endangered because their habitats are being destroyed because of the increase in population, which has meant more buildings, more vehicles, more pollution... and with it the destruction of much of the countryside that provide shelter for wild animals. People are building cities, logging (cutting down trees) and mining in places where animals live. Other animals are endangered because people are hunting and killing them. When a new species starts living in a place, it can take food from and prey on the animals that lived there before.

Some of the endangered animals in the world include the black rhino found in Africa, the orangutan found in the country of Malaysia and the blue whale. Finally, other endangered species examples include the Bengal tiger, giant panda, mountain gorilla, sea lions, and others.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Countries can protect endangered animals by ....
a) building habitats for them
b) punishing people who build houses
c) making laws
d) stopping the immigration of animals

22 The underlined word "many" refers to ....
a) insects other than pests
b) agricultural methods
c) pests only
d) pesticides

23 Shelter is the same meaning as ....
a) someone to attack
b) something to eat
c) sometime to spend
d) somewhere to stay

24 When using pesticides, we kill ....
a) pests only
b) pests and harmful and harmless insects
c) harmful insects
d) none of these

25 "When a new species starts living in a place, it can take food from and prey on the animals that lived there before." This means that ....
a) man is the cause of animal extinction
b) animals are made endangered by the weather
c) animals are made endangered by other animals
d) the increase in population causes danger to animals

26 Man's greed is one of reasons that makes the matter worse. "Greed" means ....
a) man's desire to have things more than their need
b) man's desire to kill animals
c) man's desire to build cities and cut down trees
d) man's desire to mine in places where animals live

27 It has become common practice for factories to dispose of their waste in streams and rivers. This means that factories ....
a) deliver their waste to streams, canals and rivers
b) store their waste in streams and rivers
c) get over their waste in streams, canals and rivers
d) get rid of their waste in streams, canals and rivers

28 The best title to the passage is "................".
a) Endangering animals and man
b) The problem of the endangered animals
c) The problem of the endangering animals
d) Man's greed and other creatures

29 Translate into English:

3

- يفضل السياح الرحلات الصحراوية التى تنظمها شركات السياحة، وذلك بسبب رغبتهم فى الاسترخاء فى جو يسوده الهدوء والسكينة، الأمر الذى من شأنه أن يشجع السياحة فى مصر.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- The Egyptian Ministry of Health was one of the first authorities in Africa to provide the citizens with COVID-19 vaccine. It was also offered free of charge.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

- To your friend telling her about the new development of laws concerning women's rights in Egypt. Your name is Kenzy and your email address is: kenzy008@yahoo.com. Your friend is Jessy and her email address is: jessy007@gmail.com

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 9

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. The hotels in Sharm El Sheikh have many ……………… including a large indoor pool, jacuzzi and sauna.
   a) fabrics b) accessories c) abilities d) facilities
2. A/An ……………… is a person who is in charge of a newspaper, magazine, etc. or part of one, and who decides what should be included.
   a) editor b) reader c) investigator d) inventor
3. It is important to have a specific ……………… whether long-term or short-term.
   a) amount b) fiction c) training d) goal
4. A search ……………… is a computer program that is used to look for information on the Internet.
   a) engine b) power c) motor d) page
5. My teaching style is similar ……… that of most other teachers in our school.
   a) at b) of c) in d) to
6. Family matters and work times are two main factors which limit women's ……………… of job choices.
   a) series b) serial c) range d) sequence
7. An important ……………… for any government is to find a way of providing affordable housing.
   a) change b) challenge c) faction d) fiction
8. There is no evidence to ……………… the young man to the murder.
   a) connect b) tie c) contact d) communicate
9. The film director says that they have to shoot the last ……………… before sunset.
   a) movie b) landform c) scenery d) scene
10. While watching the movie, I was ……………… back to the time of the Second World War.
    a) transmitted b) transported c) touched d) saddened
11. How is your German? ……………… better nowadays?
    a) Will it get b) Does it get c) Is it getting d) has it got
12. We ……………… the wheels before you come back from the shop.
    a) will be replacing b) will have replaced
    c) will be replaced d) have replaced
13. This yoghurt is ……………… as good as the one I bought yesterday.
    a) quite b) much c) far d) almost

14 We were driving along the road when we saw a car which .... down, so we stopped to help.
a) had broken b) broke c) has broken d) was breaking

15 You do have sugar in your coffee, ... you?
a) haven't b) aren't c) isn't d) don't

16 The day .... I started school was October 1.
a) where b) which c) when d) in which

17 Nobody .... the cause of earthquakes.
a) know b) knows c) have known d) was known

18 **A:** Would you mind closing the door, please? **B:** .... It's so cold.
a) Yes, of course. b) Sure. c) Not at all. d) Yes, I do.

19 Two million feddans will have .... in the desert.
a) reclaim b) reclaimed c) to reclaim d) to be reclaimed

20 ...., Ahmed got the best mark in class although he didn't study hard.
a) Surprisingly b) Surprised c) To surprise d) Surprising

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The environment is everything that surrounds us: plants, animals, buildings, country, air and water. Ecology is the science of how living creatures and plants exist together and depend on each other and on the local environment. Where an environment is undisturbed, the ecology of an area is in balance, but if a creature is exterminated or an alien species introduced, then the ecology of the district will be upset. In other words, the balance of nature will be disturbed.

One of the main causes of the earth's troubles is that the world is overpopulated and this overpopulation is growing at an ever-increasing rate. At the same time, the earth is unable to provide enough food since the fertility of some of our richest soils has been lost and vast areas that were once fertile lands have turned into barren deserts. And the trouble with deserts is that they tend to creep outwards on to the fertile soils.

Man is a part of the environment and he has done more to upset the ecology during his short span on earth than any other living creature. He has done this by his ignorance, his greed, his thoughtless, his foolishness and his wastefulness. Since man has done so much damage, it is up to him to try to put matters right - if it is not already too late. If there is to be any remedy for our ills, that remedy ultimately lies in the hands of the young generations, and the sooner they start doing something about it, the better.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 World population is threatened with starvation because ....

a) all our natural resources have run out with no hope of replacing them
b) vast areas of our fertile lands have turned into barren deserts
c) the deserts creep inwards on to the fertile areas
d) overpopulation is increasing and the rich soil is rising

22 Ecology is a science which studies ....

a) man's social activities
b) living creatures and the environment
c) plants and farming
d) the habitats of animals

23 What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

a) The young. b) The ill.
c) Different creatures. d) The soils.

24 The writer of the passage that man disturbed the environmental balance through ....

a) his moral values b) his culture
c) his good behaviour d) his bad qualities

25 The more fertile the soil is, the ....

a) less food we have
b) more food we have
c) fewer people live on earth
d) more barren deserts there are

26 What made man upset the ecology?

a) His ignorance.
b) His greed.
c) His thoughtless, foolishness and wastefulness
d) All of the above.

27 The word "fertile" is antonymous to the word "................".

a) rich b) productive
c) barren d) fruitful

28 The most suitable title for the passage is "................".

a) Man's greed is the cause of upsetting the ecology
b) Ecology (in balance or upset)
c) It's too late to balance the ecology
d) Overpopulation and the earth's troubles

29 Translate into English:

3

- أثبتت التجربة العملية أن العلم سلاح ذو حدين؛ فهو نعمة إذا استخدم فى الخير وما ينفع الناس، ونقمة إذا استخدم فى الشر والدمار.

....

....

....

....

....

30 Translate into Arabic:

3

- Recently we have been suffering from ill morals. People feel upset when they hear bad words and insults said in the street.

....

....

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

6

"Solving the problems on earth is more important than exploring space. Do you agree? Why? Why not?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 10

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1 A working woman is .... to cope with the demands of her work and her family.
a) struggling b) relaxing c) relieving d) dispensing

2 There's been some .... development in the economic situation in Egypt.
a) valueless b) harmful c) significant d) trivial

3 The school uses interactive displays to .... children to read and write for pleasure.
a) aspire b) inspire c) respire d) expire

4 The team's performance has made a/an .... improvement with the new coach and players.
a) imaginary b) measurable c) valueless d) unattended

5 Scientists could find ways to .... the power of the sea waves to create electricity.
a) neglect b) approach c) waste d) harness

6 Diplomacy is the most .... way to resolve any kind of dispute.
a) sensitive b) sensible c) senseless d) sensual

7 The couple behind us kept .... everyone by talking during the movie.
a) distracting b) districting c) extracting d) expecting

8 The company announced that the bridge project was completed ahead of ....
a) way b) step c) schedule d) silence

9 I applied .... several jobs and was offered one.
a) at b) about c) for d) in

10 The atmosphere in the room was absolutely .... because of the disagreement of the two economic delegations.
a) electric b) electronic c) electrical d) electrified

11 Why .... to my party tomorrow? Don't you like me anymore?
a) have you come b) will you come
c) don't you come d) aren't you coming

12 **A:** I'll meet you at four o'clock. **B:** At four? I'm afraid, I .... English.
a) will be teaching b) will have taught
c) will have been taught d) will teach

13 William Shakespeare is .... more famous than Charles Dickens.
a) slightly b) many c) enough d) exactly

14 You enjoyed the movie because you .... the book.
a) were reading b) have read c) reads d) had read

15 Rana has learnt to paint .... lately.
a) well b) good c) best d) the best

16 He wanted to come at 2 a.m., ... didn't suit me at all.
a) when b) that c) which d) at which



17 **A:** Has that letter been typed yet? **B:** No, but .... now.

a) it is typed b) it is been typed
c) it is being typed d) it is typing

18 You'd surely never go there again, ...?

a) had you b) would you c) do you d) didn't you

19 I'm so thirsty. I'll buy a big bottle of water .... I get home.

a) before b) as soon as c) until d) when

20 It's careless of Hassan .... the same mistakes again and again.

a) making b) makes c) to make d) that he make

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Our culture is the system we use to build our identity. All living creatures are part of a culture. Even animals have a culture! So, what is culture? It's the way we behave in a group. It begins with each individual family. Within our families, we do things to build relationships with each other. This can include routines for doing things. It also includes traditions. Traditions are activities that are repeated on a regular basis. Culture is not limited to individual family groups. The real strength of culture is in larger community groups. These larger groups are called societies.

Every society makes rules for itself. It decides how people should act in different situations. Some of these rules are written down. Some are just things that are automatically expected of all members of that society. Often, cultures can be identified by what the people believe. Cultures are also known by what they choose to include in their art. Sometimes a society forms around people who speak the same language.

Cultures may also be known for their customs, including the foods they make and the things they do. Our cultures help us understand who we are and what we believe. There are very strong emotions connecting us to our own society. Two different cultures may disagree on beliefs, especially if they both feel strongly about them. When that happens, war is a common result. People are learning better ways to communicate with each other. The more we learn, the more we appreciate the differences in cultures.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21 Cultural rules made by a society are ....

a) all written down b) divided between written and expected
c) not at all written down d) made by old people

22 The writer suggests that culture starts with ....

a) an individual b) a society c) a tribe d) a family

23 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....

a) cultures b) rules c) beliefs d) feelings

24 According to the passage, culture can be identified by ....

a) what people believe b) what people do
c) what people draw d) what people believe and do

(25) What role does culture play inside a family?

a) It helps build relationships.
b) It keeps the traditions.
c) It defends people's language.
d) It develops art.

(26) Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

a) The culture in our community
b) Culture and life
c) Culture and language
d) Culture and customs

(27) Culture is known by ....

a) what the people believe
b) the customs we have
c) the choices of art the society has
d) all of these

(28) The more we learn, the more we appreciate the differences in cultures. The word "appreciate" here means ....

a) to realise
b) to welcome
c) to go up in price
d) to be grateful for

(29) **Translate into English:** 3

- كان شبابنا يسافر للخارج لاكتساب الخبرة والمعرفة والمعلومات التى تفيدهم فى مستقبلهم، لكنهم الآن يتطلعون للهجرة بسبب المشكلات التى يواجهونها.

....

....

....

(30) **Translate into Arabic:** 3

- Many people misunderstand the true meaning of freedom. Freedom doesn't mean that we have the right to do just as we like as we don't live in this world alone.

....

....

....

(31) **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:** 6

"Due to the video games and social media, young people have left many useful hobbies. Do you agree?"

....

....

....

....

....

رقم الإيداع: ٢٠٢١/٢٠٦٣٢

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم رقم ٣٦٢/٢/١٢/١٠٤

